Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

# New Hello!

3rd PREP 2024

SECOND TERM

الصف الثالث الإعدادي

التعليم العام والأزهري

دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com



# Contents



Part 1

National Centre For Examinations & Educational Evaluation (NCEEE) Test Development Dep.

Ministry of Education
ELT Counsellor's Office

**Specifications for Third Year Preparatory (2nd term) English Examination (2023-2024)**

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثالث الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

Time: 2 Hours (30 Marks)

## A Language Functions — 5 Marks

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions is provided (**2** stimuli & **3** responses). The topic of the dialogue should be related to the students' everyday life, interests, hobbies, events and so on. The situation in which the dialogue takes place is described briefly but clearly. The students are required to fill in the deletions completely with the appropriate language forms without providing them with any part of the answers. The first exchange should be in full. **(One mark each)**

## B Reading Comprehension — 10 Marks

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **50** to **60** words with **FOUR (4)** gaps is provided. Students are asked to fill in the **FOUR (4)** gaps (**3** vocabulary & **1** structure) from a list of **SIX (6)** words (**4** vocabulary & **2** structures). **(One mark each)**

### 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen text from **140** to **160** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, or an email. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are asked to answer:

A. **THREE (3) MCQ** questions with **FOUR (4)** options each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills:
- Determine the main idea of a text. **(1 question)**
- Skim and scan grade appropriate text. **(2 questions)**

B. **THREE (3) open-ended** questions on the following reading comprehension skills:
- Make inference about grade appropriate text. **(1 question)**
- Summarizing a text. **(1 question)**
- Make prediction about upcoming events in a story or information in a text. **(1 question)**

**(One mark each)**



## C Vocabulary & Structure — 8 Marks

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (3 Marks)

**SIX (6)** vocabulary multiple-choice questions based on what students studied before are provided. They are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **FOUR (4)** options given. The questions should test students' knowledge of:
- Definitions **(2 questions)**
- Synonyms & Antonyms **(1 question)**
- Suffixes & Prefixes **(1 question)**
- Guessing meaning from the text **(2 questions)** **(Half a mark each)**

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (5 Marks)

**FIVE (5)** structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs etc. related to what students have studied.

**(One mark each)**



## D Writing — 7 Marks

### 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following: (7 Marks)

Students are asked to write from **100** to **110** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books in ONE of the following writing forms:
- A review
- A short story
- A biography

**(One mark for organization - Two marks for relevance of ideas - One mark for related vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar "Three mistakes are accepted. Repeated mistakes are marked once only")**

# Prefixes & Suffixes

- في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على بادئات الكلمات "prefixes" ولواحق الكلمات "suffixes".

## 1- Prefixes بادئات الكلمات

- البادئة هى عبارة عن مقطع يضاف الى بداية الكلمة سواء كانت اسم / صفة / فعل / ظرف، يغير في معنى الكلمة.

مثال: كلمة usual تعنى عادى، اذا اضيفت لها البادئة "-un" تصبح unusual بمعنى غير عادى أى تعطى العكس.

- الجدول التالي فيه عدد من البادئات Prefixes الأكثر شيوعا في اللغة الإنجليزية والمستخدمة فى منهج الصف الثالث الإعدادى.

| Prefix | Usage | Example |
|---|---|---|
| a- | تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | alive / asleep على قيد الحياة/نائم |
| ab- | opposite تعطى العكس | abnormal غير عادى |
| dis- | | disagree / disappear يرفض/يختفي |
| im- / in- | | impolite - inexpensive غير مهذب/رخيص الثمن |
| mis- | | misunderstand يسئ الفهم |
| un- | | unusual / uncomfortable غير عادى/غير مريح |
| anti- | against تعطى معنى ضد | antibiotic مضاد حيوى |
| astro- | space تخص الفضاء | astronomer / astronaut عالم فلك/رائد فضاء |
| di- | two تكون صفة بمعنى (ثان - ثنائى) | dioxide ثانى أكسيد |
| e- | تضاف للاسم وتعنى «الكترونى» electronic | e-player لاعب رياضة الكترونية |
| en- | verb تحول الاسم إلى الفعل | endanger يعرض للخطر |
| inter- | between تعطى معنى بين | international دولى |
| mono- | one تعنى أحادى | monorail قطار معلق أحادى القضبان |
| re- | again تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى | recycle / reuse يعيد تدوير/يعيد استخدام |
| techno- | تشير إلى الآلات والأجهزة الإلكترونية electrenic equipment | technology التكنولوجيا |
| super- | تعنى أكثر/أقوى/أكبر over / more powerful / larger | superhero / supermarket بطل خارق/متجر كبير (سوبر ماركت) |
| tele- | distance تعطى معنى البعد | telescope تليسكوب |
| trans- | move across تعطى معنى «ينقل» | transport النقل |





## 2- Suffixes لواحق الكلمات

- اللاحقة هى عبارة عن مقطع يضاف الى نهاية الكلمة سواء كانت اسم / صفة / فعل / ظرف، يغير في معنى الكلمة.

مثال: الاسم comfort يعنى راحة إذا أضفنا له اللاحقة (able-) أصبحت comfortable بمعنى مريح (صفة).

- الجدول التالي فيه عدد من اللواحق suffixes الأكثر شيوعاً فى اللغة الإنجليزية والمستخدمة فى منهج الصف الثالث الإعدادى.

| Suffix | Usage | Example |
|---|---|---|
| -able | adjective تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | renewable متجدد |
| -ing | | interesting شيق |
| -ed | | confused مرتبك |
| -ful | | useful / colourful مفيد/زاهى الألوان |
| -ive | | attractive جذاب |
| -al | adjective تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | coastal / natural ساحلى/طبيعى |
| -ic | | electric كهربى |
| -ern | | western غربى |
| -ous | | dangerous خطير |
| -y | | windy / healthy شديد الرياح/صحى |
| -ance | noun تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | appearance مظهر |
| -ism | | tourism السياحة |
| -ment | | government حكومة |
| -sion / -tion /-ion | | conclusion / desertification / pollution خاتمة / ظاهرة التصحر/ تلوث |
| -er /-or | person تكوّن اسم الفاعل | farmer / visitor مزارع - زائر |
| -ist | | scientist عالم |
| -ant | | assistant مساعد |
| -an | place تعبر عن شخص/شئ ينتمى لمكان | Caribbean من منطقة الكاريبى |
| -ity /-ty | noun تحول الصفة إلى الاسم | electricity الكهرباء |
| -less | opposite تعطى العكس | useless/wireless عديم الفائدة/لاسلكى |
| -ly | adverb تحول الصفة إلى الحال | badly / totally بشكل سئ / تماما |
| -ology | science تفيد دراسة علم ما | technology التكنولوجيا |

## Reading comprehension questions from previous exams

### أسئلة وردت فى قطعة الفهم من امتحانات سابقة

- هناك أسئلة لقطعة الفهم وردت فى امتحانات المحافظات لابد أن تتعرف عليها :

الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

1- From the passage, name two types of ........

من النص ، اذكر / سمِّ نوعان من ............

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

2- According to the passage, give two items that can be ........

طبقًا للنص ، اذكر عنصران يمكن ............

دمياط ٢٠٢٢

3- Give one reason for ........

اذكر سببًا واحدًا لـ ..........

الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

4- Infer from the passage how ........

استنتج من النص كيف ..........

أسوان ٢٠٢٢

5- Mention two things that people do with ........

اذكر شيئان يمكن للناس أن يفعلهما بـ............

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

6- The passage is mainly about ........

يتحدث النص أساسًا عن ............

الأقصر ٢٠٢٢

7- The main idea of the passage is about ........

الفكرة الأساسية فى النص عن ............

الوادى الجديد ٢٠٢٢

8- What's the best title of the passage?

ما هو أفضل عنوان للنص؟

الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

9- Summarise the last paragraph in your own words.

لخص الفقرة الأخيرة بكلمات من عندك.






# Our world

## Objectives

**Reading:**
A fact file about natural wonders of Egypt; a project about Wadi al-Hitan; Black Beauty by Anna Sewell; an information text about mongooses

**Writing:**
A fact file about a natural wonder; a short article about an animal

**Listening:**
A talk about habitats; a description of a natural wonder; a discussion about a story; conversations asking for clarification

**Speaking:**
Talking about animals, animal habitats and natural wonders; expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification

**Language:**
The present simple passive with and without by (revision)
The past simple passive with and without by

**Life Skills:**
Respect for diversity in nature

SB / WB Answers جميع إجابات كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 70-71

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| wonder | عجيبة - إعجاب - تعجب | fill (ed) | يملأ |
| shape | شكل/قالب | protect (ed) | يحمي |
| oasis (oases) | واحة (واحات) | surround (ed) | يحيط بـ/يطوق |

### Natural habitats

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| coastal habitat | بيئة ساحلية | wetland habitat | بيئة أرض رطبة (مستنقع) |
| grassland habitat | بيئة عشبية | desert habitat | بيئة صحراوية |
| polar habitat | بيئة قطبية | forest habitat | بيئة الغابات |
| rainforest habitat | بيئة غابات مطيرة | mountain habitat | بيئة جبلية |

### Animals

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| turtle | سلحفاة | orangutan | إنسان الغاب |
| caracal | حيوان عناق الأرض (الكراكال) | frog | ضفدع |
| polar bear | الدب القطبي | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| coast | ساحل | warm | دافئ |
| the Nile Delta | دلتا النيل | Bedouin people | البدو |
| meteorite | نيزك | including | بما في ذلك |
| location | موقع | shooting star | شهاب |
| appearance | مظهر/شكل | locals | السكان المحليون |
| volunteer | متطوع | home | موطن |
| wildlife | الحياة البرية | newsagent | بائع الصحف أو المجلات |
| environment | البيئة | robot | إنسان آلي |
| spring | ينبوع ماء | modern technology | التكنولوجيا الحديثة |
| tour guide | مرشد سياحي | describe (d) | يصف |
| entire | كامل/كل | pollute (d) | يلوث |
| rarely | نادراً | cover (ed) | يغطي |
| date palm trees | نخيل البلح | contain (ed) | يحتوي على |
| except | ماعدا | destroy (ed) | يدمر/يتلف |
| sunlight | ضوء الشمس | respect (ed) (n) | يقدر / يحترم - احترام/تقدير |
| national park | محمية طبيعية | | |





## Definitions

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

| Word | Definition |
|---|---|
| habitat (موطن) بيئة الحيوان أو النبات | the natural home of an animal or plant |
| grassland habitat بيئة عشبية | These habitats usually have large green areas and no mountains. |
| rainforest habitat بيئة غابات مطيرة | These habitats have a lot of trees. They are usually very hot and have a lot of rain. |
| wetland habitat بيئة أرض رطبة (مستنقعات) | There is not always rain in these habitats, but there is always a lot of water. |
| polar habitat بيئة قطبية | These habitats are always cold and are often covered by ice. |
| coastal habitat بيئة ساحلية | These habitats are next to the sea or the ocean. You often find rocks there. |
| desert habitat بيئة صحراوية | There is very little or no rain in these habitats. It can be very hot. |
| mountain habitat بيئة جبلية | These habitats are very high. It can be very cold in the highest parts. |
| forest habitat بيئة غابات | There are many tall trees in these habitats. |
| fill يملأ | make something full[1], so there is no space[2] for any more of something |
| oasis واحة | an area in the desert where you can find water |
| caracal حيوان عناق الأرض (الكاراكال) | a wild cat with long legs and big ears that lives in Africa and Asia. |
| orangutan إنسان الغاب | a large animal with long red hair and long arms, which lives in the trees of Indonesia[3] |
| polar bear الدب القطبي | a large, white bear which lives on the ice of the Arctic[4] |
| surrounded by محاط بـ | everywhere[5] around you |
| wonder عجيبة | something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing |
| mountain جبل | a very high hill[6] |

١- ممتلئ
٢- مساحة
٣- دولة اندونيسيا
٤- المنطقة القطبية الشمالية
٥- في كل مكان
٦- تل

## Synonyms & Antonyms

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite | المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| famous | مشهور | well-known | unknown | غير معروف |
| wet | مبتل / رطب | rainy | dry | جاف |
| huge | ضخم | very big / enormous massive | small / tiny | صغير/ضئيل |
| strange | غريب | unusual | usual | معتاد |
| modern | حديث | new | old/ traditional / ancient | قديم |
| protect | يحمي | keep / preserve | endanger | يعرض للخطر |
| locals | السكان المحليون | natives / citizens | foreigners | أجانب |
| top | قمة | | bottom | قاع |

- **Synonym** مرادف = the same meaning as = similar in meaning to = look like
  = (be) replaced by = close in meaning to
- **Antonym** مضاد / عكس = opposite = different

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **- n = noun** | اسم | **- v = verb** | فعل |
| **- adj = adjective** | صفة | **- adv = adverb** | ظرف / حال |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

يوجد شرح لبادئات ولواحق الكلمات في مقدمة الكتاب — قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| un- | opposite | تعطى عكس المعنى | unusually | على غير العادة |
| -al | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | coastal / natural | ساحلي / طبيعي |
| -ern | | | western | غربي |
| -ance | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | appearance | المظهر |
| -ion | | | location | موقع |
| -or | person<br>v → n | تكون اسم الفاعل<br>تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | visitor | زائر |
| techno- | electronic equipment | تشير إلى الآلات والأجهزة الإلكترونية | technology | |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| show respect for | يظهر التقدير لـ | at the bottom of | في قاع |
| make a list of | يُعد قائمة بـ | in the middle of | في منتصف |
| a day-trip | رحلة من يوم واحد | in the shape of | على شكل |
| as well as | بالاضافة إلى | because of | بسبب |
| lay eggs | تضع البيض | far from | بعيداً عن |
| look like | يشبه | (be )made from | مصنوع من |
| make ....into | يحول / يغير .... إلى | cut down trees | يقطع الأشجار |
| fall into | يسقط داخل | fill ....with | يملأ ..... بـ |
| at the top of | في أعلى/في قمة | | |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| find | يجد | found | found |
| get | يحصل على | got | got |
| know | يعرف | knew | known |
| fall | يسقط / يقع | fell | fallen |
| cut down | يقطع | cut down | cut down |
| build | يبني | built | built |
| grow | يزرع - ينمو | grew | grown |
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |
| hide | يختبئ | hid | hidden |
| lay | تضع (البيض) | laid | laid |





## Language Notes

### 1) a three-hour drive

- a three-hour drive = three hours of driving ثلاث ساعات من القيادة

يمكن أن تتكون بعض الصفات كما يلي :

a/an + عدد-اسم مفرد + اسم موصوف

**Ex.** Alexandria is a three-hour drive from Cairo.

### 2) call / (be) called / called

لاحظ استخدام الفعل call بطرق مختلفة:

- **call (v- ed)** ينادي / يتصل تليفونيًا

**Ex.** I called the waiter and ordered lunch.

**Ex.** He called the police after the accident.

- **(be) called** يُسمى / يُدعى

**Ex.** He is called Adam.

ويمكن أن تأتي كلمة called بدون verb to be وتكون صفة:

**Ex.** A girl called Fatma helped me.

### 3) fill / fall / feel / fail

- **fill (ed)** يملأ

**Ex.** I filled the bottle with water.

- **fall (fell / fallen) from - into** يسقط

**Ex.** The book fell from his hands.

**Ex.** His mobile fell into the pool.

- **feel (felt / felt)** يشعر

**Ex.** I always feel hungry at night.

- **fail (ed)** يرسب / يفشل

**Ex.** Adel failed his exams and became sad.

### 4) reach / arrive in - at / get to

- **reach** يصل الى (بدون حرف جر)

**Ex.** We reached Cairo early in the morning.

- **arrive in** يصل الى مكان كبير

**Ex.** They arrived in London three days ago.

- **get to** يصل إلى (مكان كبير أو صغير)

**Ex.** I get to school on time every day.

- **arrive at** يصل الى مكان صغير

**Ex.** She arrived at the airport in time.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ........... old boy was riding a bike when a car hit him.
   a. ten-years  b. tens-years  c. ten-year  d. ten year
2. What is her name? She ........... Salma.
   a. is calling  b. call  c. calls  d. is called
3. Don't ........... the glass to the top, please.
   a. fail  b. fill  c. feel  d. fall
4. When I ........... the club, I was tired.
   a. reached  b. arrived  c. got  d. went




SB Page (2)

استمع إلى النصوص



1. Orangutans[1] live in rainforests[2] and spend nearly their entire[3] lives in trees.
2. Sea turtles[4] rarely leave the ocean[5], except[6] to lay eggs in the sand.



3. The polar bear[7] is one of the few animals that can live in a polar habitat[8].
4. Caracals[9] live in grasslands[10] because they like to hide in the long grass.
5. Frogs[11] are wetland[12] animals that are able to live on land as well as in water.

١- إنسان الغاب
٢- غابات مطيرة
٣- كل
٤- سلاحف بحرية
٥- محيط
٦- ما عدا
٧- الدب القطبى
٨- بيئة
٩- حيوان عناق الأرض
١٠- أرض عشبية
١١- ضفادع
١٢- أرض رطبة (مستنقع)





SB Page (3)

There are many different habitats around the world. Coastal habitats[1] are along the coast of the sea. Some animals that live in the sea, such as the sea turtle, will visit land for egg laying[2]. Grasslands are usually found in the centre of large areas of land, between mountains and deserts. This is the natural[3] habitat of animals such as the caracal, which like to hide[4] in the long grass. Grasslands are found all over the world[5].

Warm, wet habitats that get the most rain, are called rainforests. Trees grow very tall here, so that they can get sunlight[6]. More than half of the world's animals live in the rainforest, including[7] the orangutan.

A wetland is a place where the land is often covered by[8] water, for example the Nile Delta[9]. Wetland animals like frogs are able to live on land as well as in water.

The top and bottom[10] of the Earth are covered by ice. These areas are known as polar habitats. The polar bear is one of the few animals that can live in the cold temperatures[11] there.

١- مواطن ساحلية
٢- وضع البيض
٣- طبيعى
٤- يختبئ
٥- فى جميع أنحاء العالم
٦- ضوء الشمس
٧- بما فى ذلك
٨- مغطاة بـ
٩- دلتا النيل
١٠- قاع
١١- درجات الحرارة الباردة

**Reading Skill** مهارة القراءة [الإجابة أسفل]

1. The text is mainly about ........... يتحدث النص أساسا عن ...........
   a. egg laying  b. animal habitats  c. grasslands  d. temperatures
2. Infer from the text why the sea turtles visit land. استنتج من النص لماذا تزور السلاحف البحرية اليابسة.
3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الأخيرة فى جملة واحدة.

**Writing Skill** مهارة الكتابة [جمل تساعد فى كتابة الموضوع الانشائى]

1. The sea turtles visit land for egg laying. تزور السلاحف المائية اليابسة لوضع البيض.
2. Grassland habitats are the natural habitat of the caracal. البيئة العشبية هى البيئة الطبيعية لحيوان عناق الأرض.
3. The orangutan lives in the rainforest habitat. يعيش إنسان الغاب فى بيئة الغابات الممطرة.
4. The polar bear lives in the polar habitat يعيش الدب القطبى فى البيئة القطبية.

Answers
1. b) animal habitats
2. For egg laying
3. Polar habitats are always cold and are often covered by ice.

SB Page (5)

Randa : Which place do you think should be on the list of Egypt's natural wonders[1], Nihal?

Nihal : I would choose Wadi al-Weshwashy[2].

Randa : Wadi al-Weshwashy? Where's that?

Nihal : It's on the way to South Sinai, just 15 kilometres away from Nuweiba. It's in the mountains of South Sinai.

Randa : I see. That's a long way away. What kind of place is it?

Nihal : There are areas of water called springs[3] there. They make small lakes high in the mountains. They are known as the Green Springs.

Randa : I've never heard of this amazing place! Can you swim there?

Nihal : Oh yes, Randa, it's a wonderful place for swimming. It's mostly visited by the local Bedouin people[4] who live near there. In fact, Wadi al-Weshwashy is looked after by them. You can ask local tour guides[5] to take you there on a day trip - otherwise, it's really difficult to get to. But I think that's why it's such a special place.

١- عجائب
٢- وادي الوشواشي
٣- ينابيع مياه
٤- البدو
٥- مرشدون سياحيون

## Reading

SB Page (4)



**Natural wonders[1] of Egypt**

Egypt is visited by more than 14 million tourists every year. We have made a list of the natural wonders of Egypt that we think visitors should know about.

### 1. White Desert National Park[2]

**Where?**

This huge[3] desert starts on the western side of the River Nile and continues into Libya.

**What?**

It contains five oases[4], with rocks that the wind has made into strange shapes[5].

**Why is it a "wonder"?**

The colours change at different times of day, and make them beautiful to look at.

١- عجائب طبيعية
٢- محمية الصحراء البيضاء الطبيعية
٣- ضخم
٤- واحات
٥- أشكال





### 2. Al Nayzak Lake

**Where?**

This natural lake is a three-hour drive from Hurghada.

**What?**

The lake is called the Shooting Star[7] by locals[8], because it is believed that a piece of a star (a meteorite[9]) fell into it. The lake is cut out of the rock in the shape of an eye and is filled with[10] the bright blue water of the Red Sea.

**Why is it a "wonder"?**

It is described by visitors as one of the best places to dive and swim.

٦- بحيرة النيزك
٧- شهاب
٨- سكان محليون
٩- نيزك
١٠- ممتلئ بـ
١١- جبل علبة
١٢- محاط بـ
١٣- ساحل
١٤- على غير المعتاد
١٥- موقع
١٦- يحمي

### 3. Gebel Elba

**Where?**

This national park is surrounded by[12] grasslands, between the Red Sea coast[13] and the mountains.

**What?**

This national park takes its name from the mountain in the middle of it.

**Why is it a "wonder"?**

It is unusually[14] green and home to many animals and birds. However, as it isn't easy to reach, it isn't visited often. Its location[15] should help to protect[16] the wildlife there.

WB Page (71)



The Kharga Oasis[1] is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more tourists[2] every year. Hundreds of date palm trees[3] are grown here. The dates are sold in many shops in the area. You can also fill your bags with the baskets[4], shoes and furniture[5] that are also made from the date palm trees. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's natural wonders!

١- واحة الخارجة
٢- سائحون
٣- نخيل البلح
٤- سلال
٥- أثاث

# Videoscript

SB Page (5)

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert National Park and the Al Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made[1] wonders, such as the Great Pyramids and the Citadel of Qaitbay[2] in Alexandria. These and other places are popular places and they are visited by thousands of tourists every year.

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists, like Gebel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach is the Lost City[3] of Thonis-Heracleion[4]. This is because the city is now under the Mediterranean Sea[5] near Alexandria. It was found by an archaeologist[6] called Franck Goddio in 2000. Thonis-Heracleion was an important city before it was destroyed by the sea more than 1,500 years ago. When it was discovered, Franck Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and monuments[7].

Another wonder is the Great Sand Sea[8] in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the Western desert, and here you can find lots of big sand dunes[9]. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. It is believed that this glass is more than 29 million years old. The glass is very special and some of it was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb[10].

Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful in the world. Have you visited any of them?

١- من صنع البشر
٢- قلعة قايتباى
٣- المدينة المفقودة
٤- مدينة هرقليون (أبو قير القديمة)
٥- البحر المتوسط
٦- عالم آثار
٧- الآثار
٨- بحر الرمال الأعظم
٩- كثبان رملية
١٠- مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى وتمرينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف فى ملحق الكتاب

### Definitions

1. A/An .......... is the natural home of an animal or plant. Longman / 2023 الإسكندرية
   a. ocean b. school c. habitat d. sky
2. The .......... is a large, white animal which lives on the ice of the Arctic. 2022
   a. caracal b. polar bear c. frog d. orangutan
3. A/An .......... is a large animal with long red hair and long arms, which lives in the trees of Indonesia. 2022
   a. lion b. turtle c. orangutan d. frog
4. A/An .......... is a very big hill.
   a. mountain b. oasis c. habitat d. wonder





5. .......... habitats usually have large green areas and no mountains. 2022
   a. Coastal b. Desert c. Grassland d. Wetland
6. A .......... has a thick hard shell around its body. Longman
   a. polar bear b. dog c. turtle d. lion

### Synonyms & Antonyms

7. Deserts are huge areas with a lot of sand. "Huge" is similar in meaning to ..........
   a. small b. tiny c. little d. enormous
8. The ground was wet because of the rain. "Wet" is an antonym of ..........
   a. dry b. rainy c. snowy d. stormy
9. "Famous" is similar in meaning to ..........
   a. unknown b. strange c. usual d. well-known
10. We should protect our environment. "Protect" is similar in meaning to .......... Longman
    a. appear b. damage c. avoid d. preserve
11. Modern technology makes life better for most of us. "Modern" is an antonym of ..........
    a. new b. recent c. old d. usual
12. "Strange" is an antonym of ..........
    a. usual b. unknown c. unusual d. tiny

### Prefixes & Suffixes

13. The word "coast" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix .......... 2022
    a. -ance b. -ful c. -al d. -less
14. We add the prefix .......... to the word "usual" to form the opposite.
    a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. im-
15. We turn the verb "visit" into a noun by adding the suffix .......... 2022
    a. -less b. -al c. -able d. -or
16. We turn the verb "appear" into a noun by adding the suffix .......... 2022
    a. -ance b. -ous c. -ment d. -ive
17. The internet is a wonder of modern technology. The prefix .......... refers to machines and electronic equipment. WB
    a. un- b. techno- c. dis- d. re-

### Guessing the meaning

18. The rock looks like a pyramid. This means it is in the .................. of a pyramid. (2022)
   a. shade  b. shake  c. shape  d. share
19. There are many tall trees in .................. habitats.
   a. mountain  b. polar  c. coastal  d. forest
20. There is a flood which covers the land. This means everything is .................. by water. (2022)
   a. surrounded  b. added  c. protected  d. painted

## Language

### 1- The present simple passive (without by) المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

تتكون الجملة فى اللغة الإنجليزية من:

**Subject** (فاعل) **+ verb** (فعل) **+ object** (مفعول)

يسمى هذا التكوين مبنى للمعلوم (Active) وهناك صيغة أخرى تسمى "مبنى للمجهول" "Passive" كما يلى:

**Form التكوين**

**Agent** (نائب فاعل) **+ am / is / are +** التصريف الثالث للفعل

نستخدم صيغة المبنى للمجهول بدون (by) عندما يكون الفعل أهم من الفاعل أو عندما لا نعرف الفاعل أو أنه ليس من المهم ذكر الفاعل.

لاحظ طريقة تحويل الجملة من المبنى للمعلوم للمبنى للمجهول بدون ذكر الفاعل.

١- نبدأ الجملة الجديدة بمفعول الجملة المبنية للمعلوم حيث يصبح نائب فاعل.

٢- نضيف قبل الفعل verb to be (am / is /are) فى المضارع حسب المفعول الجديد.

٣- نضع الفعل فى التصريف الثالث past participle

**Ex.** People call warm, wet areas rainforests. **(Active)**
- Warm, wet areas are called rainforests. **(Passive)**

**Ex.** We know these areas as polar habitats. **(Active)**
- These areas are known as polar habitats. **(Passive)**





### 2- The present simple passive (with by)

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول مع وجود (by) آخر الجملة عندما نريد التركيز على الشخص أو الشئ الذى قام بالفعل.

فى هذه الحالة تكون الصيغة كالآتى:

**Agent** (نائب فاعل) **+ am /is/are +** التصريف الثالث للفعل **+ by +** فاعل

**Ex.** More than 14 million tourists visit Egypt every year. **(Active)**
- Egypt is visited by more than 14 million tourists every year. **(Passive)**

**Ex.** Locals call the lake 'The Shooting Star'. **(Active)**
- The lake is called 'The Shooting Star' by locals. **(Passive)**

**Ex.** Grasslands surround the national park. **(Active)**
- The national park is surrounded by grasslands. **(Passive)**

**Negative النفى**

فاعل **+ don't / doesn't + inf. +** مفعول **(Active)**

**Agent** (نائب فاعل) **+ am / is / are + not +** التصريف الثالث للفعل **+ by +** فاعل **(Passive)**

**Ex.** Trees don't surround the school. **(Active)**
- The school isn't surrounded by trees. **(Passive)**

لاحظ اذا كانت الجملة المبنية للمعلوم منفية فكذلك تكون الجملة المبنية للمجهول منفية لكن باستخدام:

**verb to be (am not / isn't / aren't)**

**Ex.** Tourists don't visit Gebel Elba. **(Active)**
- Gebel Elba isn't visited by tourists. **(Passive)**

**Question السؤال**

(كلمة استفهام) **Do / Does +** فاعل **+ inf. +** مفعول **.......?** **(Active)**

(كلمة استفهام) **Am / Is / Are +** نائب فاعل **+** التصريف الثالث للفعل **+ by +** فاعل? **(Passive)**

**Ex.** Do millions of tourists visit Egypt? **(Active)**
- Is Egypt visited by millions of tourists? **(Passive)**

Notes

١- لاحظ اذا كان هناك فعل ناقص فى الجملة المبنية للمعلوم
(can / could / will / would / must / should /may / might)
فعند التحويل للمبنى للمجهول نستبدل (am / is / are) بـ(be) قبل الفعل كما يلى:

**فاعل + by + التصريف الثالث للفعل + be + الفعل الناقص + (نائب فاعل) Agent**

**Ex.** We can play football here. **(Active)**
- Football can be played here. **(Passive)**

- وفى النفى ننفى الفعل الناقص بوضع **not** بعده.

**Ex.** Football can't be played here. **(Passive)**

٢- لاحظ أن ضمائر الفاعل فى الجملة المبنية للمعلوم يتم تحويلها إلى ضمائر مفعول بعد (by) فى الجملة المبنية للمجهول كما يلى:

**Ex.** I watch TV every day.
- TV is watched by me every day.

٣- عند تحويل سؤال يبدأ بـ (Who) إلى المبنى للمجهول:

**Ex.** Who plays football?

لاحظ أن الفعل جاء مباشرة بعد (Who) وعند التحويل نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

**Who + is / are + نائب فاعل + التصريف الثالث للفعل + by?**

**Ex.** Who is football played by?

٤- لاحظ عند التحويل من مبنى للمعلوم الى مبنى للمجهول فان بعض الكلمات تبدو جمع فى معناها لكنها تأخذ فعل مفرد مثل: الاخبار **news** / معلومات **information** / معدات **equipment** / نصيحة **advice**

**Ex.** These websites provide you with useful information.
- Useful information is provided by these websites.

٥- لاحظ ان جملة الامتحان قد تأتى فى صيغة المبنى للمعلوم فلا تنخدع بالجملة وتحولها بالخطأ للمجهول.

**Ex.** Smoke from fires.......... (pollute) the air.
- Smoke from fires pollutes the air.

## Exercises on Language

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets**

- يوجد تمرينات اضافية للواجب المنزلى فى ملحق الكتاب

### SB, WB & Exams

1. The land is .................. (cover) by ice in polar habitats. 2023 WB
2. Squash .................. (doesn't) played by many students. 2022 WB
3. Many houses are .................. (building) in coastal areas by people. WB
4. Four important wetlands .................. (is) found in Egypt. WB





5. Fewer magazines are .................. (sell) today because of the internet.
6. Some of the turtles' eggs .................. (eat) by birds and animals. SB
7. Ice .................. (cover) large areas of wetlands. 2023
8. The Great Egyptian Museum .................. (visited) by many people every year. 2022

### Longman Exercises

9. The park .................. (surrounds) by grasslands.
10. The national park is .................. (visiting) by many people every year.
11. Which kinds of habitats .................. (are finding) at Gebel Elba?
12. My room .................. (doesn't tidy) by my sister; I usually tidy it myself.
13. Lunch is usually prepared and .................. (serving) by my sister when my mother is away.
14. Mobile phones are widely .................. (using) everywhere.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

15. .................. (Be) pizza served in this restaurant every day?
16. Ahmed is .................. (take) to school every day by his father.
17. Rice is .................. (grow) in Egypt by many farmers.
18. The news .................. (are) shown on TV daily.
19. The homework .................. (doesn't) done by me.
20. What .................. (hunt) by caracals?
21. English .................. (speak) almost everywhere.
22. Many eggs are .................. (lay) every day by chickens.
23. A lot of trees are .................. (cutting) down for their wood.

## Speaking

**1 Talking about animals and animal habitats.**

الحديث عن الحيوانات وأين تعيش (بيئتها)

| | |
|---|---|
| - What's a polar habitat?<br>ما هى البيئة القطبية؟ | It's always cold and is often covered by ice.<br>دائما تكون باردة وغالباً مغطاة بالثلج. |
| - What animal that lives in a grassland habitat?<br>ما الحيوان الذى يعيش فى البيئة العشبية؟ | The caracal lives there.<br>يعيش حيوان عناق الأرض هناك. |
| - Where are coastal habitats found?<br>أين توجد البيئات الساحلية؟ | They are found along the coast of the sea. توجد على امتداد ساحل البحر |

## 2 Talking about a natural wonder; Wadi al-Weshwashy.

الحديث عن إحدى العجائب الطبيعية، وادي الوشواشي

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Where is Wadi al-Weshwashy? أين يكون؟ | It's in south of Sinai. في جنوب سيناء |
| - What can you see there? ماذا يمكن أن ترى هناك؟ | We can see mountains and a lake. يمكننا رؤية جبال وبحيرة . |
| - What can you do there? ماذا يمكن أن تفعل هناك؟ | We can climb mountains and swim in the lake. يمكننا تسلق الجبال والسباحة في البحيرة. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Ahmed and Osman are talking about animal habitats.**

**Ahmed** : Where were you yesterday?
**Osman** : ❶ ..........................................................................
**Ahmed** : Gebel Elba! ❷ ..........................................................................?
**Osman** : It's near the Red Sea.
**Ahmed** : ❸ ..........................................................................?
**Osman** : You can see many animals and birds there. Do you want to visit it?
**Ahmed** : ❹ ..........................................................................
**Osman** : You can come with me the next time.
**Ahmed** : When will you go?
**Osman** : ❺ ..........................................................................

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**believed - million - wonders - believes - Period - Desert**

Egypt has some wonders. The Great Sand Sea is one of these ❶ ........ This is a part of the Western ❷ ........, and here you can find lots of big sand mountains and some unusual glass. It is ❸ ........ that the glass is more than 29 ❹ ........ years old.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .......... habitat is next to the sea and you find rocks there.
   a. mountain  b. coastal  c. polar  d. rainforest





2. Marsa Matrouh is to the west of Egypt. To change "west" into an adjective, we add the suffix " .......... ".
   a. -ern  b. -ly  c. -ive  d. -able
3. The children have some strange ideas, but they are helpful. "Strange" here means " .......... ".
   a. bad  b. unusual  c. usual  d. boring
4. The locals called the lake "The shooting star". "The antonym of "locals" is .......... .
   a. natives  b. foreigners  c. habitats  d. citizens
5. There is a high fence around the castle. This means it is .......... by a high fence.
   a. filled  b. covered  c. surrounded  d. destroyed

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. These pictures are .......... (takes) by my sister.
2. Many new cars .......... (make) by robots in factories. WB
3. Dates .......... (sell) in many shops in Siwa.

### 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to a natural wonder in Egypt"

..........................................................................
..........................................................................
..........................................................................
..........................................................................
..........................................................................
..........................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- Where is this wonder in Egypt?
- Why is this place a wonder?
- What can you see there?
- What can you do there?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات
- This natural wonder is in ..............
- It is the best place to ..................
- You can see .............. there.
- You can (do) .............. there.

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6-8 WB pages 72-73

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب.

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fossils | حفريات | depression | منخفض |
| species | فصيلة/نوع (فصائل / أنواع) | stable | اسطبل |
| length | طول | preserved (adj) | محفوظ |
| remote | بعيد | preserve (d) | يحفظ/يصون/يحمى |
| carriage | عربة يجرها خيول - عربة قطار | treat (ed) | يعامل |
| owner | مالك | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| southeast | جنوب شرقي | emperor | امبراطور |
| the latest | الأحدث | remains | بقايا |
| white rhino | وحيد القرن الأبيض | Greek | يونانى |
| crocodile | تمساح | capital | عاصمة |
| whale | حوت | lighthouse | فنارة |
| researcher | باحث | damage (d) | يتلف/يدمر |
| valley | وادى | expect (ed) | يتوقع |
| roof | سطح مبنى | pull (ed) | يجر / يسحب |
| ingredient | مكوّن/عنصر | design (ed) | يصمم (شئ) |
| pipes | أنابيب | park (ed) | يركن سيارة |
| buffalo | جاموسة | | |

## Important places

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| the Fayum Depression | منخفض الفيوم | the Cairo Tower | برج القاهرة |
| Pantheon | بانثيون (معبد يونانى فى روما) | Petra | مدينة البتراء (فى الأردن) |
| the Great Wall of China | سور الصين العظيم | the Qaitbay Citadel | قلعة قايتباى (فى الإسكندرية) |
| the statue of the Sphinx | تمثال أبو الهول | Wadi al-Hitan (The Valley of the Whales) | وادى الحيتان |
| the Seven Wonders of the World | عجائب الدنيا السبع | | |





## Definitions

تم بالتدريب فى ملحق الكتاب

| Word | Definition |
|---|---|
| depression منخفض | the land that is below[1] the area around it |
| carriage عربة يجرها خيول | a vehicle[2] pulled by a horse or horses |
| fossil حفرية | - part of a plant or animal that lived thousands of years ago, which is now rock[3]<br>- the remains[4] of animals or plants that lived in the past |
| length طول | how long something is |
| owner مالك | a person who owns[5], or has, something |
| preserved محفوظ | - if something is preserved, it is kept safe, so it is not damaged or destroyed[6]<br>- kept safe from being damaged |
| remote بعيد | very far from somewhere[7] |
| stable اسطبل | a building where people keep horses |
| species فصيلة/فصائل | a group of animals, plants or birds of the same kind |
| treat يعامل | behave[8] towards[9] someone in a certain way[10] |

١- أسفل
٢- مركبة
٣- صخرة
٤- بقايا
٥- يمتلك
٦- مدمر
٧- مكان ما
٨- يتصرف / يتعامل
٩- تجاه
١٠- طريقة معينة

## Synonyms & Antonyms

تم بالتدريب فى ملحق الكتاب

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite | المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| unkind | غير عطوف / قاس | cruel | kind | عطوف |
| hard | صعب | difficult | easy / simple | سهل/بسيط |
| terrible | فظيع / سيء | very bad | amazing | مذهل |
| warm | دافئ | quite hot | cool | بارد - لطيف |
| lucky | محظوظ | fortunate | unlucky | غير محظوظ |
| remote | بعيد | far away | near | قريب |
| preserve | يحفظ | keep | damage | يتلف |
| international | دولى/عالمى | universal /global | national | محلى |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

يوجد شرح لبادئات ولواحق الكلمات فى مقدمة الكتاب

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples |
|---|---|---|---|
| un- | opposite | تعطى عكس المعنى | unlucky / unkind / unhappy<br>غير محظوظ / غير عطوف / حزين |
| inter- | between | تعطى معنى "بين" | international |
| -y | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | windy / lucky / healthy<br>شديد الرياح / محظوظ / صحى |

| -er / -or | person | تكون اسم الفاعل / تحول الفعل إلى اسم | owner/builder/farmer/emperor | مالك/بناء/مزارع/امبراطور |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| -ly | adj → adv | تحول الصفة إلى الحال | badly | بشكل سئ |
| -ing | v → adj | تحول الفعل إلى صفة | amazing | مذهل |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a / per year | في العام | drive.... away | يقود.... بعيداً |
| (be) named as | يتم اختياره كـ/يُسمى باسم | take.... away | يأخذ.... بعيداً |
| get wet and cold | يبتل ويصاب بالبرد | find out | يكتشف/يعرف |
| look tired | يبدو متعباً | in length | في الطول |
| keep safe | يبقى آمناً | belong to | ينتمي لـ |
| give advice | يعطي النصيحة | work for | يعمل لدى |
| on land | على الأرض | wait for | ينتظر |
| far from | بعيداً عن | around 27 BCE | حوالي عام ٢٧ قبل الميلاد |
| | | around 120 CE | حوالي عام ١٢٠ بعد الميلاد |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| learn | يتعلم | learnt / learned | learnt / learned |
| burn | يحترق | burnt / burned | burnt / burned |
| see | يرى - يفهم | saw | seen |
| drive | يقود | drove | driven |
| understand | يفهم | understood | understood |
| take away | يأخذ بعيداً | took away | taken away |
| keep | يحتفظ - يحفظ - يظل | kept | kept |

## Language Notes

### 1) long / length

- **long (adj)** طويل (صفة)
  Ex. The river is really long.
- **length (n)** الطول (اسم)
  Ex. The river is 6 kilometers in length.
  - لاحظ استخدام حرف جر in قبل أسماء القياسات.





### 2) treat

- **treat (ed)** يعامل
  Ex. She treats me like one of the family.
- **treat (ed)** يعالج
  Ex. It was difficult to treat all the patients at the same time.

### 3) late / the latest

- **late (adj)** متأخر (صفة)
  Ex. I am never late to school.
- **the latest** الأحدث (صيغة تفضيل)
  Ex. I am interested in the latest technology.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- The road is 15 kilometres in ..........
a. long b. tall c. heavy d. length

2- All students should be .......... equally.
a. driven b. burnt c. treated d. damaged

3- Have you read about the .......... inventions?
a. late b. latest c. latter d. lately




SB page (6)



استمع إلى النصوص

### Fossils[1] of the desert

The Fayum Depression[2] is an area of desert, southwest[3] of Cairo. Many ancient fossils are often found here, but the species[4] of animal fossil might surprise you: crocodiles[5], turtles and whales[6]. The most amazing fossils are the whale fossils. At Wadi al-Hitan, 'The Valley[7] of the Whales', hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were found by scientists in 1902. The scientists were surprised to find out[8] that these whales had legs, so they once walked on land.

In 2005, the fossils at Wadi al-Hitan were studied by a team of international[9] scientists. The fossils were preserved[10] really well and some of them were 21 metres in length[11]. It was discovered that these whales belong to[12] the same family of animals as camels and giraffes[13].



١- حفريات
٢- منخفض الفيوم
٣- جنوب شرق
٤- فصيلة/فصائل
٥- التماسيح
٦- الحيتان
٧- وادي
٨- يكتشف/يعرف
٩- دولي
١٠- حُفظت
١١- الطول
١٢- ينتمي إلى
١٣- الزراف

The fossils are so important that Wadi al-Hitan was called a UNESCO*[14] World Heritage Site[15] in 2005. However, it is very remote[16]. As a result, it is only visited by about 1,000 people a year.

Today, Egyptian scientists are studying some of the fossils at Mansoura University using some of the latest technology, and they hope to learn more about these amazing[17] whales of the desert.

١٤- منظمة اليونسكو
١٥- موقع تراثي
١٦- بعيد
١٧- مذهل

*UNESCO = The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتعليم والعلوم والثقافة

**Say it correctly**

* species — ينطق حرف e الأول في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق حرفي ee في كلمة bee وينطق حرف ci مثل نطق sh في كلمة fish وينطق حرف s الأخير مثل z

**Reading Skill** مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. What is the text about? عما يتحدث النص؟
2. Infer from the text what the most amazing fossils in the Fayum Depression are. استنتج من النص ما هي أكثر الحفريات في منخفض الفيوم روعة.
3. Summarise the first paragraph in two sentences. لخص الفقرة الأولى في جملتين.

**Writing Skill** مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الإنشائي)

1. Many ancient fossils are found in the Fayum Depression. توجد الكثير من الحفريات القديمة في منخفض الفيوم.
2. At Wadi al-Hitan, hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were found. تم العثور على آلاف من الحفريات القديمة لحيتان في وادي الحيتان.
3. The fossils were preserved well. كانت الحفريات محفوظة جيدًا.

**Answers**

1. Fossils at the Fayum Depression.
2. The whole fossils.
3. Many ancient fossils of crocodiles, turtles, and whales are found. The scientists were surprised to find out that these whales had legs.

SB Page (8)

## Black Beauty (By Anna Sewell)



The next winter was very hard for all the horses. The weather was terrible[1]. There was rain every day and it was often windy[2]. Some of the drivers were very poor, so their horses worked all night. Other horses didn't have stables[3]. They stayed out all night and got wet and cold. I was lucky[4] because Jerry was a kind owner[5] and I was always put in a warm stable.

One day Jerry and I waited for work next to a park. I watched as an old carriage[6] drove up next to us. It was pulled[7] by a horse who was thin and looked tired. I looked again and saw that it was my old friend, Ginger. She looked terrible.

We talked for a short time. Ginger was very unhappy. She had had many different homes and worked very hard. All her owners were unkind[8] to her and treated[9] her badly.

"You're my only friend," Ginger told me before her owner drove her away." I understood that I had a much better life than many other horses.

١- سيء
٢- شديد الرياح
٣- اسطبلات
٤- محظوظ
٥- مالك
٦- عربة يجرها خيول
٧- يجر
٨- قاس
٩- يعامل





WB Page (72)



The first Pantheon[1] in Rome was built in around 27 BCE[2].* However, it was burnt down[3] by a fire in around 80 CE[4].* The building that we know today was built by Emperor[5] Hadrian in around 120 CE. It was designed with the help of a famous Greek builder[6], who was called Apollodorus of Damascus[7]. Perhaps the most amazing part of the building is a large hole in the roof[8]. The hole was used to give the building light. Sometimes, rain falls through the hole, too. However, today, water is taken away by special[9] pipes[10] in the floor.

* BCE = Before Common Era
* CE = Common Era

١- بانثيون (معبد يوناني)
٢- قبل الميلاد
٣- يحترق كليًا
٤- بعد الميلاد
٥- امبراطور
٦- بناء يوناني
٧- أبولودوروس الدمشقي
٨- سطح مبنى
٩- من نوع خاص
١٠- أنابيب

## Audioscript

SB Page (7)

A list of the new Seven Wonders of the World[1] was made in 2007. The city of Petra[2] in Jordan was named[3] as one of them. The Taj Mahal[4] in India is also in the list. This beautiful monument was built by Shah Jahan, to remember his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. Another new wonder of the world is the Great Wall of China[5]. Not many people know that the wall was built with an unusual ingredient[6] - rice!

١- عجائب الدنيا السبع الجديدة
٢- البتراء «مدينة في الأردن»
٣- تم اختيارها
٤- تاج محل
٥- سور الصين العظيم
٦- مُكوّن / عنصر

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمرينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

### Definitions

1. .......... are the remains of animals or plants that lived in the past. WB

   a. Species b. Fossils c. Stables d. Carriages

2. The .......... of something is how long it is.

   a. weight b. age c. colour d. length

3. A .......... is something that people travel in and it's pulled by a horse.

   a. car b. boat c. bike d. carriage

### Synonyms & Antonyms

4. He is unkind; so I don't like him. "Unkind" is similar in meaning to ..........

   a. kind b. nice c. cruel d. happy

5. The hotel where we stayed was terrible. "Terrible" is an antonym of ..........
a. amazing  b. very bad  c. ugly  d. expensive

6. The exam was hard and I couldn't answer it. "Hard" is a synonym of ..........
a. easy  b. cool  c. difficult  d. different

7. I really enjoy warm weather. "Warm" is similar in meaning to ..........
a. cool  b. quite hot  c. rainy  d. cold

8. Black Beauty was lucky because he had a kind owner. "Lucky" is an antonym of ..........
a. happy  b. pleased  c. unlucky  d. unkind

9. The opposite of warm is ..........
a. rare  b. hot  c. soft  d. cool

**Prefixes & Suffixes**

10. We add the suffix .......... to turn the word "wind" into an adjective.
a. -ness  b. -ment  c. -y  d. -ly

11. We add the prefix .......... to make the opposite of happy.
a. im-  b. un-  c. dis-  d. re-

12. We add the suffix .......... to the verb "own" to refer to the "person".
a. -or  b. -ir  c. -less  d. -er

13. The suffix .......... turns an adjective into an adverb.
a. -ive  b. -ly  c. -ment  d. -ion

14. The prefix .......... turns the word "lucky" into its opposite meaning.
a. dis-  b. un-  c. ir-  d. im-

15. We add " .......... " to the word "national" to give the opposite.
a. pre-  b. un-  c. dis-  d. inter-

**Guessing the meaning**

16. If you are nice to someone, this means you .......... them well. SB
a. hurt  b. punish  c. treat  d. hate

17. If something is .........., it is kept safe, so it is not damaged or destroyed.
a. preserved  b. thrown  c. burnt  d. killed

18. The village is 80 km from the nearest city. This means that it is .......... SB
a. long  b. close  c. remote  d. nearby







## 1- The past simple passive (without by) المبنى للمجهول فى زمن الماضى البسيط

**Form التكوين**

**Agent (نائب فاعل) + was / were + التصريف الثالث للفعل**

- لاحظ طريقة تحويل الجملة من المبنى للمعلوم للمبنى للمجهول فى زمن الماضى البسيط بدون ذكر الفاعل.

١- نبدأ الجملة الجديدة بمفعول الجملة المبنية للمعلوم ويصبح نائب فاعل.

٢- نضيف قبل الفعل verb to be (was/were) فى الماضى حسب الفاعل الجديد.

٣- نضع الفعل الأساسى فى التصريف الثالث past participle.

**Ex.** Scientists discovered that these whales belong to the same family of animals as camels and giraffes. **(Active)**

- It was discovered that these whales belong to the same family of animals as camels and giraffes. **(Passive)**

## 2- The past simple passive (with by)

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول مع وجود (by) اخر الجملة عندما نريد التركيز على الشخص أو الشئ الذى قام بالفعل. فى هذه الحالة تكون الصيغة كالاتى:

**Agent (نائب فاعل) + was/were + التصريف الثالث للفعل + by + فاعل**

**Ex.** Scientists found hundreds of fossils of ancient whales in 1902. **(Active)**

- Hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were found by scientists in 1902. **(Passive)**

**Negative النفى**

فاعل + didn't + inf + مفعول **(Active)**

**Agent (نائب فاعل) + was/were + not + التصريف الثالث للفعل + by + فاعل** **(Passive)**

**verb to be (wasn't / weren't)**

**Ex.** Trees didn't surround the school. **(Active)**

- The school wasn't surrounded by trees. **(Passive)**

لاحظ اذا كانت الجملة المبنية للمعلوم منفية فكذلك تكون الجملة المبنية للمجهول منفية لكن باستخدام

**Ex.** They didn't damage the monuments. **(Active)**

- The monuments weren't damaged. **(Passive)**

**Question السؤال**

(كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + inf. + مفعول....? (Active)

(كلمة استفهام) Was / Were + نائب فاعل + past participle + by + فاعل....? (Passive)

Ex. Did millions of tourists visit Egypt? (Active)

- Was Egypt visited by millions of tourists? (Passive)

Ex. When did they visit the Cairo Tower? (Active)

- When was the Cairo Tower visited by them? (Passive)

**Notes**

ا- لاحظ اذا كان هناك فعل ناقص فى الجملة المبنية للمعلوم (could / would / should) فعند التحويل للمبنى للمجهول نستبدل was / were بـ be:

Agent (نائب فاعل) + الفعل الناقص + be + التصريف الثالث للفعل + by + فاعل

Ex. We could play football here. (Active)

- Football could be played here. (Passive)

وعند النفى نضع not (n't) بعد الفعل الناقص.

Ex. Football couldn't be played here. (Passive)

٢- عند تحويل سؤال يبدأ بـ (Who) إلى المبنى للمجهول:

Ex. Who invented the telephone? (Active)

لاحظ أن الفعل جاء مباشرة بعد (Who) وعند التحويل نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Who + was / were + نائب فاعل + p.p. + by?

Ex. Who was the telephone invented by? (Passive)

## Exercises on Language

- يوجد تدريبات اضافية للواجب المنزلى فى ملحق الكتاب

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)in brackets:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. The Great Wall of China .................. (is) built with rice. SB
2. Whales with legs were .................. (find) by some researchers. SB
3. The Taj Mahal was .................. (building) by Shah Jahan. SB
4. A list of the new Seven Wonders .................. (made) in 2007. SB
5. Fossils .................. (were studying) at Wadi al-Hitan by a team of scientists. SB
6. Wadi al-Hitan .................. (visited) by about 1000 people last year. SB
7. Animal fossils .................. (found) in the Fayum Depression many years ago. SB
8. This house .................. (build) years ago by a famous engineer.





9. My house .................. (is) built in around 2000.
10. She came late, so she .................. (punish).
11. The news .................. (be) watched by Omar yesterday.

**Longman Exercises**

12. The unusual cave .................. (cause) by the sea years ago.
13. When was your younger brother .................. (bore)?
14. Who .................. (did) this nice photograph taken by?
15. When was Petra .................. (name) as one of the new Seven Wonders of the World?
16. Rami .................. (isn't) punished yesterday; he wasn't mistaken.

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

17. Bridges and roads .................. (is designed) by great engineers in the past.
18. In the past rubbish .................. (take away) to remote places.
19. I .................. (surprised) by the present that my friends gave me.
20. Many buildings .................. (are damaged) by the earthquake last month.
21. The carriage was .................. (pull) by one horse.
22. Who .................. (invented this machine) by?



## General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



- يوجد تدريبات إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

**1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**stable - was treated - owners – train - treated - carriage**

"Black Beauty" is a story about a black horse. This horse had very hard times. He (1) .......... badly by most of his (2) .......... . He had to pull a (3) .......... and he went fast through the crowded streets. The weather was usually terrible. He was lucky as he had a (4) .......... to sleep in. Other horses didn't have a place to stay in.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .................. is a group of animals, plants or birds of the same kind.

   a. Fossils  b. Remains  c. Species  d. Grasses

2. The antonym of the word "near" is ..................

   a. remote  b. close  c. closed  d. hereabouts

3. "............" means kept safe from being damaged.
   a. Passed b. Preserved c. Revised d. Destroyed
4. "Lucky" is similar in meaning to "............".
   a. cruel b. different c. fortunate d. cool
5. We turn the verb amaze into an adjective by using the suffix ............
   a. -ing b. -ly c. -y d. -able

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

WB

1. The stadium ............ (not build) in 2005.
2. Our flat ............ (is) burnt last month, so we moved to a new one.
3. The statue of the Sphinx ............ (make) like a lion with a person's head.

WB

4. The Cairo Tower ............ (designed) by Naoum Shebib in 1956.
5. The Pyramids ............ (build) thousands of years ago. المنوفية 2022

## 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about working animals"

مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- What kind of work do working animals do?
- How is it difficult for them?
- How should we treat animals?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات
- They had to work ............
- They didn't have ............
- We should treat the working animals............

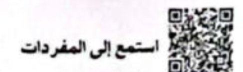




SB pages 9-11 WB pages 74-76

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب.

## Key Vocabulary





| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fur | فراء/فرو | confused | مرتبك/متحير |
| population | تعداد السكان | label | ملصق/بطاقة (معلومات) |
| endangered | مهدد بالانقراض | lifestyle | أسلوب حياة |
| deforestation | إزالة الغابات | skills | مهارات |
| active | نشيط | personification | تجسيد/تشخيص |
| appearance | مظهر/شكل خارجي | mongoose | حيوان النمس |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| directions | اتجاهات | loss | خسارة/فقد |
| traffic lights | إشارات المرور | level | مستوى |
| roundabout | دوران/ملتقى دائرى | role | دور |
| turning | منعطف | aim | هدف |
| several | عديد | heading | عنوان رئيس |
| wild | البرية - برى | forest fires | حرائق الغابات |
| clarification | توضيح | avoid (ed) | يتجنب |
| tongue-twister | جملة صعبة النطق | endanger (ed) | يعرض للخطر |
| seashells | أصداف بحرية | hunt (ed) | يصطاد |
| fighting | قتال/شجار | form (ed) | يشكّل |
| volcano | بركان | deliver (ed) | يوصل - يسلم إلى |
| products | منتجات | control (led) | يتحكم فى |
| app (application) | تطبيق (على الهاتف) | discuss (ed) | يناقش |
| mainly | بشكل رئيسى/إلى حد بعيد | | |

## Definitions

قم بالتدريب فى ملحق الكتاب

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| active | نشيط | someone who is active can move and do things easily[1] |
| confused | مرتبك/متحير | unable to understand something clearly[2] |
| deforestation | إزالة الغابات | the cutting down of trees in a large area, or the destruction[3] of forests by people |
| fur | فراء/فرو | the thick hair that covers the body of an animal |
| label | ملصق | a word or phrase to explain[4] things in a picture, diagram[5], etc. |
| mongoose | حيوان النمس | a small animal with a long body and tail, which lives in Africa and Asia[6] |

١- بسهولة
٢- بوضوح
٣- تدمير
٤- يوضح/يفسر
٥- رسم بيانى
٦- قارة آسيا

تم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| skill | مهارة | talent | inability | عدم القدرة |
| different | مختلف | unlike | the same | نفس الشئ |
| thick | سميك | heavy | thin | رفيع |
| active | نشيط | energetic | lazy | كسول |
| several | عديد | many | few | قليل |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

يوجد شرح لبادئات ولواحق الكلمات في مقدمة الكتاب

تم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| en- | n → v | تحول الاسم إلى الفعل | endanger | يعرض للخطر |
| -ion | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | population / personification / direction | السكان/تشخيص/اتجاه |
| -ed | v → adj | تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | confused / coloured / endangered | مرتبك/ملون/معرض للخطر |
| -ing | | | including | مشتمل على |
| -ly | adj → adv | تحول الصفة إلى الحال | mainly | أساسًا |
| -ness | adj → n | تحول الصفة إلى اسم | happiness | سعادة |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| give an example | يعطى مثال | in the wild | فى البرية |
| a different way / another way | بطريقة أخرى | look after | يعتنى بـ |
| I see | فهمت | on the sea shore | على شاطئ البحر |
| sound like | يبدو كأنه | stay for about | يبقى لحوالى |
| such as | مثل | up to 10 years | يصل إلى عمر ١٠ سنوات |
| has a role to play | لديه دوراً ليقوم به | (be) able to | قادر على |
| because of | بسبب | famous for | مشهور بـ |
| in the 1800s | فى بداية القرن التاسع عشر | | |

### Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة فى آخر الكتاب

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| fight | يتقاتل/يتشاجر | fought | fought |
| bite | يعض | bit | bitten |
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |
| catch | يصطاد - يمسك | caught | caught |
| mean | يعنى/يقصد | meant | meant |





## Language Notes

### 1 the young / the poor

نستخدم the ويليها بعض الصفات لتعنى فئة من الناس.

- **the young** صغار السن
  Ex. We should encourage the young to do sports.
- **the poor** الفقراء
  Ex. The charity aims to help the poor.

**the rich** الأغنياء / **the blind** المكفوفين / **the deaf** الصم / **the dumb** البكم / **the elderly** كبار السن

### 2 Adjective + -ed / -ing

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (ed) لتصف من/ما يشعر بالصفة أما الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (ing) تصف مسبب الصفة.

- **confused** مرتبك/متحير
- **confusing** مُربك/مُحير

Ex. Although the questions were confusing, I wasn't confused.

- **amazed** مندهش
- **amazing** مدهش

Ex. The students were amazed by the amazing pictures in the book.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We all should help ..........
   a. poor b. rich c. the poor d. the rich
2. I didn't know what to do, the situation was ..........
   a. confused b. confusing c. amazed d. interested

## Audioscript

SB Page (9)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Samir** : I like the way the writer uses personification[1] to describe the horses.

**Taha** : Personification? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean by that.

**Samir** : I mean that she makes the horses sound like[2] people.

**Taha** : Could you give me an example?

**Samir** : Yes, for example, the writer calls the horses "I" or "she" not "it" and she talks about the horses' feelings[3]. I think the writer is trying to make you feel that you and the horses are not very different species.

١- تجسيد/تشخيص
٢- يبدو كأنه
٣- مشاعر

**Taha** : When you say "not very different species", do you mean the writer thinks that people and horses are the same?

**Samir** : Yes. Humans[4] and horses are on the same level[5]. Do you see what I mean?

**Taha** : No, I'm still confused[6]. Could you say that another way?

**Samir** : OK. I feel that personification makes us understand the horses better. We can all feel happy or sad.

**Taha** : Ah. I see. I understand that now.

٤- البشر
٥- على نفس المستوى
٦- مرتبك / متحير

SB Page (9)

### 1 Asking for directions[1]

**Man 1** : So, cross the road at the traffic lights[2], and then, just before the bridge, you'll get to a roundabout[3].

**Man 2** : I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by roundabout?

**Man 1** : Oh, you know, it's a circle in the road where there are four roads meet. Take the second road, in other words, go straight ahead[4].

**Man 2** : Sorry. I'm still confused. Could you say that in another way? Do I take the second road, or go straight ahead?

**Man 1** : Sorry, what I mean is, don't take the first turning[5], take the second one, which is also the road straight ahead of you.

### 2 Explaining how something works

**Randa** : This is an amazing app[6]! It can name any plant you want to find out about. You just need to take a photo of it.

**Nihal** : I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean. Could you say it another way?

**Randa** : OK, let's say you see a plant that you want to know the name of. You just take a photo of it on your phone, and then choose find, and the app will tell you the name of the plant.

### 3 Discussing an opinion

**Boy 1** : The problem isn't just that animals' habitats are disappearing. The problem is they are disappearing because of our bad habits[7]!

**Boy 2** : When you say our bad habits, do you mean what we are doing?

**Boy 1** : Yes. I mean that it's because we want certain products so badly, we are prepared to destroy our environment to get them.

**Boy 2** : Can you give me an example?

**Boy 1** : We are destroying forests to build more roads, for example.

١- اتجاهات
٢- إشارات المرور
٣- ملتقى دائرى / دوران
٤- سر بشكل مستقيم
٥- منعطف
٦- تطبيق «على الهاتف»
٧- عادات








SB page (10)



**Introduction**

There are about 30 different species of mongooses[1] in the world.

**Appearance**

A mongoose has a long body, with short legs and a long tail[2]. Their bodies are covered by thick fur[3]*.

**Skills**

Mongooses can see and hear very well, which helps them to find food and avoid[4] danger. Mongooses are famous for fighting[5] snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting[6] them.

**Habitat**

The mongoose is found in Africa, Asia[7]* and parts of Europe[8]. It lives in forests, wetlands or grasslands, under the ground or rocks. In the 1800s, mongooses were taken to live in several[9] islands in Hawaii[10] and the Caribbean[11] to control the rat populations[12] there. However, they are endangered[13], mainly because of deforestation[14] and loss of habitat[15].

Mongooses eat small animals such as rats, birds, frogs and lizards[16], and also seeds, eggs and nuts[17].

**Lifestyle**

Mongooses are active[18] during the day and sleep at night. Although some live alone, many live in large groups of up to 50[19], where each one has a role[20] to play: some hunt[21] and others look after the young. They can live for up to ten years in the wild[22].

١- حيوان النمس
٢- ذيل
٣- فراء سميك
٤- يتجنب
٥- قتال
٦- عض
٧- قارة آسيا
٨- قارة أوروبا
٩- عديد
١٠- جزر هاواى
١١- منطقة الكاريبى
١٢- تعداد الفئران
١٣- مهدد بالانقراض
١٤- إزالة الغابات
١٥- خسارة / فقدان الموطن
١٦- سحالى
١٧- مكسرات
١٨- نشيط
١٩- يصل إلى عمر ٥٠
٢٠- دور
٢١- يصطاد
٢٢- البرية




* fur — ينطق حرفى ur فى كلمة fur كما ينطقا فى كلمة burn
* Asia — ينطق حرف a الأول فى هذه الكلمة كما ينطق فى كلمة make وينطق حرفى si إما مثل حرفى sh فى fish أو مثل نطق s فى usually

SB Page (11)

Much of the south of England is a coastal habitat next to the sea. Today, sheep and cows enjoy the green grassland where they can eat. However, 250 million years ago, part of this coast was very different. It was then a hot, wetland habitat where animals like crocodiles lived in the wet land. We know this because hundreds of fossils are often found here. Many of them are very well preserved, so scientists can study many species of animals from long ago.

**WB Page (74)**



**Hania** : The sentence in this poem[1] is a tongue-twister[2].

**Malak** : Tongue-twister? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure[3] I understand what you mean by that.

**Hania** : I mean that it is very difficult to say.

**Malak** : Could you give me an example?

**Hania** : Yes, I'll read it: She sells seashells[4] on the sea shore[5].

**Malak** : So when you say it's a tongue-twister, do you mean the letters in the words are all the same?

**Hania** : They aren't all the same, but they are hard to read.

**Malak** : No, I'm still[6] confused. Could you say that another way[7]?

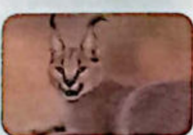
**Hania** : OK. In a tongue-twister, the words are hard to say together quickly.

**Malak** : Ah, I see[8]. I understand that now.

١- قصيدة
٢- صعبة النطق
٣- لست متأكدة
٤- أصداف بحرية
٥- شاطىء
٦- مازلت
٧- بطريقة أخرى
٨- فهمت

**WB Page (75)**

## Caracals



**1- Appearance**

The caracal[1] is a beautiful gold-coloured[2] wildcat[3] with large ears. Caracals are not very big – they grow to about 90 centimetres long.

**2- Skills**

Caracals' large ears help them to hear very well. They also have a lot of fur on their feet, which makes it difficult for other animals to hear them when they are trying to catch[4] them. Caracals can also jump very high and are able to climb trees.

**3- Habitat**

Caracals are found in many places in Africa and the Middle East[5]. They live in deserts, but also in grasslands and forests.

**4- Food**

Caracals catch and eat many animals, including[6] mongooses, birds and rabbits.

**5- Lifestyle**

Caracals are usually active during[7] the night and most live alone. Mother caracals often live in holes that are made by other animals. Caracals usually have between three and six babies (called kittens[8]), who stay with their mother for about ten months. Caracals can live for up to[9] 12 years in the wild.

١- حيوان عناق الأرض
٢- ذهبي اللون
٣- قطة برية
٤- يصطاد
٥- بما فى ذلك/ مشتملا على
٦- أثناء
٧- هريرة «قطة صغيرة»
٨- يصل إلى
٩- الشرق الأوسط





**Reading Skill** مهارة القراءة (الإجابات أسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about .......... يتحدث النص أساسًا عن ........
   a. mongooses  b. caracals
   c. wildcats  d. rabbits
2. Infer from the text why this animal can hear well.
   استنتج من النص لماذا يمكن لهذا الحيوان أن يسمع بشكل جيد.
3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الأخيرة فى جملة واحدة.

**Writing Skill** مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى كتابة الموضوع الإنشائى)

1. The caracal is a wildcat. حيوان عناق الأرض هو قط برى.
2. It has large ears. له أذنان كبيرتان.
3. It has a lot of fur on their feet. له فرو كثيف على قدميه.
4. It lives in deserts, grasslands and forests. يعيش فى الصحراء والبيئة العشبية والغابات.

**Answers**

1. b) caracals.
2. It has large ears.
3. Caracals live in holes. They can live up to 12 years in the wild.

# Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- توجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى وتمرينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف فى ملحق الكتاب

**Definitions**

1. .......... is the cutting down of trees in a large area, or the destruction of forests by people. (Longman/ 2023)
   a. Pollution  b. Deforestation  c. Population  d. Direction
2. Someone who is .......... can move and do things easily.
   a. lazy  b. confused  c. active  d. alone
3. .......... is the thick hair that covers the body of an animal. (Longman)
   a. Fossil  b. Fur  c. Beak  d. Jacket

**Synonyms & Antonyms**

4. "Skill" is similar in meaning to ..........
   a. talent  b. inability  c. difficulty  d. danger
5. "Active" is an antonym of ..........
   a. fast  b. quick  c. lazy  d. hard
6. There are many different types of clothes. "Different" is similar in meaning to ..........
   a. the same  b. similar  c. unlike  d. alike

7. The word "several" and the word " .......... " have the same meaning.
a. many b. little c. few d. no

8. Mongooses' bodies are covered by thick fur. "Thick" is an antonym of ..........
a. big b. large c. huge d. thin

**Prefixes & Suffixes**

9. We turn the verb "confuse" into an adjective by using the suffix..........
a. -ly b. -ed c. -an d. -ion

10. We turn the noun "danger" into a verb by adding the prefix ..........
a. in- b. on- c. en- d. un-

**Guessing the meaning**

11. Waleed has the ability to do things well. He has a ..........
a. marathon b. link c. skill d. distance

12. Could you say that another way? This means I'm .......... SB
a. frightened b. endangered c. bored d. confused

13. She always has an attractive ..........This means she always looks beautiful.
a. population b. deforestation c. direction d. appearance

14. Muhammad has healthy food and does sports. This means that he has a healthy .......... البحيرة 2022
a. house b. lifestyle c. manager d. word

## Speaking

### 1) Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification.

التعبير عن عدم اكتمال الفهم وطلب التوضيح.

- تستخدم العبارات التالية لطلب التوضيح

- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by that.
- آسف، لكنى غير متأكد ماذا تقصد بذلك.
- I'm still confused. Could you say that another way?
- مازلت متحير. هل يمكنك قول ذلك بطريقة أخرى؟
- When you say.......do you mean......?
- عندما تقول ....... هل تقصد .....؟
- Could you give an example?
- هل يمكن أن تعطينى مثالاً؟
- Ah, I see. I understand that now.
- فهمت. لقد فهمت الآن.





### 2) Asking for and giving directions

السؤال عن الاتجاهات والإجابة

- نسأل ونجيب عن الإتجاهات كالآتى:

| Question | Answer |
| --- | --- |
| - How do I get from....to ......? <br> - كيف يمكننى الذهاب من ..... إلى ....؟ <br> - Excuse me, how do I go to the......? <br> - من فضلك، كيف يمكننى الذهاب إلى....؟ | - Take the second turning/ turn right / turn left /go straight ahead. It's on the corner. <br> - خذ المنعطف الثانى/استدر يميناً/استدر يساراً/ انطلق للأمام مباشرة. إنه عند الناصية. |
| - How do I get from the school to the supermarket? <br> - كيف يمكننى الذهاب من المدرسة إلى السوبر ماركت؟ | - Take the second turning, the supermarket is next to the bank. <br> - خذ المنعطف الثانى، السوبر ماركت بجوار البنك. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى وتمرينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف فى ملحق الكتاب

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Marwa and Mrs Fatma are at the library.**

Marwa : Can you give me some advice?
Mrs Fatma : ❶ ..........................................
Marwa : ❷ ..........................................?
Mrs Fatma : You can make a timetable to help you study well.
Marwa : I'm still confused. ❸ ..........................................?
Mrs Fatma : I mean you should manage your time.
Marwa : ❹ .......................................... Thank you.
Mrs Fatma : Do you want anything else?
Marwa : ❺ ..........................................
Mrs Fatma : You're welcome.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**avoid - endangered - found - fur - keep - are found**

I have read an interesting book about mongooses. They have long bodies and short legs. Their bodies are covered by thick ❶ .......... . They can see and hear very well, which helps them to ❷ .......... danger. They ❸ .......... in Africa. They are ❹ .......... because of deforestation and loss of habitat.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .................. means unable to understand something clearly.
   a. Confused b. Endangered c. Included d. Produced
2. My new manager can move and do things easily. This means he's ..................
   a. lazy b. active c. weak d. sad
3. Mongooses are active during the day and sleep at night. "Active" is opposite in meaning to .................. *Longman*
   a. lazy b. fast c. careless d. strong
4. A mongoose has a long body, with short legs and a long tail. Its body is covered by thick .................. *Longman*
   a. skin b. bones c. fur d. leather
5. The .................. is a small animal with a long body and tail.
   a. turtle b. orangutan c. frog d. mongoose

### 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة

"A short story about an amazing animal"

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- What is the name of this animal? - What is special about it?
- Where does it live? - What does it look like?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- This animal is called .................. - It has a ..................
- It is found in .................. - It eats ..................





# Review

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| fossils | حفريات | depression | منخفض | skills | مهارات |
| species | فصيلة / نوع | fur | فراء / فرو | oasis (oases) | واحة (واحات) |
| length | طول | population | تعداد السكان | lifestyle | أسلوب حياة |
| remote | بعيد | endangered | مهدد بالانقراض | preserve (d) | يحفظ / يصون |
| shape | شكل / قالب | deforestation | إزالة الغابات | protect (ed) | يحمى |
| personification | تجسيد | active | نشيط | fill (ed) | يملأ |
| depression | مُنْخَفَض | appearance | مظهر | surround (ed) | يحيط بـ / يطوق |
| owner | مالك | confused | مرتبك / متحير | treat (ed) | يعامل |
| stable | اسطبل | label | ملصق | | |
| wonder | عجيبة - إعجاب - تعجب | preserved (adj) | محمى / محفوظ | | |
| carriage | عربة يجرها خيل | | | | |

### Natural habitats

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| coastal habitat | بيئة ساحلية | wetland habitat | بيئة أرض رطبة (مستنقع) |
| grassland habitat | بيئة عشبية | desert habitat | بيئة صحراوية |
| polar habitat | بيئة قطبية | forest habitat | بيئة الغابات |
| rainforest habitat | بيئة غابات مطيرة | mountain habitat | بيئة جبلية |

### Animals

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| turtle | سلحفاة | orangutan | إنسان الغاب |
| caracal | حيوان عناق الأرض (الكراكال) | frog | ضفدع |
| polar bear | الدب القطبى | mongoose | حيوان النمس |

## Language

### 1- The present simple passive المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

تتكون الجملة فى المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط كالتالى:

**Agent (نائب فاعل) + am / is / are + past participle + (by) + فاعل**

Ex. Some people play football in the club. (Active)

- Football is played in the club. (Passive)

**Negative النفى**

Agent [نائب فاعل] + am / is / are + not + past participle + by + فاعل

Ex. Omar doesn't do sport. (Active)

- Sport isn't done by Omar. (Passive)

**Question السؤال**

[كلمة استفهام] Am / Is / Are + نائب فاعل + past participle. + by + فاعل?

Ex. Does your brother speak English? (Active)

- Is English spoken by your brother? (Passive)

## 2- The past simple passive المبنى للمجهول فى زمن الماضى البسيط

تتكون الجملة فى المبنى للمجهول فى زمن الماضى البسيط كالتالى:

Agent [نائب فاعل] + was/were + past participle + by + فاعل

Ex. Adel phoned me yesterday. (Active)

- I was phoned by Adel yesterday. (Passive)

**Negative النفى**

Agent [نائب فاعل] + was/were + not + past participle + by + فاعل

Ex. Trees didn't surround the school. (Active)

- The school wasn't surrounded by trees. (Passive)

**Question السؤال**

[كلمة استفهام] Do / Does + فاعل + inf. + مفعول .......? (Active)

[كلمة استفهام] Am / Is / Are + نائب فاعل + التصريف الثالث للفعل + by + فاعل? (Passive)

Ex. Do millions of tourists visit Egypt? (Active)

- Is Egypt visited by millions of tourists? (Passive)





# Speaking

## 1) Talking about animals and animal habitats.

الحديث عن الحيوانات وأين تعيش [بيئتها]

| Question | Answer |
| --- | --- |
| - What's a polar habitat? | It's always cold and is often covered by ice. |
| - What animal that lives in a grassland habitat? | The caracal lives there. |
| - Where are coastal habitats found? | They are found along the coast of the sea. |

## 2) Talking about a natural wonder; Wadi al-Weshwashy.

الحديث عن إحدى العجائب الطبيعية، وادى الوشواشى

| Question | Answer |
| --- | --- |
| - Where is Wadi al-Weshwashy? | It's in south of Sinai. |
| - What can you see? | We can see mountains and a lake. |
| - What can you do there? | We can climb mountains and swim in the lake. |

## 3) Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification.

التعبير عن عدم اكتمال وطلب التوضيح.

- تستخدم العبارات التالية لطلب التوضيح

- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by that.
- I'm still confused. Could you say that another way?
- When you say.......do you mean......?
- Ah, I see. I understand that now.

## 4) Asking for and giving directions

السؤال عن الاتجاهات والإجابة

- نسأل ونجيب عن الإتجاهات كالآتى:

| Question | Answer |
| --- | --- |
| - How do I get from....to ......? <br> - Excuse me, how do I go to the......? | - Take the second turning/ turn right / turn left /go straight ahead. It's on the corner. |
| - How do I get from the school to the supermarket? | - Take the second turning, the supermarket is next to the bank. |

# General Exercises on Unit 7

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

2022 Aswan

**Malak and Noha are talking about a trip to Wadi Al-Hitan.**

Noha : Have you heard of Wadi Al-Hitan?

Malak : ❶ .......................... . Many ancient fossils are found there.

Noha : ❷ ..........................................................?

Malak : It is in the Fayoum Depression, southwest of Cairo.

Noha : Do you think it is a good place to visit?

Malak : ❸ ..........................................................

Noha : There will be a school trip there next mid-year holiday. We could go together.

Malak : How much does it cost?

Noha : ❹ ..........................................................

Malak : That is not expensive. ❺ ..........................................?

Noha : No, I haven't told my parents about it yet. I am sure they will agree.

Malak : If our parents agree, I think we can join this school trip.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**1 find - live- fur - catch - found - teeth**

I have read a book about caracals. They're amazing animals. They have a lot of ❶ ........ on their feet, which makes it difficult for other animals to hear them when they are trying to ❷ ........ them. Caracals are ❸ ........ in many places in Africa and the Middle East. Caracals can ❹ ........ for up to 12 years in the wild.

**2 lay - turtles - preserving - rainforests - lie - preserved** Longman

Animals live in different habitats. These habitats are well ❶ ........ . Grasslands provide habitats for animals like the caracal. The ❷ ........ are home to more than half of the world's animals. Sea ❸ ........ live in the sea. They come to land to ❹ ........ their eggs.

**3 mountains - tourists - Citadel - built - wonders - were built** Longman

Egypt is rich in its great civilisation. There are some wonderful man-made ❶ ........ . The Great Pyramids and the ❷ ........ of Qaitbay are two excellent examples. These places ❸ ........ a very long time ago. They attract ❹ ........ from all over the world.





## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .......... is an area in the desert where you can find water.
   a. forest  b. oasis  c. ocean  d. garden
2. The word "unkind" is similar in meaning to ..........
   a. nice  b. kind  c. cruel  d. safe
3. We should protect our tourist places. To get the noun from the verb "protect," add the suffix. ..........
   a. -ment  b. -ity  c. -ation  d. -ion  (Longman)
4. We turn the verb "appear" into a noun by adding the suffix ..........
   a. -ness  b. -ance  c. -ful  d. -less
5. She seemed very happy. To change "happy" into a noun, delete "y" and add ".........." .
   a. -ness  b. -iness  c. -ity  d. -ment  (Longman)
6. The turtle lives near the sea. This means that it lives in a .......... habitat.
   a. polar  b. desert  c. coastal  d. forest

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This school .......... (built) five years ago. SB
2. These trees .......... (plant) by clever school boys last summer.
3. Who .......... (break) the glass of this window? SB
4. It is a nice photo; it .......... (take) by my brother two days ago. SB
5. New roads .......... (build) all over Egypt every year.
6. Our house .......... (has been built) in 2005. Longman

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to an Egyptian natural wonder"

(أجابة عنه في آخر الوحدة)

..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- What is this place called?
- Where is it in Egypt?
- What is special about it?
- What did you do there?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- I visited ..........................
- It is in ..............................
- There are......................
- I took many photos.

Unit 7

# Al Azhar Test



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Habiba is talking to Rofida about a trip to Siwa Oasis.**

Habiba : Next week, we are visiting Siwa Oasis.

Rofida : ❶ ...................................................................?

Habiba : It's in the Western Desert.

Rofida : ❷ ...................................................................?

Habiba : I'm going to climb the mountains and swim in the lake.

Rofida : Can I come with you?

Habiba : ❸ ...................................................................

Rofida : Thank you.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**cover- rain - are covered - ocean - habitats - desert**

A habitat is the natural environment where an animal or a plant lives. There are different habitats. These ❶ .............. are polar, coastal, wetlands, rainforests, grasslands and deserts. Polar habitats ❷ .............. by ice. Rainforests are usually very hot and have a lot of ❸ .............. . Coastal habitats are next to the sea or the ❹ .............. There is always a lot of water in a wetland habitat.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Horses are beautiful animals. People like to watch horses because they are very attractive. Horses have long legs, and big eyes that can see almost all the way around <u>them</u>. Horses can live up to 20 or 25 years. Sometimes people can tell how old a horse is by looking at its teeth! Horses generally sleep standing up. They only need about three hours of sleep per day! For food, horses eat foods such as grass, hay, corn, apples, and carrots.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do people like watching horses?

...................................................................

2. How do people know the age of a horse?

...................................................................

3. How long can a horse live?

...................................................................

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to .............. .
   a. horses  b. people  c. eyes  d. legs





5. Horses need to sleep about .............. hours per day.
   a. 4  b. 2  c. 3  d. 5

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new hotel on the beach is an interesting .............. It looks like a ship.
   a. shape  b. shop  c. chip  d. cheap
2. Siwa is a very famous .............. in Egypt.
   a. oases  b. lake  c. oasis  d. valley
3. That lake was .............. hundreds of years ago by a volcano. SB
   a. formed  b. form  c. forms  d. forming
4. Rice .............. in Egypt by farmers.
   a. grow  b. were grown  c. grows  d. is grown

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A great project .............. (achieve) in Egypt last year.
2. Many new cars .............. (make) by robots in factories every year.
3. English .............. (teach) at our school.

## 6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

"An invention"

...................................................................

...................................................................

# Al Azhar Exercises



## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### A Vocabulary

**SB & WB Exercises**

1. My grandfather always .............. fruit in a jar with sugar and water.
   a. throws  b. preserves  c. destroys  d. pays
2. The farmer keeps his horses in a .............. next to his house.
   a. table  b. tape  c. tap  d. stable
3. Who is the .............. of this car? It should not be parked here.
   a. officer  b. owner  c. teacher  d. loser
4. Could you .............. me an example?
   a. give  b. take  c. keep  d. hand
5. .............. have green areas between deserts and mountains
   a. Wetlands  b. Coasts  c. Seas  d. Grasslands

## Longman Exercises

6. Alexandria is a big .............. city on the Mediterranean Sea.
   a. deserted b. farm c. coastal d. desert
7. Oh! Your shirt isn't different; it's the .............. as mine.
   a. like b. same c. similar d. difference
8. Gebel Elba is unusually green and .............. to many animals and birds.
   a. home b. delta c. valley d. well
9. A .............. is a large area of water surrounded by land.
   a. desert b. lake c. hell d. mountain
10. The people in that destroyed village aren't safe; they are ..............
    a. in peace b. in danger c. in fact d. in short
11. Unfortunately, we didn't win the match; we .............. it.
    a. lost b. disappeared c. avoided d. earned

## Bit by Bit Exercises

12. The river is 10 kilometers in ..............
    a. weight b. age c. length d. colour
13. Our school is .............. by trees.
    a. happened b. surrounded c. included d. interested
14. A: What .............. is the table? B: It's round.
    a. colour b. shape c. time d. size
15. The mongoose's body is covered by thick ..............
    a. feather b. fur c. screen d. leather
16. There is always a lot of water in a .............. habitat.
    a. grassland b. desert c. wetland d. forest
17. .............. students usually get high marks.
    a. Lazy b. Active c. Dangerous d. Modern

## B Language

18. The Pyramids .............. by a lot of tourists every year.
    a. are visited b. visited c. is visiting d. are visiting
19. Who was the watch .............. by?
    a. invent b. invents c. inventing d. invented
20. The national park .............. by many people every year. SB
    a. visited b. visits c. is visited d. was visiting
21. Every year eggs .............. laid by turtles on the beach. SB
    a. are b. is c. was d. would
22. My grandfather's house .............. in around 1850. WB
    a. build b. is built c. was built d. built





# B iographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

### 1- "A review of a visit to a natural wonder in Egypt" (Lessons 1 & 2)

Last week, our school went on a fantastic trip. We visited one of Egypt's natural wonders. It is called Gebel Elba. It is a national park that is surrounded by grasslands. It is located between the Red Sea coast and the mountains. It took its name from the mountain in the middle of it. We saw many endangered species of animals, The park is home to many animals and birds. As it isn't easy to reach, not many people visit it. Its location should help to protect the wildlife there.

### 2- "A short story about working animals" (Lessons 3 & 4)

I've just read a story. It was about working animals. They were a buffalo, a camel, a dog and a horse. They had to work day and night. The buffalo had to work on a farm. The camel carried people and heavy things. It didn't have time to rest. The dog had to guard a house. The horse had to pull a carriage. The horse's owner didn't give it enough food. When the animals got sick their owners treated them well. Finally, the author gave us a great message about how we should treat animals.

### 3- "A short story about an amazing animal" (Lessons 5 & 6)

I have read a story about an amazing animal. It is called the caracal. It is a beautiful gold-coloured wild cat. Once, it wanted to hunt for food. It went at night. There was a rabbit so the caracal walked slowly towards it. The rabbit couldn't hear the caracal because it had a lot of fur on its feet. This made it difficult for other animals to hear it. The caracal caught the rabbit and took it to its hole. It was a nice meal for the caracal's little kittens.

### 4- An invention (Al Azhar)

In the past, people faced a lot of troubles washing clothes. The first washing machine was invented in 1846. The water used in the wash was cold, so people warmed it on a fire. The first electric washing machine was designed in 1908. It was more useful because it could warm water. Today, all the hard work is done for us while we sit and relax.

### 5- "A short story you have read" (Test)

I have read an amazing story. It's called "Black Beauty". It is about the life of a working horse. Black Beauty had many owners. Some of them were kind but others were cruel. Black Beauty had to work in crowded streets. Although Beauty worked day and night, he was lucky to stay in a warm stable. Some horses weren't lucky to have one. Ginger, it was Black Beauty's best friend. She worked for unkind owners. They made her work hard and they didn't give her enough food. Black Beauty met her one day and they talked. Beauty realized that he had a much better life than many other horses.

# TEST



## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue** WB

**Amina is talking to Safaa about a natural wonder.**

Amina : I visited Wadi al -Weshwashy last week.

Safaa : ❶ ............................................................?

Amina : It's a natural wonder.

Safaa : ❷ ............................................................?

Amina : It's on the way to South Sinai.

Safaa : What did you see there?

Amina : ❸ ............................................................

Safaa : What could you do there?

Amina : ❹ ............................. Would you like to come with me next time?

Safaa : ❺ ............................................................

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**fossils - grasslands - preserved - species - preserving - ocean**

Much of the south of England is a coastal habitat. Today, sheep and cows enjoy the green ❶ ........ where they can eat. However, 250 million years ago, part of this coast was very different. It was then a hot, wetland habitat where animals like crocodiles lived in the wet land. We know this because hundreds of ❷ ........ are often found here. Many of them are very well ❸ ........, so scientists can study many ❹ ........ of animals from long ago.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Taj Mahal in India is one of the world's most famous and beautiful buildings. It is one of the Seven Wonders of the World. The name Taj Mahal means "Crown Palace." It is actually the tomb of the princess Mumtaz Mahal, who was the wife of the ruler Shah Jahan.

Over twenty thousand workmen from all over India were working to build it. The dome of the building is made of white marble. __It__ is more than 70 meters high. There are gardens and pools around it. Every year, millions of visitors from all over the world go there. In order to __protect__ it from air pollution, tourists must walk or ride an electric bus.





**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is mainly about ..................
   a. tourism b. India c. Shah Jahan d. Taj Mahal
2. The underlined word **"protect"** means ..................
   a. neglect b. keep c. harm d. attack
3. The underlined word **"It"** refers to the ..................
   a. pool b. palace c. dome d. park

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Summarise the second paragraph.
   ............................................................
5. How do they protect Taj Mahal from pollution?
   ............................................................
6. Mention one of the Seven Wonders of the World in Egypt.
   ............................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A .................. is something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing.
   a. wonder b. storm c. volcano d. fight
2. A .................. is a word or phrase to explain things in a picture, diagram,etc.
   a. table b. label c. tablet d. top
3. It was cruel to hit the dog with a stone. "Cruel" is an antonym of ..................
   a. kind b. active c. unkind d. warm
4. We turn the verb "visit" into a noun by adding the suffix ..................
   a. -er b. -ful c. -al d. -or
5. Seals live near the seas. This means that they live in a .......... habitat.
   a. forest b. coastal c. desert d. polar

6. The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they were ..............

a. discovered b. kept c. chosen d. sold

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. When was the Great Wall of China .............. (build)? SB
2. The forest fires .............. (cause) by the high heat last month. SB
3. The Pyramids .............. (visit) by thousands of tourists every month. SB
4. The island is .............. (surround) by deep, blue sea.
5. New houses .............. (was) built near the river last year.

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

(مجاب عنه قبل اختبار الوحدة)

دفتر الشبح 2023

"A short story you have read"

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What is this short story about?
- Who wrote it?
- How does it end?

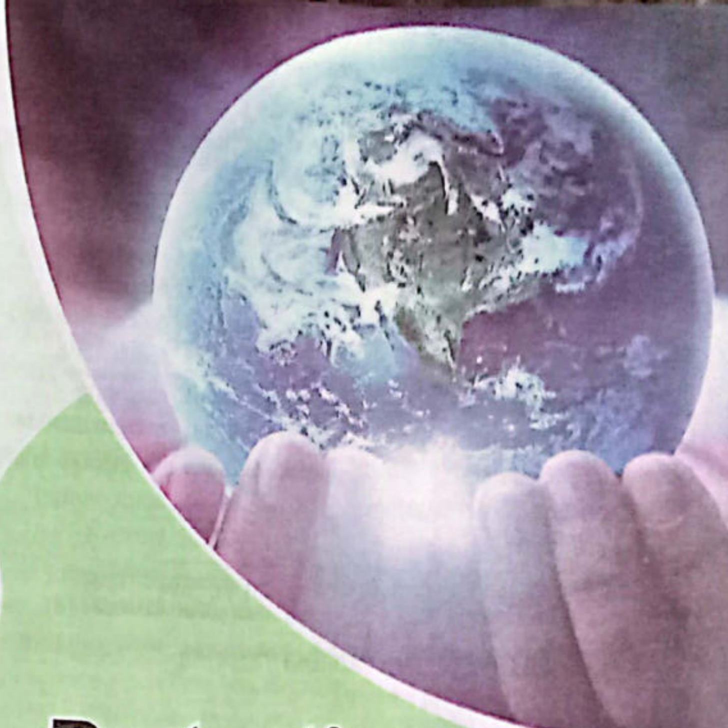
يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The short story is about ..............
- .............. wrote it.
- In the end, ..............






New Hello!



8 UNIT

# Protecting our planet

## Objectives

**Reading:**
An article about climate change; a post about a school project; blogs about a recycling project and weaving; a text about seagrass

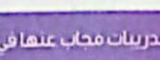
**Writing:**
A plan for a recycling project; a speech about how to keep air clean; a short report about a habitat

**Listening:**
A radio report about an environmental problem; a discussion about printer cartridges; identifying word stress; a speech about helping the environment

**Speaking:**
Discussing environmental problems; giving a speech

**Language:**
*Verb + to or -ing*

**Life Skills:**
Problem solving and decision making




جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12-15 WB pages 77-78



استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| planet | كوكب | global | عالمي |
| air pollution | تلوث الهواء | global warming | الاحتباس الحراري |
| deforestation | إزالة الغابات | fossil fuels | الوقود الحفري |
| melting ice | ذوبان الثلج | methane | غاز الميثان |
| warmer seas | بحار زادت حرارتها | carbon dioxide | غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون |
| landfill sites | مقالب القمامة | renewable energy | الطاقة المتجددة |
| environmental problems | مشكلات بيئية | solar energy | الطاقة الشمسية |
| volunteer | متطوع | waste (d) (n) | يهدر - يبدد - نفايات |
| drought | الجفاف | avoid (ed) | يتجنب |
| climate change | التغير المناخي | absorb (ed) | يمتص |
| greenhouse gases | غازات الاحتباس الحراري | slow (ed) down | يبطىء |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| serious | خطير | Arctic | القطب الشمالي |
| seagrass | أعشاب بحرية | Antarctic | القطب الجنوبي |
| metal | معدن/معدني | sunny | مشمس |
| coral reefs | الشعاب المرجانية | waves | أمواج |
| recycling | إعادة تدوير | wind power | طاقة/قوة الرياح |
| flood | فيضان | electrical equipment | معدات كهربائية |
| oil | البترول/الزيت | electricity | الكهرباء |
| rubbish | قمامة | recycle (d) | يعيد تدوير |
| industry | الصناعة | produce (d) | ينتج |
| farming | الزراعة | cause (d) | يسبب |
| oxygen | اكسجين | collect (ed) | يجمع |
| transport | النقل | plan (ned) | يخطط |
| chemical | مادة كيميائية | | |

## Definitions

| Word | Definition |
|---|---|
| **air pollution** تلوث الهواء | damage caused to the air by chemicals and waste |
| **landfill site** مقلب القمامة | - a place where people leave rubbish on the land<br>- a place where rubbish is taken, often to be buried[1] under the ground |





| Word | Definition |
|---|---|
| **melting ice** ذوبان الثلج | a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming |
| **warmer seas** بحار زادت حرارتها | something that can kill coral reefs |
| **drought** الجفاف | - a long period[2] of dry weather when there is not enough water for plants and animals to live<br>- a long period of low rainfall[3] that leads to a shortage[4] of water |
| **climate change** التغير المناخي | how the Earth's weather changes |
| **greenhouse gas** غاز الاحتباس الحراري | a gas in the air such as carbon dioxide which can cause global warming |
| **fossil fuel** الوقود الحفري | natural material[5] such as petrol and oil that you can burn for energy |
| **methane** غاز الميثان | - a natural gas often produced by animals and dead plants<br>- a greenhouse gas from landfill sites |
| **absorb** يمتص | take in liquid or gases through a surface |
| **renewable energy** الطاقة المتجددة | - natural energy that does not disappear or burn when you use it<br>- clean energy from the sun or wind |
| **solar energy** الطاقة الشمسية | energy from the sun |
| **carbon dioxide** غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون | a gas which we breathe out and which is produced by burning fossil fuels |
| **avoid** يتجنب | deliberately[6] stay away from someone or something |
| **deforestation** إزالة الغابات | cutting down all the trees in a large area |

١- يدفن
٢- فترة زمنية
٣- هطول المطر
٤- نقص
٥- مادة طبيعية
٦- عمدًا

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| global | عالمي | international | local / national | محلي |
| absorb | يمتص | take in | release | يطلق |
| slow down | يبطىء | delay | speed up | يُسرع |
| damage | يتلف | hurt / destroy | fix / repair | يصلح |
| fantastic | رائع | wonderful | terrible | سئ - فظيع |
| pollute | يلوث | dirty | clean | نظف - ينقي |
| avoid | يتجنب | keep away from | face | يواجه |
| pass | يجتاز/ينجح | succeed | fail | يرسب/يفشل |
| save | يوفر/يدخر | keep | waste | يهدر |

## Prefixes & Suffixes

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| re- | again | تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى | recycle / renewable | يعيد تدوير / متجدد |
| -ion | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | pollution / collection | التلوث/مجموعة |
| -ing | | | farming | الزراعة |
| -ment | | | government / equipment | حكومة/معدات |
| -al | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | environmental / global | بيئى/عالمى |
| -y | | | sunny | مشمس |
| -ity | adj → n | تحول الصفة إلى الاسم | electricity | الكهرباء |
| -ous | adj | تفيد الصفة | serious / dangerous | جاد/خطير |
| trans- | move across | تعطى معنى «ينقل» | transport | النقل |
| -able | v → adj | تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | renewable | متجدد |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| recycle rubbish | يعيد تدوير القمامة | make (a) noise | يحدث ضوضاء |
| pollute the air | يلوث الهواء | good for | مفيد لـ |
| save water | يوفر المياه | for too long | لمدة طويلة |
| get worse | يزداد سوءاً | in the same way | بنفس الطريقة |
| get / become hotter | يصبح أكثر حرارة | breathe in | يستنشق "شهيق" |
| take away | يُبعد | breathe out | يخرج الهواء "زفير" |
| take a shower | يستحم | move to | ينتقل إلى "يعزل" |
| keep the air clean | يحافظ على نظافة الهواء | | |

### Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| lose | يفقد/يخسر | lost | lost |
| choose | يختار | chose | chosen |
| leave | يترك/يغادر | left | left |
| pay | يدفع مالاً | paid | paid |





## Language Notes

### 1 reason / cause

- **reason (for)** مبرر/تفسير لـ

Ex. What is the reason for getting low marks?

- **cause (of)** سبب

Ex. Do you know the cause of global warming?

- **reason (why)** تفسير (لماذا)

Ex. I'd like to know the reason why she didn't accept the job.

### 2 help + (to) + inf.

يأتى بعد الفعل help (المصدر + to) أو (المصدر بدون to):

Ex. This project will help (to) stop environmental problems.

### 3 breathe / breathing / breath

- **breathe (v) (in / out)** يتنفس (شهيق وزفير)

Ex. Trees breathe in carbon dioxide and breathe out oxygen.

- **breathing (n)** عملية التنفس

Ex. His breathing is deep and regular.

- **breath (n)** نَفَس (الهواء الذي يدخل الرئتين)

Ex. Let your breath out slowly to feel relaxed.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He gave no .......... for leaving work early today.
   a. reasons b. seasons c. connects d. causes
2. A lot of volunteers help .......... the project.
   a. to complete b. completing c. complete d. a & c are correct
3. We all .......... in oxygen to live.
   a. bathe b. breathe c. bring d. buy

استمع إلى النصوص

# Audioscript

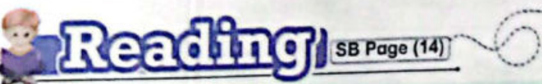
SB Page (13)



In the cities of Cairo, Giza and Fayoum, there is a project that is teaching people about climate change[1] and how to help the environment by recycling rubbish[2].

Over 400 women volunteers[3] visit houses in these cities every week. The volunteers ask people to put their rubbish into three different bins: for plastic, paper and metal. When the volunteers come back a week later, they pay[4] the families money for the rubbish they have collected. Then they take away[5] the rubbish for recycling. "If families collect[6] their paper, plastic and metal, we will pay them for it," says Dalia. "Then we can take away the rubbish and recycle it. It's a great solution[7] to a big problem, because the family get some money and we help the environment".

١- تغير المناخ
٢- اعادة تدوير القمامة
٣- متطوعات
٤- يدفع (مالا)
٥- يُبعد
٦- يجمع
٧- حل



# Reading

SB Page (14)

### What produces a lot of carbon dioxide?

Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is changing. There are more floods[1], droughts*[2] and forest fires[3] than at any time in history. One of the reasons for this is climate change.

Climate change is caused by greenhouse gases[4] such as carbon dioxide[5]*. These are made when we burn fossil fuels[6] such as oil. Rubbish in landfill sites[7] makes a greenhouse gas called methane[8]. Deforestation[9] also produces greenhouse gases. Trees absorb[10]* carbon dioxide from the air. When we cut down trees[11], the carbon dioxide stays in the air.

If we keep burning fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. So, we need to use cleaner renewable energy[12] such as solar energy[13] and wind power[14]. We must start recycling more rubbish and stop putting rubbish in landfill sites. If we recycle more paper, we can avoid cutting down our forests. This will help slow down[15] climate change.

١- فيضانات
٢- حالات جفاف
٣- حرائق الغابات
٤- غازات الاحتباس الحراري
٥- غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
٦- الوقود الحفري
٧- اماكن مقالب القمامة
٨- غاز الميثان
٩- إزالة الغابات
١٠- يمتص
١١- يقطع الأشجار
١٢- الطاقة المتجددة
١٣- الطاقة الشمسية
١٤- طاقة/قوة الرياح
١٥- يبطئ



**Say it correctly**

- *drought — ينطق الجزء الملون ought مثلما تنطق كلمة out
- *dioxide — ينطق حرف i من هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق ضمير المتكلم I
- *absorb — ينطق حرف s من هذه الكلمة z
- *breathe — لاحظ أن حرف th في هذه الكلمة ينطق مثلما ينطق في كلمة this





**Reading Skill** — مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about ........ — يتحدث النص أساسا عن .....
   a. fossil fuels  b. climate change
   c. greenhouse gases  d. deforestation
2. Infer from the text two causes of climate change. — استنتج من النص سببين للتغير المناخي.
3. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence. — لخص الفقرة الأولى في جملة واحدة.

**Writing Skill** — مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Our planet is getting hotter than before. — يصبح كوكبنا اكثر حرارة عن ذي قبل.
2. Greenhouse gases, rubbish and deforestation cause climate change. — تسبب غازات الاحتباس الحراري والقمامة وإزالة الغابات التغير المناخي.
3. When we cut down trees, carbon dioxide stays in the air. — إذا قطعنا الأشجار يظل غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الهواء.
4. We need to use renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power — نحتاج لاستخدام طاقة متجددة مثل الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح.

**Answers**

1. b. climate change.
2. Greenhouse gases and deforestation
3. Climate change causes floods, droughts and forest fires to our planet.

WB Page (78)

Buildings cause 6% of our greenhouse gases. If we keep building houses in the same way, global warming[1] will continue. I think we should decide[2] to build houses that need to use less electricity[3] from fossil fuels. We can do this by planning[4] to build houses that use renewable energy. We should also avoid leaving all our electrical equipment[5] on when we are not using it!

١- الاحتباس الحراري
٢- يقرر
٣- الكهرباء
٤- تخطيط
٥- معدات كهربائية

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. .......... is a greenhouse gas from landfill sites. (Longman SB)
   a. Oxygen  b. Methane  c. Petrol  d. Oil
2. .......... energy is clean energy from the sun or wind. (SB)
   a. Solar  b. Electrical  c. Renewable  d. Chemical
3. .......... is cutting down all the trees in a large area.
   a. Flood  b. Melting ice  c. Drought  d. Deforestation
4. A .......... is a place where people leave rubbish on the land.
   a. website  b. landfill site  c. depression  d. playground
5. .......... change is how the Earth's weather changes.
   a. Planet  b. Globe  c. World  d. Climate

## Synonyms & Antonyms

6. Global warming is a serious problem. "Global" here means ........ (Longman)
a. international b. local c. national d. coastal

7. I always keep my room "clean". "Clean" here is opposite in meaning to "........". (Longman)
a. tidy b. unsafe c. noisy d. dirty

8. We shouldn't pollute the environment. The antonym of "pollute" is ........
a. dirty b. destroy c. clean d. change

9. The accident on the road slowed us down. "Slowed down" means ........
a. increased b. delayed c. repaired d. recycled

10. Fortunately, I didn't fail, I ........ the exam. (Longman)
a. passed b. disappeared c. avoided d. earned

11. How do you think we can save energy? "Save" here has the opposite meaning of "........". (Longman)
a. stop b. use c. keep d. waste

12. Tahya Masr Bridge is a fantastic project. The antonym of "fantastic" is ........
a. terrible b. wonderful c. brilliant d. excellent

13. The verb ........ is an antonym of "damage".
a. pollute b. cycle c. fix d. harm

14. Trees absorb carbon dioxide and give out oxygen. "Absorb" here means "........" (Longman)
a. take in b. give out c. give up d. send out

15. The verb avoid means to ........ from doing something. (2023)
a. keep away b. keep a way c. run away d. run a way

## Prefixes & Suffixes

16. We add the suffix ........ to the noun "environment" to give the adjective. (2023)
a. -ity b. -al c. -y d. -able

17. The prefix ........ is added to the word "port" to refer to buses, planes etc.
a. super- b. trans- c. techno- d. astro-

18. We add the suffix ........ to the verb "renew" to give the adjective. (2023)
a. -ous b. -ion c. -action d. -able

19. We add the prefix ........ to the verb "cycle" to mean do again. (2023)
a. un- b. re- c. bi- d. per-

20. We turn the adjective "electric" into a noun by adding the suffix ........
a. -ity b. -ous c. -ing d. -able





21. We add the suffix ........ to the "verb" collect to get the noun. (2022)
a. -ed b. -en c. -ion d. -al

## Guessing the meaning

22. Solar energy never ends. That means, it is ........ (2022)
a. renewable b. melting c. warm d. changing

23. Egypt is usually sunny, so it is a great place to use ........
a. solar energy
b. fossil fuels
c. carbon dioxide
d. global warming

24. Ibrahim works for a charity for free. This means he is a ........ (2022)
a. power b. governor c. manager d. volunteer



## 1- (If / When) for future predictions

• تستخدم (If / When) فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل كما يلى:

If / When → مضارع بسيط , → will / won't + inf.

Ex. If families collect their paper, plastic and metal, we will pay them for doing this.

will + inf. → if / when → مضارع بسيط

Ex. Coral reefs will die if our seas become warmer.



١- توضع فاصلة (,) بين جزئى الجملة عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (If / When):

Ex. If I go out, I will meet my friends.

٢- فى حالة الاستفهام يستخدم الأسلوب الآتى:

(كلمة إستفهام) Will + فاعل + inf. → when / if + مضارع بسيط...?

If / When + مضارع بسيط , → will + فاعل + inf ....?

Ex. What will you do if you have much free time?
Ex. Will Muhammad travel to London if he has a visa?
Ex. If you are ill, will you see a doctor?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أى من جزئى الجملة (أو كلاهما) منفيًا:

Ex. If Hossam doesn't study hard, he will fail.
Ex. If I don't call my friend, he will get angry.
Ex. If Naglaa doesn't study hard, she won't succeed.

٤- نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس (will + inf.) فى فعل الشرط بعد (If / When).

Ex. If Mariam stays at home, she will watch TV.

# Exercises on First Conditional

## Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

1. Our environment will be cleaner if we .......... (recycled) our rubbish. SB
2. What will you do if you .......... (didn't) pass your exams this year? WB
3. What .......... (would) you do if you don't understand the homework? WB
جنوب سيناء 2023
4. If it is hot tomorrow, we .......... (would) go to the beach. البحيرة 2022
5. What .......... (you do) if you don't catch the train? الدقهلية 2022
6. If the train is late, I .......... (phone) you. الفيوم 2022
7. If our seas become warmer, coral reefs .......... (would die). SB
8. If we .......... (will burn) plastic rubbish, we will pollute the air. SB
9. What .......... (happen) if I put this plastic in the fire? WB

### Longman Exercises

10. If we .......... (not stop) using oil, we will have more pollution.
11. What .......... (you buy) if you go to the supermarket?
12. Wael, .......... (will contact) Adel if you want to visit him?
13. If less energy .......... (uses), we will keep our planet safer.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

14. When it .......... (rain), I will take my umbrella.
15. What .......... (Hani does) if he has a test?
16. If I get tired, I .......... (will) go to school tomorrow.
17. If Ali .......... (not work) hard, he won't get much money.
18. If Mona .......... (have) time, she will visit her friend.
19. How will Tarek .......... (feels) if he goes to bed very late tonight?

## 2- verbs + to + inf. / verbs + v-ing

### A- Verbs + to + inf.

• بعض الأفعال يتبعها (to + inf.) فقط مثل:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| need يحتاج | decide يقرر | expect يتوقع | choose يختار |
| arrange يرتب | promise يَعِد | hope يامل | offer يعرض |
| ask يسال/يطلب | want يريد | refuse يرفض | agree يوافق |
| learn يتعلم | aim يهدف لـ | plan يخطط | encourage يشجع |

Ex. We need to use cleaner renewable energy.

Ex. Amr has decided to go to Italy next year.





### B- Verbs + V-ing

• بعض افعال يتبعها (V - ing) مثل:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| enjoy يستمتع بـ | prevent يمنع | dislike لا يحب | mind يمانع |
| avoid يتجنب | suggest يقترح | practise يمارس | |
| finish ينهى | prefer يفضل | keep يحافظ على | |
| recommend يوصي بـ | go يذهب | spend يقضى (وقت) | |

Ex. We must avoid polluting the environment.

Ex. Nada enjoys drawing pictures.

### C- Verbs + to + inf. / V - ing

• هناك افعال يأتى بعدها: (to + inf.) أو (V- ing) دون تغيير فى المعنى، مثل:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| start يبدأ | prefer يفضل | love يحب |
| hate يكره | like يحب | |

Ex. I like playing football when I have free time.

Ex. I like to play football today.

هناك أفعال يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (V + ing) مع وجود تغيير فى المعنى ومن هذه الأفعال:

| Verb | Examples | |
|---|---|---|
| forget | I forgot to call my friend. | ينسى أن يفعل شىء ما |
| | I forgot calling my friend. | فعل شىء ثم نسى أنه فعله |
| regret | I regret to say that you are mistaken. | يشعر بالأسف لأنه من الضرورى أن يفعل شئ ما |
| | I regret saying that you are mistaken. | يشعر بالأسف لأنه فعل شئ ما |
| remember | He remembered to lock the door. | يتذكر أن يقوم بعمل شىء ما |
| | He remembered locking the door. | يتذكر أنه فعل شىء ما |
| stop | They stopped to buy some products. | يتوقف لكى يفعل شىء ما |
| | They stopped buying American products. | يتوقف عن فعل شىء ما |

| عبارات يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) | | عبارات يأتي بعدها (V - ing) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| It's time | حان الوقت | feel like | يشعر برغبة في |
| used to | اعتاد ان | look forward to | يتطلع إلى |
| It's difficult | من الصعب ان | (be) used to | معتاد على |
| It's nice | من اللطيف أن | Would (Do) you mind ..? | هل تمانع فى ..؟ |
| The first ... | اول... | | |
| The next ... | التالي ... | | |
| The last ... | الأخير ... | | |

## Exercises on (to + inf / v-ing)

**1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. We need .................. (use) more renewable energy. 2023 SB
2. The government plans .......... (planting) a lot of trees along the sides of streets. SB
3. We should avoid .................. (eat) unhealthy food. 2023
4. Ahmed has chosen .................. (studying) maths at university. WB
5. That bird keeps .................. (to make) a loud noise! WB
6. What do I need .................. (buy) from the shops, Mum? WB
7. If we keep .......... (burn) fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. SB
8. If we don't avoid .......... (cut) down our rainforests, we won't stop climate change. SB
9. If we keep .................. (put) rubbish in landfill sites, we'll make more methane gases. SB

### Longman Exercises

10. If we keep .......... (cut) trees, pollution will get worse.
11. We should all avoid .......... (to pollute) the environment.
12. I enjoy .......... (read) short stories.
13. I plan .......... (to spending) the weekend in my village.
14. Do you think .......... (recycle) is good for the environment?

### Bit by Bit Exercises

15. Magid agreed .................. (help) me with my homework.
16. I like .................. (play) chess when I have free time.
17. It's time .................. (leaving). Let's go.
18. It's difficult .................. (answer) this test.
19. Omar was the first .................. (finish) the exam.
20. I'm looking forward to .................. (visit) the zoo.
21. On my way home, I stopped .................. (buying) a newspaper.







## Speaking

### Discussing recycling rubbish
مناقشة إعادة تدوير القمامة

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you think that the recycling project in Giza, Cairo and Fayoum is a good idea? Why?<br>هل تعتقد أن مشروع إعادة تدوير القمامة فى الجيزة والقاهرة والفيوم فكرة جيدة؟ لماذا؟ | - Yes, I think so, because this will keep our environment clean.<br>نعم، أعتقد ذلك، لأن ذلك سيحافظ على بيئتنا نظيفة. |
| - What does your family do with waste plastic, paper and metal?<br>ماذا تفعل عائلتك بالنفايات البلاستيكية والورقية والمعدنية؟ | - They collect them to take them to the recycling factory in our city.<br>يقومون بجمعها واخذها إلى مصنع إعادة التدوير فى مدينتنا. |
| - What will happen if we don't recycle rubbish?<br>ماذا سيحدث إذا لم نقم بإعادة تدوير القمامة؟ | - Rubbish will be everywhere and this will pollute the environment.<br>ستكون القمامة فى كل مكان وسوف يؤدى ذلك إلى تلوث البيئة. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2



**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Adel is talking to Amir who is reading an article about pollution.** 2022

Adel : What are you reading, Amir?
Amir : ❶ ..................................................................
Adel : What is this article about?
Amir : ❷ ..................................................................
Adel : ❸ ..................................................................?
Amir : We can stop pollution by planting more trees.
Adel : ❹ ..................................................................?
Amir : Because trees absorb carbon dioxide and keep the air clean.
Adel : ❺ ..................................................................
Amir : I agree with you. Recycling our rubbish can also solve this problem.

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**damaging - pollution - waste - to damage - environmental - problem**

There are lots of ❶ ........ problems nowadays because of pollution. The smoke from factories and cars is a big cause of air ❷........ Water is also polluted by industrial ❸........ . We should avoid ❹ ........ the environment. We all should keep our environment clean.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ........ is a long period of low rainfall that leads to a shortage of water. Longman
   a. Drought   b. Drought   c. A stream   d. A well
2. ................ energy is clean energy from the sun, water, or wind. Longman
   a. Polluting   b. Polluted   c. Non-renewable   d. Renewable
3. Be careful; slow down, please. "Slow down" is an antonym for "........". Longman
   a. make up   b. find out   c. speed up   d. come out
4. When we add the suffix ............ to the word "sun", it gives the adjective.
   a. -y   b. -ly   c. -er   d. -ing
5. The verb "damage" is similar in meaning to the verb ............
   a. fix   b. protect   c. destroy   d. release
6. Did you know that some plants absorb pollution from the air? This means some plants ............ pollution. WB
   a. take action   b. take part   c. take off   d. take in
7. We form the noun from "pollute" by adding the suffix ............ المنيا 2022
   a. -ment   b. -ness   c. -ion   d. -ity

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We need ............ (using) cleaner renewable energy. القاهرة 2023
2. Adel wants ............ (buy) a new mobile phone. Longman
3. Did you finish ............ (do) your homework? Longman
4. I prefer ............ (read) when I'm free.
5. Where do you suggest ............ (to go) on holiday?

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A review of things that you can recycle at school or in your house." الأقصر 2022 WB

.................................................................................

.................................................................................

.................................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- Do you have things in your house/school you don't need?
- What are these things?
- Will you put them in the landfill site?
- Do you think about recycling them?
- How can this help the environment?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات:
- I / We have.................... in my / our house/school I / we don't need.
- These things are....................
- I think about ....................
- I won't put them in....................
- This can help............................



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16-18 WB pages 79-80

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| printer | طابعة | traditional | تقليدي |
| printer cartridge | حبّارة (عبوة الحبر للطابعة) | loom | نول (آلة النسيج) |
| ink | الحبر | thread | خيط |
| weaving | نسيج - نسج | fabric | قماش |
| weaver | عامل نسيج | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| water pollution | تلوث المياه | jewellery | مجوهرات |
| social media | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي | fishing net | شبكة صيد السمك |
| blog | مدونة (على الانترنت) | wool | صوف |
| head teacher | مدير مدرسة | lovely | جميل |
| recycling box | صندوق التدوير | stone | حجر (كريم) |
| recycling centre | مركز التدوير | brick | قالب طوب |
| material | مادة (خام) | bottle top | غطاء زجاجة |
| leather | جلد مدبوغ | design (n) (ed) | تصميم - يصمم (شيء) |
| handbag | حقيبة يد | cross (ed) | يشبك - يعبر |
| item | عنصر/مادة | print (ed) | يطبع |
| plastic football field | ملعب كرة قدم بلاستيكي | discuss (ed) | يناقش |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ink | حبر | a liquid used in pens or printers for writing, drawing, etc. |
| printer cartridge | حبّارة | - a piece of plastic which contains and supplies[1] ink for a printer<br>- a small container of ink for use in a printer |
| weaving | نسيج - نسج | the art of making cloth by crossing[2] threads using a special[3] machine |
| weaver | نساج | a person who makes cloth by weaving |
| traditional | تقليدي | being part of traditions of a country or group of people |
| loom | نول (النسيج) | a machine used for weaving |
| thread | خيط | a long piece of cotton, silk[4], etc. which people can use to sew[5] or make clothes |
| fabric | قماش | cloth or material which can be used to make clothes, bags, etc. |

١- يزود/يمد بـ
٢- تشبيك
٣- من نوع خاص
٤- حرير
٥- يخيط

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite | المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| traditional | تقليدي | classical / old / ancient | modern / new | حديث |
| expensive | غالي الثمن | pricey | cheap / inexpensive | رخيص |
| horrible | فظيع | terrible / terrific | lovely/ beautiful | جميل |
| connect | يصل/يربط | link | disconnect | يفصل |
| allow | يسمح | let | prevent | يمنع |
| broken | مكسور | damaged | undamaged | سليم/غير تالف |
| collect | يجمع | gather | spread/ throw away | ينشر/يلقي |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمة

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples |
|---|---|---|---|
| -er | person / thing | تكون اسم الفاعل | printer - weaver<br>طابعة - عامل نسيج |
| -ing | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | weaving - recycling<br>نسيج - إعادة تدوير |
| -ion | | | discussion مناقشة |
| -ful | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | colourful زاهي الألوان |
| -al | | | traditional تقليدي |
| -ed | v → adj | تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | surprised - connected<br>مندهش - متصل بـ |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| Expression | | Preposition | |
|---|---|---|---|
| throw away | يتخلص من | at the moment | فى اللحظة |
| keep ...... clean | يحافظ على....نظيفاً | work on | يعمل فى (مشروع) |
| start a project | يبدأ مشروع | get into | يدخل إلى |
| find a way | يجد طريقة | fall into | يسقط فى |
| under and over | أسفل وأعلى | recycle ... into | يعيد تدوير...إلى |
| each other | بعضهم البعض | make ....... into | يصنع - يحول...إلى |
| bad for | ضار لـ | according to | طبقاً لـ |
| ask for help | يطلب المساعدة | agree with | يتفق مع |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| send | يرسل | sent | sent |
| break | يكسر | broke | broken |
| say | يقول | said | said |







## Language Notes

### 1) allow / let

- allow + object مفعول + to + inf.
  يسمح لـ.. أن...
  Ex. My dad always allows me to use his laptop.
- let + object مفعول + inf.
  يسمح لـ.. أن.. (بدون to)
  Ex. Omar always lets me use his laptop.

### 2) would ('d) like

- would ('d) like to = want to + inf. / n يرغب - يود أن/يريد أن

Ex. I would('d) like / want to buy this jacket.

Ex. I would('d) like / want sea food, please.

### 3) (be) made of / (be) made from

- (be) made of مصنوع من
  (تستخدم عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء.)
  Ex. These shoes are made of leather.
- (be) made from مصنوع من
  (تستخدم عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء.)
  Ex. Bread is made from flour.

### 4) connect / contact / communicate

- connect (ed) يصل/يوصل
  Ex. Mustafa can connect his phone to the computer.
- contact (ed) يتصل بـ «لا تتبع بحرف جر»
  Ex. If you want any help, contact me at once.
- communicate (d) يتواصل
  Ex. Many people communicate with each other on the internet.

### 5) It's + صفة + to + inf.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف عمل شيء

Ex. It's important to keep our environment clean.

Ex. You can make pizza. It's easy to make.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The head teacher let us ............ a recycling box in the classroom.
   a. put   b. putting   c. to put   d. to putting
2. I'd like ............ shopping tonight.
   a. go   b. going   c. to going   d. to go
3. It's not easy ............ mobile phones.
   a. make   b. to making   c. to make   d. made
4. Jewellery made ............ old glass bottles is not expensive.
   a. of   b. in   c. with   d. from
5. I ............ the printer to my computer.
   a. connected   b. contacted   c. corrected   d. communicated

## Audioscript

SB Page (16)

استمع إلى النصوص

**Dalida** : I want to print[1] an article from the internet, but the printer[2] is broken.

**Sherifa** : Really? What's wrong; Dalida? Let me look. No, the printer isn't broken. It needs a new printer cartridge[3].

**Dalida** : Of course. You're right, Sherifa. I think there's a new one in the cupboard[4].

**Sherifa** : What are you going to do with the old one?

**Dalida** : I'll throw it away. I always throw them away.

**Sherifa** : You can't throw it away!

**Dalida** : Why not?

**Sherifa** : That is very bad for the environment. Ink[5] from the printer cartridge can get into rivers and the sea. The ink kills fish and other sea animals. It's really terrible[6]. You must recycle it.

**Dalida** : Oh, no. I didn't know that. That sounds horrible.

**Sherifa** : Look! There's an address on the box. If we send the printer cartridge to that address, they will recycle it.

**Dalida** : OK. Let's do that. What happens to all the printer cartridges at school?

**Sherifa** : I don't know. I think they're thrown away.

**Dalida** : Well, why don't we start a recycling project[7]?

**Sherifa** : That's a great idea .

١-يطبع
٢-طابعة
٣-حبارة
٤-دولاب
٥-الحبر
٦-فظيع
٧-مشروع تدوير





## Reading

SB Page (17)

### Our school recycling project!

**-The problem**

Five classrooms in our school have a computer and a printer. At the moment, we throw away[1] the printer cartridges with the school rubbish. But the ink inside printer cartridges is very bad for the environment. So we want to start a school recycling project.

**- What we are going to do**

We have asked our head teacher[2], Mr Hamdi, if we can start a recycling project, and he said yes. He will let us put a recycling box[3] in the classrooms with printers. We have written emails to all our teachers. We have asked them to put the old printer cartridges in the recycling boxes.

**- How you can help us**

We will take the recycling boxes to the recycling centre[4] every month. But we need volunteers to help us. If you would like to be a volunteer, please write your name and email below.

Thank you.

Dalida and Sherifa

١-يتخلص من
٢-مدير المدرسة
٣-سلة تدوير
٤-مركز التدوير

SB Page (18)

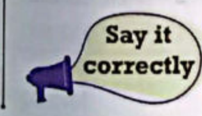
### Hassan's Blog

Weaving[1] is an Egyptian tradition[2], but there aren't many traditional[3] weavers[4] in Egypt today. So I was surprised[5] to see three weavers working on traditional looms[6] when I visited the Reform Studio in Cairo.

When Mariam Hazem and Hend Riad were students at university, they wanted to do something about plastic rubbish. They found a way of making old plastic bags into long threads[7]*, which they could make into fabric[8] on a traditional loom. Then they used the plastic fabric to make colourful[9] bags, chairs and small carpets.

Today their bags, chairs and carpets are sold in shops in Cairo and London. This is a fantastic project because it is great for the environment and great for one of our Egyptian traditions!

١-النسيج - النسج
٢-تقليد
٣-تقليدي
٤-عمال نسيج
٥-مندهش
٦-انوال (آلات النسيج)
٧-خيوط
٨-قماش
٩-زاهي الألوان




*thread   red ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثلما تنطق كلمة read

**Reading Skill** (الإجابة أسفل) مهارة القراءة

1. The passage is about ............ ..... يتحدث النص عن
   a. traditions  b. weaving
   c. looms  d. the environment
2. Infer from the text what problem Mariam and Hend wanted to solve. استنتج من النص المشكلة التى أرادت مريم وهند حلها.
3. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الأولى فى جملة واحدة.

**Writing Skill** (جمل تساعد فى كتابة الموضوع الانشائى) مهارة الكتابة

1. There aren't many traditional weavers in Egypt today. لا يوجد العديد من النساجون المصريون اليوم.
2. Mariam Hazem and Hend Riad made bags, chairs and small carpets from plastic rubbish. صنعت مريم حازم و هند رياض حقائب وكراس وسجاد صغير من قمامة البلاستيك.
3. It is a fantastic project for the environment. انه مشروع رائع للحفاظ علي البيئة.

WB Page (79)



We all enjoy having new mobile phones, but what should we do with our old phones? Should we keep throwing them away? Remember that it is not easy to make mobile phones. They need to have a lot of important materials[1] inside them. When you throw away[2] a phone, these materials can be very bad for the environment. I think that one day, we will not need to buy a new phone every few years. People will design[3]* phones that can use the latest technology[4], even when it changes. Then, we will avoid throwing away our old phones. That will be very good for the environment!

١- مواد
٢- يتخلص من
٣- يصمم
٤- أحدث التكنولوجيا




*design لاينطق حرف g من هذه الكلمة

WB Page (80)

There are a lot of traditional arts in Egypt. I learned about the traditional art of weaving at school today. A weaver uses a machine called a loom. This crosses threads under and over each other to make fabric. Weavers can make very beautiful things.





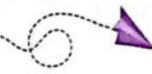
WB Page (80)



Waste is a big problem around the world. However, many of the things that we throw away can easily be recycled.

- Russia[1] used a plastic football field[2] in the 2018 World Cup. It was made from 50,000 plastic cups.
- You can recycle cotton[3] and wool[4] to make new clothes. You can also use old plastic bottles to make rubbish bags[5] and plastic bags for shopping.
- You can make lovely[6] new handbags[7] from pieces of leather that factories do not use.
- Some stones[9] are very expensive, but you can make beautiful jewellery[10] from old glass bottles.
- When plastic fishing nets[11] fall into the sea, they are very bad for sea animals. We can collect the fishing nets and recycle them into other plastic items[12], like sunglasses[13] for example.
- You can make bricks[14] to build houses from old plastic bottle tops[15]. They are very strong!

١- دولة روسيا
٢- ملعب
٣- القطن
٤- الصوف
٥- أكياس قمامة
٦- جميل
٧- حقائب يد
٨- جلد مدبوغ
٩- أحجار كريمة
١٠- مجوهرات
١١- شبك صيد السمك
١٢- عناصر/ مواد
١٣- نظارات شمس
١٤- قوالب طوب
١٥- أغطية




SB Page 18

Every day, thousands of people collect rubbish from homes and the streets of Cairo. These people collect more than two million tonnes[1] of paper, plastic, wood and metal every year. Around 85% of this rubbish is recycled or reused in many different ways. This makes it one of the most successful[2] recycling programs in the world. Some of the rubbish is sold to factories so that it can be used again. Some of it is used to make jewellery, bags and carpets,[3] which are then sold in shops around Egypt and online around the world. The people who collect rubbish work with a charity[4] called the Association for the Protection of the Environment[5] to make these items.

There is also a project between the people who collect rubbish, the government[6] and some international companies to help people to stop using so much plastic in Egypt. When people collect an empty[7] plastic bottle that belongs to one of these companies, the company will pay the collector[8] some money. So the people who collect rubbish are working hard to help to protect Egypt's environment.

We all need to recycle and reuse our rubbish. If we don't, we will destroy[9] the planet.

١- أطنان
٢- ناجح
٣- سجاد
٤- جمعية خيرية
٥- جمعية الحفاظ على البيئة
٦- الحكومة
٧- فارغ
٨- جامع القمامة
٩- يتلف/ يدمر

# Exercises on Vocabulary

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. A .............. is a person who makes cloth by weaving.
   a. head teacher b. weaver c. volunteer d. cleaner
2. .............. is a liquid used in pens or printers for writing, drawing, etc.
   a. Fabric b. Ink c. Loom d. Thread
3. .............. is cloth or material which can be used to make clothes, bags, etc.
   a. Fabric b. Iron c. Glass d. Wood
4. The art of making cloth by crossing threads using a special machine is called .............. .
   a. shopping b. designing c. weaving d. collecting
5. A machine used for weaving is called a .............. .
   a. printer b. weaver c. cartridge d. loom

### Synonyms & Antonyms

6. The word "allow" is the same meaning as the word .............. .
   a. let b. make c. stop d. prevent
7. I like this lovely dress. The word "lovely" means .............. .
   a. bad b. ugly c. old d. beautiful
8. Jewellery made from old glass bottles is not expensive. The antonym of "expensive" is .............. . WB
   a. pricey b. lovely c. cheap d. pleasant
9. The word "horrible" is similar in meaning to .............. .
   a. lovely b. terrible c. pleasant d. interesting
10. The printer isn't connected to the computer. The verb "connected" means .............. . SB
    a. linked b. disconnected c. collected d. designed
11. Today, we use modern ways of farming. The opposite of "modern" is .............. .
    a. traditional b. expensive c. new d. far
12. The vase is broken. Who threw it to the ground? "Broken" here is opposite in meaning to ".............. ".
    a. quiet b. unsafe c. dangerous d. undamaged
13. We collect rubbish and recycle it. "Collect" here means ".............. ".
    a. gather b. throw c. renew d. sell

### Prefixes & Suffixes

14. To get the adjective from "colour", we add the suffix .............. .
    a. -er b. -ful c. -ness d. -ly
15. To give the adjective from the noun "tradition", we add the suffix ..............
    a. -ful b. -y c. -ly d. -al





16. We add the suffix .............. to give the noun from the verb "weave".
    a. -ful b. -ing c. -al d. -ed
17. What can I do to print this document? To get the noun from the verb "print", add the suffix "........."
    a. -or b. -er c. -ist d. -ment

### Guessing the meaning

18. In this old factory, they use traditional machines for weaving. This means they use ........ .
    a. looms b. printers c. cartridges d. computers

## Speaking

**Discussing what is worse for the environment** مناقشة ما هو أكثر ضرراً للبيئة

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| **A:** What do you think is worse for the environment? Why?<br>ما أكثر ضرراً للبيئة في رأيك؟ لماذا؟ | **B:** I think it is air pollution, because smoke and dust may damage our lungs.<br>اعتقد أنه تلوث الهواء، لأن الدخان والغبار ربما يدمران رئتينا.<br>**B:** I think water pollution is worse, because polluted water may make us ill.<br>اعتقد أن تلوث المياه أكثر ضرراً، لأن الماء الملوث ربما يصيبنا بالمرض. |
| **A:** What do you think of rubbish in landfill sites?<br>ما رأيك في القمامة التي توضع في أماكن مقالب النفايات؟ | **B:** I think it is the worst because it makes a greenhouse gas called methane.<br>اعتقد أنها الأسوأ لأنها تكون غاز الاحتباس الحراري المسمى بالميثان. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



**1 Finish the following dialogue:**

**Ahmed is talking to Samir who is planting a tree.**

**Ahmed** : Hello, Samir. ❶ ............................................................?
**Samir** : I am planting a tree.
**Ahmed** : Do you know how to plant a tree?
**Samir** : ❷ ............................................................ .
**Ahmed** : ❸ ............................................................?
**Samir** : My uncle taught me this; he is an old farmer.
**Ahmed** : Are trees useful for our environment?
**Samir** : ❹ ............................................................ .

**Ahmed** : Why are trees useful for us?

**Samir** : 6 ..........................................................

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**to use - pollution - weaving - energy - used - recycling**

Many governments are working to control 1 ........ .They are trying 2 ........ fewer fossil fuels. They are getting 3 ........ from the sun, the wind, water and other ways that produce less pollution. They are 4 ........ old things to reduce pollution.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A printer ........... is a small container of ink for use in a printer. Longman
   a. cartridge b. carriage c. glass d. cup
2. A/An ........... is a machine on which thread is woven into cloth. Longman
   a. engine b. axe c. loom d. room
3. What a horrible movie! "Horrible" has the same meaning as "..........." Longman
   a. terrific b. awful c. long d. bored
4. In the past, we used traditional ways of farming. The antonym of "traditional" is ........... جنوب سيناء 2023
   a. modern b. old c. expensive d. far
5. To turn the verb "discuss" into a noun, we add the suffix ...........
   a. -ful b. -ion c. -ity d. -ed

## 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

"A short story" "A recycling project at school"

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What do students use in the classroom?
- What does the writer decide to start?
- How is his / her project useful?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- In the classroom, students use ......................
- The writer decides to start ......................
- The project is useful because ......................






SB pages 19-21 WB pages 81-83

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| seagrass | اعشاب بحرية/طحالب | wetland | أرض رطبة |
| ocean | محيط | conclusion | خاتمة |
| coral reefs | الشعاب المرجانية | conclude (d) | يختم |
| rainforest | غابة استوائية مطيرة | finish (ed) | ينهي/ينتهي |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| speech | حديث/خطاب | poster | ملصق |
| washing up | غسيل الأطباق | factual | حقيقي/واقعي |
| tips | نصائح | lift | مصعد |
| time | مرة | reuse (d) | يعيد استخدام |
| herbs | اعشاب | introduce (d) | يقدم |
| spider plant | نبات الغيلان/العنكبوت(نبات متسلق) | include (d) | يشتمل على |
| solution | حل | remind (ed) | يُذكّر |
| temperature | درجة الحرارة | water (ed) | يروي بالماء |
| naturally | بشكل طبيعي | contrast (ed)(n) | يقارن / تناقض |
| baker's | مخبز | respect (ed) | يقدر/يحترم |
| diver | غواص | present (ed) | يُقدم |
| square metre | متر مربع | | |

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| **seagrass** اعشاب بحرية/ طحالب | plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast |

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| conclusion | خاتمة | end | start | بداية |
| attractive | جذاب | beautiful | unattractive | غير جذاب |
| safe | آمن | secure | unsafe | غير آمن |
| familiar | مألوف | usual | unfamiliar | غير مألوف |
| disappear | يختفي | hide / vanish | appear | يظهر |
| begin | يبدأ | start | finish - end | ينتهي/ينهي |
| turn on | يشغل جهاز | switch on | turn off / switch off | يطفىء جهاز |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| re- | again | تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى | reuse | يعيد استخدام |
| dis- | opposite | تعطى عكس المعنى | disappear | يختفى |
| -ive | v → adj | تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | attractive | جذاب |
| -ful | | | careful | حريص |
| -ion | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى اسم | conclusion | خاتمة |
| -y | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | healthy / windy | صحى / شديد الرياح |
| -er | person | تكوّن اسم الفاعل | diver / speaker | غواص/متحدث |
| -ly | adj → adv | تحول الصفة إلى الحال | naturally | بشكل طبيعي |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stop air pollution | يوقف تلوث الهواء | begin with | يبدأ بـ |
| give / make a speech | يلقى حديث/خطبة | turn off | يطفىء جهاز |
| absorb pollution | يمتص التلوث | at the end | فى النهاية |
| take care of | يعتنى بـ | careful of | حريص بشأن |
| keep the sea healthy | يحافظ على سلامة البحر | walk down the road | يسير فى الطريق |
| used to be | اعتاد أن يكون | on the right | على اليمين |
| catch the train | يلحق بالقطار | | |
| along the UK coast | على امتداد ساحل المملكة المتحدة | | |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| begin | يبدأ | began | begun |
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| smell | يشم | smelt / smelled | smelt / smelled |
| ride | يركب (دراجة/حيوان) | rode | ridden |
| wear | يرتدى | wore | worn |





## Language Notes

### 1) Expressing cause, result & contrast

**A- Expressing cause**

- **because / since / as / this is because** لأن

نستخدم الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة للتعبير عن السبب

Ex. Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass because / since / as it is a safe place.

Ex. I can't stay anymore. This is because I have to catch my plane.

**B- Expressing result**

- **that is why** لهذا السبب

نستخدم التعبير السابق للتعبير عن النتيجة

Ex. We stopped for shopping; that is why we are late.

**C- Expressing contrast**

- **However / Nevertheless** مع ذلك/بالرغم من ذلك

نستخدم الكلمات السابقة للتعبير عن التناقض

Ex. Plastic is bad for the environment. However / Nevertheless, it is easy to recycle.

### 2) make يجعل

- **make + مفعول + inf.**

Ex. Comedy films make me laugh.

- **make + مفعول + adjective**

Ex. Your success makes us happy.

### 3) Verbs + adjectives

بعض الأفعال يليها صفة (وليس حال) مثل:

**smell / look / feel / be / taste**

Ex. Some food smells bad or looks unusual.

Ex. I think the meal tastes delicious.

كما يمكن أن تستخدم بعض هذه الأفعال كأسماء:

**smell** رائحة **taste** مذاق **look** منظر

Ex. Chocolate has a sweet taste.

### 4) Everyone + singular verb

- يأتى بعد الضمير (everyone) فعل لفاعل مفرد ونعود عليها بالضمائر (they / their):

Ex. Everyone loves their homeland.

## 5) coast / beach

- coast ساحل
(المنطقة التي يتقابل بها البحر مع اليابسة على الخريطة)

**Ex.** We drove along the Red Sea Coast.

- beach شاطئ
(المنطقة التي بها رمال أو حصى على البحر)

**Ex.** The kids went to the beach and built sand castles.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I was busy yesterday; that is .......... I couldn't attend the meeting.
   a. because  b. when  c. why  d. since
2. Eating too much fat may make you .......... .
   a. ill  b. been ill  c. being ill  d. illness
3. Don't eat that food, it .......... bad.
   a. smell  b. smells  c. feels  d. falls
4. Not everyone .......... plants in their houses.
   a. have  b. get  c. make  d. has
5. There used to be a lot of sea grass along the UK ..........
   a. coast  b. lost  c. cost  d. post

## Audioscript

SB Page (19)

استمع إلى النصوص

**Ziad:** Today, I'm going to talk about what we can do to help the environment. I'd like to start by saying that we should all use less energy. For example, turn off[1] the TV and computer at night. Remember to turn off the lights when you leave a room. And we should all use stairs[2] and not the lift[3]. This saves energy and keeps us fit and healthy.

In the next part of my speech[4], I'd like to talk about water. We need to save water, so please turn off the tap[5] when you brush your teeth. And when you water your plants, use your washing up water[6]. And please stop buying water in plastic bottles. Buy a glass water bottle that you can use again. This saves plastic waste[7]. And it's really important to recycle as much as possible. Recycle your plastic, glass and paper at home. And why not start a recycling project at school?

I'd like to finish by saying, we can all help the environment. We need to understand that the environment is our home and it is important that we respect[8] it.

١- يطفئ جهاز
٢- سلالم
٣- مصعد
٤- حديث
٥- صنبور (حنفية)
٦- ماء الغسيل
٧- مخلفات بلاستيكية
٨- يقدر/يحترم








SB Page (20)

### Seagrass



Seagrass[1] is found in the sea along the coast[2] of many countries. It is food for many sea animals, including[3] turtles[4]. Baby fish[5] and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place.

Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy and it can help stop climate change. This is because seagrass absorbs 10% of the ocean's[6] carbon dioxide every year. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why seagrass can help stop climate change.

About 90% of all seagrass has disappeared[7] from the UK's coast in the last 100 years. However[8], there is an environmental project in the UK that is growing[9] new seagrass. When the plants are big enough, divers[10] will plant them along the coast. The plants will still be quite small. Nevertheless[11], they will grow into 20,000 square metres of seagrass.

١- أعشاب بحرية / طحالب
٢- ساحل
٣- مشتملة على
٤- سلاحف
٥- صغار السمك
٦- محيط
٧- اختفى
٨- مع ذلك
٩- زراعة
١٠- غواصون
١١- بالرغم من ذلك

**Reading Skill** مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The text is mainly about .......... يتحدث النص أساسًا عن .....
   a. turtles  b. oceans  c. seagrass  d. divers
2. Infer from the text why seagrass is important for the environment.
   استنتج من النص لماذا تعد الأعشاب البحرية مهمة للبيئة.
3. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الأولى في جملة واحدة.

**Writing Skill** مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Seagrass is found along sea coasts. توجد الأعشاب البحرية على امتداد سواحل البحر.
2. It's food for many sea animals. انها طعام لعديد من الحيوانات البحرية.
3. It can help stop climate change. يمكنها أن تساعد في توقف التغير المناخي.
4. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide. تمتص الأعشاب البحرية غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون.

WB Page (81)

Today, I'm going to talk about plants in the house. Not everyone has them, but I think you should! I'd like to start by saying that plants are very good for your health.

To begin with, plants breathe out oxygen, which is a gas that we need to breathe. Also, plants often absorb pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us.

In the next part of my speech[1], I'd like to talk about where to put your plants. Some plants smell nice[2], so I put these in my balcony[3]. And you can eat the leaves[4] of plants called herbs[5], so put these in your kitchen! Spider plants[6] look attractive[7], so I put them in an open place[8], like the living room[9].

I'd like to finish by saying that it is best to choose plants that grow naturally[10] in Egypt. They will look better in your house since[11] they will look familiar[12]. Plants that grow naturally in Egypt are easier to take care of.

١- حديث/خطبة
٢- رائحتها لطيفة
٣- شرفة
٤- أوراق النباتات
٥- أعشاب
٦- نباتات الغيلان (متسلق)
٧- جذاب
٨- مكان مفتوح
٩- غرفة المعيشة
١٠- بشكل طبيعى
١١- لأن
١٢- مألوف

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. .......... is a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast.
   a. Seafood b. Seagrass c. Seabed d. Seabird

### Synonyms & Antonyms

2. The word "attractive" means ..........
   a. beautiful b. unattractive c. wet d. expensive
3. The word "familiar" is the opposite of ..........
   a. well-known b. popular c. special d. unfamiliar
4. Nabil : Did you .......... the light in the room, Ahmed?
   Ahmed : No, I turned it off before leaving the room.
   a. switch off b. turn on c. put on d. see off
5. The synonym of "safe" is .......... .
   a. dangerous b. lovely c. secure d. unsafe
6. The antonym of "conclusion" is .......... .
   a. end b. start c. finish d. address
7. Your baby has an attractive smile. The opposite of "attractive" is .......... .
   a. beautiful b. friendly c. unsafe d. unattractive

### Prefixes & Suffixes

8. To give the noun from "conclude", we delete "de" and add the suffix .......... .
   a. -ful b. -ive c. -sion d. -ation





9. We add the suffix .......... to turn the verb care into an adjective.
   a. -ful b. -ion c. -ive d. -ly
10. Reuse old plastic bottles. The prefix "re-" means to use it .......... .
   a. next b. again c. first d. last
11. The sun disappears at sunset. The prefix "dis-" here gives the .......... of "appear".
   a. meaning b. opposite c. adjective d. noun

### Guessing the meaning

12. The speaker concluded his speech in a friendly way. This means that the .......... of his speech was friendly.
   a. end b. next c. start d. beginning
13. The Nile view here is beautiful. This means that the view is .......... .
   a. awful b. attractive c. horrible d. terrible
14. Alexandria has a long area along the sea. This means that Alexandria has a long .......... .
   a. ocean c. canal d. coast d. seagrass

## Speaking

### Expressions used in a speech

تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية أثناء إلقاء حديث/خطبة

| | |
|---|---|
| - Today, I'm going to talk about ... | اليوم، سوف أتحدث عن.......... |
| - I'd like to start by saying ... | أود أن أبدأ بقول أن.......... |
| - To begin with,... | لنبدأ بـ.......... |
| - In the next part of my speech, I'd like to.. | فى الجزء التالى من حديثى، أود أن... |
| - To conclude, ... | لكى أختتم، .......... |
| - I'd like to finish by saying ... | أود أن أنهى بقول أن.......... |

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



**1 Finish the following dialogue:**

**Dina is giving a speech about seagrass.**

**Ramy** : What will you talk about in your speech, Dina?
**Dina** : ❶ .......................................................... .
**Ramy** : ❷ ..........................................................?
**Dina** : Yes, I've read a lot about seagrass.
**Ramy** : ❸ ..........................................................?
**Dina** : Seagrass is food for many sea animals.
**Ramy** : Does seagrass help our environment?
**Dina** : ❹ .......................................................... .
**Ramy** : I wish you all the best in your speech.
**Dina** : ❺ .......................................................... .

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**oceans - will - reefs - would - why - where**

If you look around, you ❶ .................. probably see plastic everywhere. That's ❷ .................. plastic is becoming a serious problem, especially along the world's seas and ❸ .......... . Plastic is very harmful to sea animals and coral ❹ .......... . So many countries do their best to recycle plastic.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The verb "vanish" is a synonym to the verb ............ .
   a. conclude  b. disappear  c. begin  d. contrast
2. We add the prefix "un-" to give the opposite of ............ .
   a. familiar  b. appear  c. use  d. polite
3. The opposite of the verb "begin" is ............ .
   a. end  b. start  c. hide  d. become
4. The prefix ............ gives the opposite of "appear" (استرشادية 2023)
   a. un-  b. im-  c. dis-  d. il-

## 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following: WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A review of a habitat you have researched"

.............................................................................

.............................................................................

.............................................................................

.............................................................................

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- Where is the habitat?
- What are the interesting facts about it?
- Are there any environmental projects to help protect this habitat?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- Today, I'm going to talk about a habitat in..................
- To begin with, there are interesting facts......................
- In the next part of my articles, I'd like to write about environmental projects ...
- To conclude, ............................





# Review

## Key Vocabulary

- planet كوكب
- air pollution تلوث الهواء
- deforestation إزالة الغابات
- melting ice ذوبان الثلج
- rubbish قمامة
- ink الحبر
- weaving نسيج - نسج
- weaver عامل نسيج
- printer cartridge حبّارة
- conclusion خاتمة
- coral reefs الشعاب المرجانية
- volunteer متطوع
- landfill sites مقالب القمامة
- seagrass أعشاب بحرية / طحالب
- drought الجفاف
- printer طابعة
- loom نول (آلة النسيج)
- thread خيط
- fabric قماش
- rainforest غابة خطيرة
- global عالمى
- warmer seas بحار زادت حرارتها
- climate change التغير المناخى
- wetland أرض رطبة
- traditional تقليدى
- renewable energy الطاقة المتجددة
- global warming الاحتباس الحرارى
- carbon dioxide غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون
- fossil fuels الوقود الحفرى
- methane غاز الميثان
- solar energy الطاقة الشمسية
- ocean محيط
- greenhouse gas غاز الاحتباس الحرارى
- environmental problems مشكلات بيئية
- conclude (d) يختم
- avoid (ed) يتجنب
- absorb (ed) يمتص
- slow (ed) down يبطئ
- finish (ed) ينهى / ينتهى
- waste (d)(n) يهدر - يبدد - نفايات

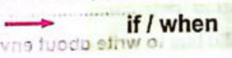
## Language

### 1- (If / When) for future predictions

• تستخدم (If / When) فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل كما يلى:

**If / When** → مضارع بسيط  , → **will / won't + inf.**

Ex. If we keep our planet clean, we will live a better life.

**will + inf.** → **if / when**  → مضارع بسيط

Ex. We will face many problems if we pollute the environment.

## 2- verbs + to + inf. / verbs + v-ing

### A- Verbs + to + inf.

• بعض الأفعال يتبعها (to + inf.) فقط مثل:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| arrange | يرتب | promise | يَعِد | offer | يعرض |
| ask | يسأل / يطلب | aim | يهدف | choose | يختار |
| hope | يأمل | learn | يتعلم | encourage | يشجع |

Ex. Hossam promised to help me.

### B- Verbs + V-ing

• بعض أفعال يتبعها (V - ing) مثل:

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| enjoy | يستمتع بـ | fancy | يتخيل | mind | يمانع | go | يذهب |
| suggest | يقترح | keep | يحافظ على | spend (وقت) | يقضي | | |

Ex. Hanaa enjoys writing stories.

### C- Verbs + to + inf. / V - ing

• هناك أفعال يأتى بعدها: ( to + inf.) أو (V- ing) دون تغيير في المعنى، مثل:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| start | يبدأ | prefer | يفضل | love | يحب |
| hate | يكره | like | يحب | | |

Ex. I love learning / to learn English.

| عبارات يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) | | عبارات يأتي بعدها (V - ing) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| It's time | حان الوقت | look forward to | يتطلع إلى |
| used to | اعتاد أن | (be) used to | معتاد على |
| It's easy | من السهل أن | Would (Do) you mind ..? | هل تمانع في ..؟ |
| It's difficult | من الصعب أن | | |
| It's nice | من اللطيف أن | | |
| The first ... | الأول... | | |
| The next ... | التالي ... | | |
| The last ... | الأخير ... | | |





# Speaking

## 1) Discussing recycling rubbish
مناقشة إعادة تدوير القمامة

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you think that the recycling project in Giza, Cairo and Fayoum is a good idea? Why? | - Yes, I think so, because this will keep our environment clean. |
| - What does your family do with waste plastic, paper and metal? | - They collect them to take to the recycling factory in our city. |
| - What will happen if we don't recycle rubbish? | - Rubbish will be everywhere and this will help pollute the environment. |

## 2) Discussing what is worse for the environment
مناقشة ما هو أكثر ضررا للبيئة

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| A: What do you think is worse for the environment? Why? | B: I think it is air pollution, because smoke and dust may damage our lungs.<br>B: I think water pollution is worse, because polluted water may make us ill. |
| A: What do you think of rubbish in landfill sites? | B: I think it is the worst because it makes a greenhouse gas called methane. |

## 3) Expressions used in a speech
تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية أثناء إلقاء حديث / خطبة

- Today, I'm going to talk about ...
- I'd like to start by saying ...
- To begin with,...
- In the next part of my speech, I'd like to..
- To conclude, ...
- I'd like to finish by saying ...

# General Exercises on Unit 8

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Emad and Mustafa are talking about the environment.**

Emad : What problem does our environment face?

**Mustafa** : ❶ ............................................................?

Emad : ❷ ............................................................

**Mustafa** : One of the causes is climate change.

Emad : ❸ ............................................................?

**Mustafa** : It is the way the world's weather is changing.

Emad : How can we stop this?

**Mustafa** : ❹ ............................................................

Emad : Do you think that using solar power will help slow down climate change?

**Mustafa** : ❺ ............................................................

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**1** **ride - planet - drive - to take - rubbish - taking**

Earth is our ❶ ........ We need ❷ ........ care of it. We can work together. We can keep Earth clean. Put your ❸ ........ in bins, and never leave it on the ground. We can walk or ❹ ........ bikes instead of driving cars.

**2** **use – keep – teeth – to use – tooth – up** Longman

Water is very important for our life. We can't live without water. Therefore, you must ❶ ........ it by all means. You must learn how ❷ ........ water carefully. You must turn off the tap after you brush your ❸ ........ . When you water your plants, use your washing ❹ ........ water.

**3** **to pollute - planet - renewable - polluting - plant - healthy** Longman

We should keep the environment clean. We should avoid ❶ ........ the Nile. We should ❷ ........ more trees. Also, we should use ❸ ........ energy. Thus, (بذلك) we will be able to live in a ❹ ........ environment.





## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ........ is a piece of plastic which contains and supplies ink for a printer.
   a. keyboard b. hard disc c. memory d. printer cartridge
2. At the conclusion of the email, he greeted me. The synonym of "conclusion" is ........
   a. opening b. end c. middle d. start
3. At last the sun appeared. The antonym of "appear" is ........
   a. reappear b. appearance c. appearing d. disappear
4. We add the suffix ........ to give the adjective from the noun "health".
   a. -ation b. -ion c. -y d. -ment
5. This worker is clever at using looms. This means he is a good ........
   a. winner b. swimmer c. weaver d. manager

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We'll save water if we only ........ (took) short showers. SB
2. We can avoid ........ (to cut) down the trees by building the road in a different place. SB
3. I decided ........ (buying) a water bottle that I can reuse from the shops. SB
4. ........ (Would) Dina speak good English if her parents move to Canada? WB
5. Do you enjoy ........ (to play) the piano? WB

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A review of a recycling project you have read about" WB

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- What is the project about?
- How did you know about it?
- What is your opinion about this project?
- Is it useful for the environment or not? Why / Why not?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- I read a recycling project about..................
- I read about it in............................
- In my opinion, ...............................
- I think it's useful / not useful for the environment because...............

Unit 8

# Al Azhar Test



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Samy and Doha are talking about trees.**

**Samy** : Why are trees good for the environment?

**Doha** : ❶ ........................................

**Samy** : ❷ ........................................?

**Doha** : If we cut down many trees, the air will be polluted.

**Samy** : What should we do?

**Doha** : We should plant a lot of trees.

**Samy** : Where should we plant trees?

**Doha** : ❸ ........................................

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**will - renewable - fuels - won't - recycle - cut**

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't ❶ .......... down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn fossil ❷ .......... to avoid climate change. We should use ❸ .......... energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we ❹ .......... be able to live in a safe environment.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We must take care of our planet. We can save it by growing trees, changing our diet habits and using renewable energy. We can drive less, recycle plastic waste and <u>green</u> our cities. In fact, a lot of people think that this is a serious problem to solve, and if they do something, our planet will be a better place to live in. World Environment Day is held every year to protect nature. Young people, communities and businessmen have to share in facing the environmental problems of the planet.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do we need to save our planet?
........................................
2. How can we save it?
........................................
3. Give a suitable title to the passage.
........................................

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. .......... can't share in facing the environmental problems.
   a. Babies b. Youth c. Businessmen d. Communities



5. The underlined word "green" means .......... more trees.
   a. cutting b. planting c. burning d. drawing

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sun gives us .......... energy.
   a. cooler b. solar c. local d. wind
2. There aren't many .......... weavers in Egypt today.
   a. colourful b. chemical c. traditional d. electrical
3. If you get up early, you .......... be late.
   a. will b. would c. wouldn't d. won't
4. We plan .......... the weekend in our village.
   a. spend b. spending c. to spend d. spends

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I .......... (be) in trouble, will you help me?
2. What do you need .......... (buy) from the shop, Mum?
3. We should avoid .......... (pollute) the environment.

## 6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

"A review of a habitat you have researched"

........................................
........................................



# Al Azhar Exercises

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### A Vocabulary

**SB & WB Exercises**

1. The long threads are made into .......... on looms.
   a. fabric b. iron c. plastic d. wood
2. There used to be a lot of .......... along the UK coast.
   a. sunglasses b. seagrass c. solar energy d. global warming
3. Rainforests .......... carbon dioxide.
   a. pause b. recycle c. absorb d. renew
4. Rubbish that isn't recycled is put into ..........
   a. fossil fuels b. landfill sites c. seagrass d. environment

**Longman Exercises**

5. .......... makes air, water, soil etc. dangerously dirty and not suitable for people to use.
   a. Cultivation b. Deforestation c. Pollution d. Population

6. A/An .................. is someone who does a job for free.
   a. professional  b. volunteer  c. employee  d. manager
7. Forest fires are increasing because our planet is getting ..................
   a. deeper  b. warmer  c. colder  d. cooler
8. Greenhouse gases are gases in the earth's .................. that trap heat.
   a. ground  b. land  c. atmosphere  d. soil
9. Earth is the fifth-largest ..................
   a. universe  b. star  c. planet  d. plant
10. To .................. something is to turn it into something that can be used again.
   a. invent  b. cut  c. recycle  d. throw
11. .................. comes from fossil fuels.
   a. Renewable energy  b. Oil
   c. Electricity  d. Water
12. Landfill .................. are places where some people throw rubbish.
   a. sets  b. sites  c. seats  d. sates
13. A/An .................. is much bigger than a sea.
   a. canal  b. ocean  c. waterfall  d. river

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

14. Sherifa doesn't know how to recycle the printer ..................
   a. cartridge  b. trash  c. bag  d. bridge
15. Looms cross threads under and over each other to make ..................
   a. ink  b. plastic  c. fabric  d. energy
16. Seagrass takes .................. carbon dioxide from the ocean.
   a. in  b. out  c. to  d. about
17. A/An .................. is an area of land that is often flooded by water.
   a. desert  b. habitat  c. wetland  d. ocean
18. Rubbish in landfill sites makes a greenhouse gas called ..................
   a. fuel  b. methane  c. energy  d. waste

## B Language

19. My family has decided .................. to Jordan next year. WB
   a. going  b. go  c. to going  d. to go
20. Climate change will get worse if we .................. more action now.
   a. doesn't take  b. don't take  c. take  d. took
21. .................. you don't hurry, you won't catch the train.
   a. If  b. Because  c. After  d. Without





# B iographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

### 1- "A review of things that you can recycle at school or in your house" (Lessons 1 & 2)

I have many old things at home that I don't need. I used to put them in a nearby landfill site. My science teacher told me that rubbish in landfill sites makes a greenhouse gas called methane. He advised me to recycle them instead. So, I sent my old things to the recycling centre. I asked my head teacher if we could start a recycling project, and he said yes. We used to throw away the printer cartridges with the school rubbish. Now, we try to recycle them for other purposes.

### 2- "A short story" "A recycling project at school" (Lessons 3 & 4)

Hossam is a student in preparatory three. In his classroom, students use computers connected to special printers. When the computer cartridges finish, they throw them away as rubbish. Hossam has read that this is bad for the environment. Hossam decides to start a recycling project with his classmates. They began to collect the old cartridges. They washed them to become very clean. Now, they are ready to use again. They suggest using them in many ways. They use them as containers. It is a great project.

### 3- "A review of a habitat you have researched" (Lessons 5 & 6)

I have done some research on a habitat. I'm going to write this review of it. It's the habitat of the whale "the ocean". I like reading about that. Whales are wonderful creatures. They are the largest living animals. The largest whale is the blue whale. They reach a length between 26-30 metres and weigh up to 200 tons. Whales have huge bodies and flat heads. They have big fins and large tails on their bodies to help them move in oceans.

### 4- "A review of a recycling project you have read about" (General Exercises)

I've read about a recycling project. It will lead to a much better place to live in. Reduce, reuse and recycle are the secrets. When people reduce, it means they are using less of something. This means less waste. Turning off the water tap when we brush our teeth is a way of reducing. Reusing is to use the things we already have again. We can use shopping bags made of cloth instead of plastic bags. Using both sides of the paper is also a way of reusing. Finally we can recycle. Recycling is to create new materials from old ones.

### 5- "How to keep our air clean" (Al Azhar)

Air pollution is an environmental problem. Smoke from factories and cars cause air pollution. Industry leads to many harmful gases such as carbon dioxide. To reduce air pollution, we should change some of our daily habits. We should stop cutting down trees. We should use public transports.

### 6- "A short story about a trip you had to a recycling factory" (Test)

Yesterday, our science teacher, Mr Moshen, took us on a trip. It was a surprise to visit a recycling factory. We all met at school in the morning. A big bus took us to the factory. An engineer was waiting for us outside the factory. We asked him some questions first. He answered them all. The engineer showed us how they recycle old materials. We saw many machines recycling old paper, glass, plastic and other materials. We spent a wonderful time there.

Unit 8

# TEST



## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue**

**Huda is talking to Amira who is reading an article about air pollution.**

**Huda** : What are you reading, Amira?

Amira : ❶ ........................................................................ .

**Huda** : What is this article about?

Amira : ❷ ........................................................................ .

**Huda** : ❸ ........................................................................ ?

Amira : We can stop air pollution by planting more trees.

**Huda** : ❹ ........................................................................ ?

Amira : Because trees absorb carbon dioxide and keep the air clean.

**Huda** : Can I read this article?

Amira : ❺ ........................................................................ .

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**absorb - made - plant - take - planet - makes**

Life is not possible without plants. Plants are the beauty of our ❶ ............ They are useful gifts of nature. When a plant grows, it ❷ ........ the area around it cleaner and beautiful. Plants produce oxygen and ❸ ........ carbon dioxide. It is a fact that people who live near plants are healthier and happier. We should ❹ ........ care of plants.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Our home planet Earth is a rocky planet. It has a surface with mountains, valleys, and so much more. Water covers 70% of Earth's surface. That's why scientists called it the blue planet. Water is the most important liquid on Earth. No one can live without water. So polluting water causes illness to humans and animals.

Earth is a great planet to live on because it has air. Air is made mostly of nitrogen and has plenty of oxygen for us to breathe. Since we live here, you might think we know everything about Earth. There is still a lot that we can learn about our home planet.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is mainly about the ..................
   a. layers b. air c. Earth d. space
2. Land is about .................. % of Earth's surface.
   a. 70 b. 24 c. 6 d. 30
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..................
   a. Earth b. air c. water d. oxygen

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.
   ........................................................................
5. Infer from the text why scientists called the Earth "the blue planet".
   ........................................................................
6. Why is air important for us to live?
   ........................................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .................. is natural energy that does not disappear or burn when you use it.
   a. Non-renewable energy b. Renewable energy
   c. Fossil fuels d. Oil
2. This song was a part of traditions of Egypt in the past. It is a/an .................. song.
   a. traditional b. colourful c. international d. electrical
3. The antonym of "global" is .................. .
   a. universal b. general c. local d. international
4. We add the suffix .................. to give the adjective from the verb attract.
   a. -ation b. -ion c. -ive d. -ment
5. A .................. is a long period of dry weather when there is not enough water for plants and animals to live.
   a. rain b. melting c. drought d. flood
6. They used the plastic fabric to make .................. bags, chairs and small carpets. They have different bright colours. SB
   a. colourful b. modern c. ugly d. horrible

**5** **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Miss Huda wants ............ (doing) a recycling project at school. SB
2. If I have more time, I ............ (would) read a book.
3. We enjoy ............ (recycle) our rubbish. It's fun and it helps the environment. SB
4. You should avoid ............ (to sit) on that wall because it is dangerous. WB
5. There is no bread, so we need ............ (going) to the baker's. WB

## D Writing

**6** **Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"A short story about a trip you had to a recycling factory"

2023 تجارة

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

-----------------------------------------------------------------------

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

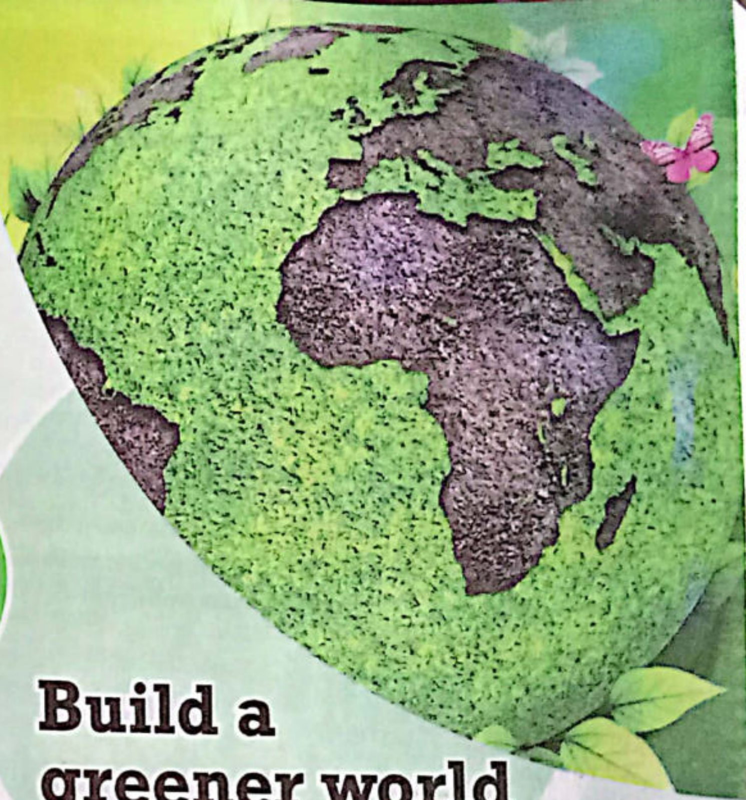
- Where was the trip?
- When and where did it happen?
- What did you see there?
- What was the end of the story?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Yesterday, our teacher took us ..............
- The trip was to ..............
- There, we saw ..............
- We learnt many useful things and ..............





# 9 UNIT Build a greener world

## Objectives

**Reading:**
A webpage about mangrove trees; The Iron Woman by Ted Hughes; short web posts about how to help the environment; a report about the Great Green Wall initiative

**Writing:**
A report about a green initiative in Egypt or Africa; answers to a survey

**Listening:**
A conversation about sustainable living; a discussion about a story; a television interview about a solar farm

**Speaking:**
Discussing how to live more sustainably; asking about, giving and responding to opinions; conducting a survey

**Language:**
The second conditional

**Life Skills:**
Problem solving and decision making

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22-25 WB pages 84-85



استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sustainable | مستدام/صديق للبيئة | light bulb | مصباح |
| product | منتج | battery | بطارية |
| paper | ورق / ورق | crops | محاصيل |
| greener world | عالم خالي من التلوث | seedling | نبتة |
| shopping bag | حقيبة تسوق | climate change | التغير المناخي |
| bamboo | نبات خشب الخيزران (البامبو) | rising | ارتفاع / تزايد |
| bamboo cup | كوب من الخيزران | sea level | مستوى سطح البحر |
| rechargeable | قابل لإعادة الشحن | mangrove tree | شجرة المانجروف |
| reusable | قابل لإعادة الاستخدام | electric toothbrush | فرشاة أسنان كهربائية |
| energy-saving | موفر للطاقة | reuse (d) | يعيد استخدام |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hairbrush | فرشاة شعر | position | مكان - وضع |
| seawater | مياه البحر | hieroglyphics | اللغة الهيروغليفية |
| community | مجتمع | environmental | بيئي |
| safer place | مكان أكثر أماناً | provide (d) | يزود بـ - يمد بـ |
| coffee shop | مقهى | charge (d) | يشحن |
| grandparents | أجداد | cause (d) | يسبب |
| webpage | صفحة على الإنترنت | affect (ed) | يؤثر على |
| shop window | فاترينة (محل) | plant (ed) (n) | يزرع - نبات |
| petrol | بنزين | plug (ged)....in | يوصل ... (بالكهرباء) |
| mangrove forests | غابات المانجروف | | |

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| **sustainable** مستدام/صديق للبيئة | causing little or no damage[1] to the environment. |
| **bamboo** نبات خشب الخيزران (البامبو) | a tall plant which we can use to make cups and chairs |
| **bamboo cup** كوب من الخيزران | a cup made from a tall, strong grass[2] |
| **energy-saving light bulb** مصباح موفر للطاقة | a glass object that uses less electricity than usual to give light |
| **rechargeable battery** بطارية قابلة لإعادة الشحن | something that gives power[3] to a machine, toy, car, etc. and which you can continue to add energy to, so they continue to work |
| **reusable** قابل لإعادة الاستخدام | able to be used again |

١- تلف
٢- عشب
٣- طاقة





| | |
|---|---|
| **rising sea levels** ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر | when the sea becomes higher because climate change melts[4] the ice at the Poles[5] |
| **mangrove tree** شجرة المانجروف | a small tree with roots[6] above the ground, which grows in or near the coast or rivers |
| **seedling** نبتة | - a small plant which has started to grow from a seed<br>- a young plant |
| **crop** محصول | a plant such as wheat[7], rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food |

٤- يذوب
٥- القطبين
٦- جذور
٧- القمح

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| sustainable مستدام/صديق للبيئة | renewable / continual | non-renewable غير مستدام/غير متجدد |
| pass يجتاز/ينجح | succeed in | fail يرسب |
| provide يزود/يمد بـ | supply | prevent يمنع |
| rising ارتفاع | increasing | decreasing انخفاض |
| plug in يوصل (بالكهرباء) | connect | plug out يفصل (الكهرباء) |
| give up يقلع عن / يتنازل عن | stop | continue يستمر |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | Examples |
|---|---|---|
| re- | again تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى | rechargeable / reusable قابل لإعادة الشحن/قابل لإعادة الاستخدام |
| un- | opposite تعطى عكس المعنى | unusual غير عادي |
| -able | v→ adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | sustainable / rechargeable مستدام/ قابل لإعادة الشحن |
| -ic | n→ adj يحول الاسم إلى الصفة | electric كهربي |
| -y | | healthy صحي |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| get higher / lower | يصبح أعلى/أكثر انخفاضاً | grow into | ينمو ليصبح....... |
| solve problems | يحل مشكلات | come onto | يأتي إلى |
| pass a test | يجتاز اختبار | by the sea | بجوار البحر |
| use less | يستخدم بشكل أقل | protect .... from | يحمي...... من |
| on a farm | في مزرعة | get..... from | يحصل على...... من |
| on holiday | في أجازة | along the Red Sea coast | على امتداد ساحل البحر الاحمر |
| for longer | لمدة أطول | | |
| because of | بسبب | | |

**Conjugations of Irregular Verbs**

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| give | يعطي | gave | given |
| cut | يقطع | cut | cut |
| come | يأتي | came | come |

## Language Notes

### 1) provide .... for / provide .... with

- **provide .. for** يوفر ...... لـ
  
  Ex. Parents provide different needs for their children.

- **provide ..... with** يزود ...... بـ
  
  Ex. She provides her young girl with all what she wants.

### 2) community / society

- **community** جماعة
  
  (مجموعة من الناس يعيشون في منطقة واحدة)
  
  Ex. The community inside my village respects the elders.

- **society** مجتمع
  
  (مواطني دولة يتبعون نفس القوانين والتنظيمات)
  
  Ex. The new projects will affect all the society positively.

### 3) rise / raise

- **rise (rose / risen)**
  
  يرتفع (لايتبعه مفعول)/تشرق الشمس
  
  Ex. The sun rises in the east.

- **raise ( d )**
  
  يرفع (يتبعه مفعول)
  
  Ex. If you know the answer, raise your hand.

### Check on Language Notes

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Our school provides us .............. all books every year.
   a. to  b. with  c. for  d. by
2. The .............. in Sinai is very kind to tourists.
   a. country  b. camp  c. comment  d. community
3. Temperature .............. in summer.
   a. raises  b. rises  c. prays  d. bears

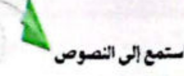




## Audioscript

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Dalia** : I want to do something to protect the environment, but I don't know what to do.

**Reem** : That's easy. Use less plastic. My family used to get all our shopping in plastic bags. But now, we use reusable[1] shopping bags.

**Dalia** : That's a good idea.

**Reem** : Also, get a bamboo coffee cup. Look at mine. You can't usually recycle the cups that you get from coffee shops. Bamboo is sustainable[2], so bamboo products help the environment. I've also got a bamboo toothbrush[3].

**Dalia** : Wow! I like your cup. It doesn't look like bamboo.

**Reem** : Do you use energy-saving light bulbs[4] at home?

**Dalia** : Yes, we do. We didn't use to use energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now.

**Reem** : So do we. So you are doing something.

**Dalia** : OK, but I don't think I could give up[5] my electric toothbrush for a bamboo toothbrush.

١- يمكن اعادة استخدامه
٢- مستدام/صديق للبيئة
٣- فرشاة اسنان
٤- مصابيح موفرة للطاقة
٥- يتنازل عن

## Reading

SB page (24)

### Climate Change [1]

Climate change means that many countries have more floods[2] now because of rising sea levels[3]. Most trees and plants can't live in seawater[4]. When seawater comes onto farms,[5] the salt in the water kills the crops[6] and farmers can't grow anything for many years. So, people lose their farms and their homes.

However, in hot countries like Egypt, mangrove trees[7] grow in the sea along the coast[8]. Mangrove forests[9] protect[10] farms and communities[11] from strong winds and storms. They provide homes[12] for plants, fish and sea animals[13]. If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.

Now in Egypt, people are growing thousands of mangrove seedlings[14] to plant along[15] the Red Sea coast. The problems caused by rising sea levels could get worse[16] if they didn't plant new mangrove forests. So, they are going to plant 300,000 seedlings every year. When they grow into mangrove forests, they will protect the coast from rising sea levels.

١- التغير المناخي
٢- فيضانات
٣- ارتفاع مستوي سطح البحر
٤- ماء البحر
٥- مزارع
٦- المحاصيل
٧- شجر المانجروف
٨- الساحل
٩- غابات المانجروف
١٠- يحمي
١١- مجتمعات
١٢- مواطن/بيئات
١٣- حيوانات بحرية
١٤- نبتات
١٥- علي امتداد
١٦- تزداد سوءا

# Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. A ............ cup is a cup made from a tall, strong grass.
   a. bamboo  b. glass  c. metal  d. plastic
2. ............ means that the sea becomes higher because climate change melts the ice at the Poles.
   a. Sustainable  b. Rising sea levels  c. Rechargeable  d. Recycle
3. A ............ is a small plant which has started to grow from a seed. أسيوط 2023
   a. hairbrush  b. battery  c. seedling  d. crop
4. To be ............ is something causing little or no damage to the environment. بنى سويف 2023
   a. inexpensive  b. sustainable  c. remote  d. special

### Synonyms & Antonyms

5. Petrol for cars isn't sustainable. The synonym of "sustainable" is ............
   a. renewable  b. raising  c. interesting  d. non-renewable
6. The opposite of "give up" is ............
   a. continue  b. save  c. stop  d. waste
7. Plug in the computer. "Plug in" has a similar meaning to ............
   a. comment  b. connect  c. communicate  d. congratulate
8. The synonym of "provide" is ............
   a. save  b. supply  c. sustain  d. damage
9. The antonym of "rising" is ............
   a. decreasing  b. sending  c. climbing  d. increasing
10. ............ is the opposite of "plug in".
    a. Turn on  b. Give up  c. Plug out  d. Take in
11. The rise in prices is a problem in most countries. "Rise" is a synonym of "............" Longman
    a. decrease  b. number  c. increase  d. amount
12. Yusuf succeeded in the exam last year. The word "succeeded in" means ............ الشرقية 2022
    a. post  b. pest  c. past  d. passed

### Prefixes & Suffixes

13. These batteries are rechargeable. The suffix "-able" gives the ............
    a. adverb  b. opposite  c. noun  d. adjective





14. Mangrove trees are unusual. The prefix "un-" gives the ............
    a. meaning  b. same  c. opposite  d. noun
15. The noun "health" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix ............
    a. -ive  b. -ing  c. -y  d. -ly
16. We use the suffix ............ to form the adjective from "electricity"
    a. -ous  b. -ic  c. -ing  d. -ment
17. You need to recharge your mobile. The prefix "re-" means to charge it ............
    a. again  b. next  c. less  d. hard
18. To get the adjective from "sustain", you add the suffix ............ السويس 2023
    a. -able  b. -al  c. -ment  d. -tion

### Guessing the meaning

19. We can use that bag again. To use something again is to ............ it. WB
    a. recharge  b. reuse  c. revise  d. resolve
20. We should all help to live in clean environment. This means that we need ............ environment.
    a. rechargeable  b. greener  c. polluted  d. dirty
21. Dalia and Reem have energy-saving light bulbs at home. This means they ............ energy. SB
    a. give  b. save  c. waste  d. solve
22. We can't continue to use petrol for cars because it is not ............ كفر الشيخ 2022
    a. simple  b. surrounded  c. sustainable  d. rechargeable

# Language

## 1- Remember: used to اعتاد أن

• تستخدم **(used to)** في الاثبات بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للتعبير عن فعل كان يتكرر في الماضي ولم يعد يحدث في الوقت الحاضر:

**فاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل**

**Ex.** We used to get all our shopping in plastic bags, but now we don't.

**Ex.** I used to play football when I was young, but now I don't.

• في النفي نستخدم:

**فاعل + didn't use to + inf. لم يكن معتاد أن**

**Ex.** We didn't use to buy energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now.

• في حالة السؤال بمعنى "هل" نستخدم:

**Did + فاعل + use to + inf..... ?**

**Ex.** A: Did you use to play games when you were young?

B: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

• في حالة السؤال "بكلمة استفهام" نستخدم:

**كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + use to + inf.... ?**

**Ex. A:** What did you use to do when you were in Alexandria?

**B:** I used to go swimming on holidays.

- He used to be alone, but now he .......... (won't). الدور الجديد 2023

- انتبه: فى الجملة السابقة الفاعل اعتاد أن يكون وحيدًا (صفة) وجاء قبلها فعل (be)، وعند الحل نستخدم (isn't) بدلًا من (won't)

**Answer:** He used to be alone, but now he isn't.

- أما إذا كان الجزء الأول يحتوى على فعل، فلابد أن تكون الإجابة (don't / doesn't)

- He used to waste water, but now he .......... (not). البحيرة 2022

**Answer:** He used to waste water, but now he doesn't.

## Exercises on Language

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. The Ancient Egyptians .................. (use) to use a form of writing called hieroglyphics. WB
2. My grandparents .......... (doesn't use) send emails - they wrote letters. WB
3. We used to .......... (wasting) water, but now we try to save water. الدقهلية 2023
4. Ahmed ............... (not use) to like cheese, but now he loves it. WB
5. This building .......... (used be) white, before they painted it blue. WB
6. Heba .......... (used to) like cheese, but now she does. شمال سيناء 2023
7. They didn't .......... (used to) drive electric cars in the past. الغربية 2022
8. He used to waste water, but now he .......... (not). البحيرة 2022

### Longman Exercises

9. Our grandparents used .......... (to living) in a small village.
10. My father .......... (don't) use to get up late when he was young.
11. Did you .......... (used) to walk to work, dad?
12. When he .......... (be) a child, he used to like eating sweets.
13. Gaber used to play football when he was a student, but nowadays he .......... (do).

### Bit by Bit Exercises

14. Which park did you .......... (used) to go to when you were young?
15. Did Seham .............. (use) go shopping when she was abroad?
16. Who .............. (does) you use to visit when you were on holiday?





17. I used .............. (have) a small car, but I have a bigger one now.
18. Ali used to be late for work, but now he .............. (won't).
19. Did your grandma .......... (used to) tell you stories?
20. Tamer .......... (use) to ride a bike when he was five.
21. .............. (Do) you use to come to school late in the past?
22. What clothes .......... (you did) use to wear when you were younger?
23. In the past, people .............. (use) cups made of clay.

## 2- The second conditional الحالة الشرطية الثانية

• تعبر الحالة الشرطية الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:

**Form التكوين**

**If + فاعل + ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل), → فاعل + would / could + inf.**

**Ex.** If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.




- يمكن أن تأتى if فى وسط الجملة كالآتى:

**Ex.** There would be fewer floods if there were more mangrove trees.

- لاحظ أننا لا نضع فاصلة (comma) إذا جاءت if فى وسط الجملة ونضعها إذا جاءت If فى أول الجملة.

**Question السؤال**

**(كلمة استفهام) Would / Could فاعل + inf. → if + فاعل + ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ...?**

**Ex.** Would they win the match if they trained hard?

**Ex.** If they trained hard, would they win the match?

**Usage الاستخدام**

• يمكن أن نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية مع (could / might) بمعنى ربما كان سوف (would perhaps / possible)

**Ex.** The problems caused by rising sea levels could get worse if they didn't plant new mangrove forests.

**Ex.** If I had a car, I (might / would possible) go to work faster.

**(If I were...) لإعطاء النصيحة**

• تستخدم were مع if لإعطاء النصيحة

**Ex.** If I were you, I would do sport.

- لاحظ استخدام (were) مع الفاعل المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الشرطية الثانية

**Ex.** If Manal weren't / wasn't busy, she would help you.

- If I .......... (be) in trouble, would you help me? 2023

**Answer:** If I were in trouble, would you help me?

**Notes**

١- هناك أفعال مثل (cut - put - hit - shut - read etc.) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (he - she - it):

Ex. If he shut the door, the thieves wouldn't break into the house.

٢- تستخدم (Unless) بمعنى (إذا لم) أوتساوى (If.... did not) كالآتى :

Ex. If we didn't do the homework, our teacher would be angry.

- Unless we did the homework, our teacher would be angry.

-لاحظ أننا استخدمنا بعد(Unless) الماضى البسيط من(do) أى ان

If + فاعل + didn't do = Unless + فاعل + did

## Exercises on "The second conditional"

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. I would write to Nahla more often if I .......... (know) her address. WB
2. The volleyball team.......... (will win) the match if they had better players.
3. I would plant more trees if I .......... (be) in your position. SB
4. If they .......... (cutting) so many trees, they would have bigger forests. SB
5. We could visit our cousins more often if they .......(not live) in Canada. WB
6. More people .......... (will use) that shop if it was open for longer. SB
7. What would you do if you never .......... (watch) television? WB
8. What would you do if you .......... (be) rich? القاهرة 2022 WB
9. If we lived in Hurghada, we .......... (go) to the beach. القاهرة 2023
10. If I were a millionaire, I .......... (help) the poor. 2023
11. If he read the question well, he .......... (answers) it. 2022

### Longman Exercises

12. If he .......... (wouldn't) stop smoking, he would have health problems.
13. What .......... (did) you do if you lost your mobile in the park?
14. Would you help me if I .......... (am) in trouble?
15. If less energy .......... (was using), we wouldn't have this high pollution.
16. If I .......... (have) enough time, I'd visit you.
17. Would she .......... (enjoys) her time if she were with us?

### Bit by Bit Exercises

18. Where .......... (you go) if you had a holiday?
19. If there .......... (is) electricity, I would recharge the batteries.





20. I would visit you if I .......... (have) time.
21. Unless Noura .......... (didn't finish) cooking, we wouldn't have lunch.
22. We would .......... (having) fewer storms if climate change stopped.
23. If I .......... (am) in your place, I would do sports.
24. .......... (Unless) I were you, I would take part in the project.
25. If you .......... (did) your project, you wouldn't get the degree.

## Speaking

### 1) Discussing how to live more sustainably

مناقشة كيف تعيش بطريقة أكثر محافظة على البيئة.

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - What could you stop using or buying that is bad for the environment?<br>ما الذى يمكنك التوقف عن استخدامه أو شراءه عندما يكون ضاراً للبيئة؟ | - I could stop using / buying things made of plastic.<br>يمكننى التوقف عن استخدام / شراء أشياء مصنوعة من البلاستيك. |
| - What could you do to live a more sustainable life?<br>ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل لكى تعيش حياة أكثر محافظة على البيئة؟ | - I could use less paper / plastic.<br>يمكننى استخدام ورق / بلاستيك بشكل أقل.<br>- I could use energy-saving light bulbs.<br>يمكننى استخدام مصابيح موفرة للطاقة. |

### 2) Discussing visiting the Red Sea coast

مناقشة زيارة ساحل البحر الأحمر

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Why do people visit the Red Sea coast?<br>لماذا يزور الناس ساحل البحر الأحمر؟ | - To enjoy the beautiful beaches.<br>للاستمتاع بالشواطئ الجميلة. |
| - What do they like to do there?<br>ما الذى يودن ان يفعلوه هناك؟ | - They like to go swimming, diving and shopping.<br>هم يحبون السباحة والغطس والتسوق . |
| - How will new mangrove forests help the people who live in and visit the area?<br>كيف تساعد غابات المانجروف الجديدة الناس الذين يعيشون فى المنطقة ومن يزورونها؟ | - Mangrove forests protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms.<br>تحمى غابات المانجروف المزارع و المجتمعات من الرياح القوية و العواصف. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Magda is at the supermarket. She wants to buy a shopping bag.

Assistant : Hello, how can I help you?
Magda : ❶ ..............................
Assistant : What type? Normal or reusable one .
Magda : ❷ ..............................
Assistant : Good choice. This is good for the environment.
Magda : ❸ ..............................?
Assistant : It's only fifty pounds.
Magda : That's great. ❹ ..............................?
Assistant : Yes, it is well made.
Magda : OK. ❺ ............................... Thank you.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**products - will - energy-saving - meteorite - rechargeable - would**

We have to care for the planet on which we live. There are many ways to be green. This can be done by using sustainable ❶ ......... . We can use ❷ ......... light bulbs that do not use too much electricity. We can also use ❸ ......... batteries which can be recharged many times. If we didn't help the environment, our life ❹ ......... be more difficult.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ............ is a young plant.
   a. seedling  b. root  c. tree  d. trunk
2. A ............ is a tall plant which we can use to make cups and chairs.
   a. mangrove  b. seagrass  c. bamboo  d. seedling
3. We should have sustainable development. "Sustainable" here means ............
   a. known  b. short  c. continual  d. limited
4. ............ trees grow in the sea along the coast.
   a. Mango  b. Mangrove  c. Shark  d. Coral
5. I can use this plastic bags again. This means they are ............
   a. reusable  b. rechargeable  c. rising  d. repaired
6. We should use rechargeable batteries. "Rechargeable" means that we can charge them ............
   a. again and again  b. once
   c. first  d. at the beginning





### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There would be less pollution if we ............ (plant) more trees.
2. Did you use ............ (to travelling) by train when you were at the university?
3. People didn't use ............ (had) solar energy hundreds of years ago.
4. What ............ (you would do) if you didn't catch the school bus?
5. My grandpa ............ (uses to) work as a science teacher.
6. Ali ............ (will) pass the test, if he studied harder.

### 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to the Red Sea"

..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- Where is the Red Sea?
- What do you think of the visit?
- What can you see and do there?
- What are the problems that affect people there?
- Suggest solutions to these problems.

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- The Red Sea is in .............................. .
- A visit to the Red Sea is .............................. .
- Some visitors can harm .............................. .
- We can protect the coast by .............................. .

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26-28 WB pages 86-87

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| enormous | ضخم | water wheel | ساقية |
| power | قوة | wind turbines | توربينات الرياح |
| air conditioning | تكييف هواء | diagram | رسم بيانى |
| remote control | جهاز التحكم عن بعد | produce (d) | ينتج |
| electric car | سيارة تعمل بالكهرباء | promise (d) | يوعد |
| renewable energy | طاقة متجددة | destroy (ed) | يدمر |
| solar panels | ألواح الطاقة الشمسية | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| message | رسالة | inexpensive | رخيص الثمن |
| factory workers | عمال المصنع | screen | شاشة |
| pollution | تلوث | heating | تدفئة |
| especially | خصوصا | accident | حادثة |
| surprised | مندهش | horrible | بشع/فظيع |
| frightened | خائف/مرعوب | superhero | بطل خارق |
| green | صديق للبيئة-أخضر | roof | سطح مبنى |
| ability | قدرة | fridge | ثلاجة |
| the Iron Woman | المرأة الحديدية «قصة» | reduce (d) | يقلل |
| web post | منشور على الإنترنت | absorb (ed) | يمتص |
| truck | سيارة نقل «شاحنة» | ski (ed) | يتزلج/يتزحلق |
| totally | كلياً/تماماً | plan (n) (ned) | خطة - يخطط |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **enormous** | ضخم | very big/ massive |
| **destroy (ed)** | يدمر | damage something so badly that you cannot repair it |
| **promise (d)** | يوعد | say you will do something |
| **power** | قوة | special ability[1] to do something |
| **produce (d)** | ينتج | make or create[2] |
| **air conditioning** | جهاز تكييف هواء | a system that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm |
| **remote control** | جهاز التحكم عن بعد | - a machine that you can use to control something from far away[3]<br>- you use it to control your television |
| **computer mouse** | فارة الكمبيوتر | you can use it to move around the computer screen |

١-قدرة
٢-يخلق/يبدع
٣-بعيد





## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym | المرادف | Antonym/opposite | المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| enormous | ضخم | huge / massive | | tiny / small | ضئيل / صغير |
| destroy | يدمر | finish and end / damage | | build / repair | يبني / يصلح |
| produce | ينتج | make / create | | consume | يستهلك |
| right | صحيح | true / correct | | wrong | خطأ |
| frightened | خائف | scared | | safe | آمن |
| inexpensive | رخيص | cheap | | expensive | غالي الثمن |
| easy | سهل | simple | | difficult / hard | صعب |
| agree | يوافق | accept | | disagree | لا يوافق |
| turn on | يشغل جهاز | switch on | | turn off | يطفئ جهاز |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| in- | opposite | تعطى عكس المعنى | inexpensive | رخيص |
| -ion | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | pollution | التلوث |
| -er | v → n | تحول الاسم إلى فعل | worker | عامل |
| -ly | adj → adv | تحول الصفة إلى الحال | totally / especially | تماماً/خصوصاً |
| -ed | adj → n | تحول الصفة إلى الاسم | surprised / frightened | مندهش/خائف |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| find an answer to | يجد إجابة لـ | (be) friends with | يكون صداقة مع |
| once more | مرة أخرى | work at | يعمل في |
| keep your house cool | يحافظ على برودة منزلك | at the end of | في نهاية |
| save electricity | يوفر الكهرباء | look at | ينظر الى |
| (be) able to | قادر على | come from | ينبعث من |
| get used to | يعتاد على | move around | يتحرك حول / يتجول |
| worried about | قلق بشأن | give up | يقلع عن |
| on the roof | على السطح | travel from one place to another | يسافر من مكان لآخر |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| bring | يحضر | brought | brought |
| let | يترك/يسمح | let | let |

## Language Notes

### 1) less / fewer

| less أقل للكمية (تأتي مع الأسماء التي لا تعد) | fewer أقل للعدد (تأتي مع الأسماء التي تعد) |
|---|---|
| Ex. If we used greener energy, we would produce less pollution. | Ex. We would have fewer storms if climate change stopped. |

### 2) air conditioning / air conditioned

| air conditioning (n) تكييف هواء | air conditioned (adj.) مُكيَّف الهواء (للمكان) |
|---|---|
| Ex. Air conditioning makes the air inside a building cool. | Ex. There are air conditioned carriages in that train. |

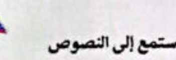
**Check on Language Notes ✓**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Try to use .......... water. It's better for the environment.
   a. fewer  b. many  c. less  d. lots
2. I have .......... in my room.
   a. air conditioning  b. air conditioned  c. air pollution  d. aeroplane

## Reading

SB page (26)



استمع إلى النصوص

### The Iron Woman

One day, a girl called Lucy was surprised[1] to see the Iron Woman[2]. She was enormous[3], with big red eyes. Lucy was frightened[4], but she found that the woman wanted Lucy to help her. Lucy's father worked at a factory and the Iron Woman asked her where the factory was. Pollution[5] from the factory was killing all the fish in the river, so she wanted to destroy[6] it.

The Iron Woman had special powers[7] so that she was able to make all the factory workers become fish. The workers all had to live in the river and started to understand how difficult life was for the fish.

Lucy wanted to help the Iron Woman, but she was worried[8] about her father. So after the Iron Woman left, Lucy called a boy called Hogarth. He was friends with the Iron Man.

١- مندهشة
٢- المرأة الحديدية
٣- ضخمة
٤- خائفة
٥- التلوث
٦- تدمر
٧- قوى / قدرات خاصة
٨- قلقة





'If you brought the Iron Man here,' said Lucy, 'we could find an answer to the problem.'

The next day, Lucy met Hogarth and the Iron Man at the factory. When the Iron Woman arrived, the Iron Man told her that he had a plan[9]. Soon, the Iron Woman let them become people again. They could stay people if they promised[10] that the factory would not produce[11] any more pollution. They all agreed, and the river became clean[12] once more.

٩- خطة
١٠- يوعد
١١- ينتج
١٢- نظيف

SB Page (28)

### What do you do to help the environment? Have you given up anything?

We're using the air conditioning[1] less often. In summer when it's very hot, that's difficult, especially[2] at night, but you get used to[3] it. We can't use our computer less often, though, because we need it for work.

**Dom and Julia Baldwin, USA**

I always used to get the newest[4] phone. I've stopped doing that now because it isn't sustainable. Oh, and now I use rechargeable batteries for the TV remote control[5] and my computer mouse.

**Sawsan, Egypt**

I live in the country and I need to have a car. I've bought an electric car[6] because it's greener[7]. Also, I always take a reusable bag when I go shopping.

**Greta, Australia**

We're going to give up living in the city because we want to grow our own vegetables and live a simpler life[8]. If we stayed in the city, we wouldn't be able to do that.

**Luc and Emile, France**

١- تكييف هواء
٢- خصوصا
٣- يعتاد على
٤- الأحدث
٥- جهاز التحكم عن بعد
٦- سيارة كهربائية
٧- أكثر حماية للبيئة
٨- حياة أبسط

**Reading Skill** مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about.... يتحدث النص أساسا عن....
   a. air conditioning  b. helping the environment
   c. rechargeable batteries  d. living a simpler life
2. Infer from the text what Sawsan from Egypt stopped doing. استنتج من النص ماذا الذي توقفت سوسن من مصر عن فعله.
3. Summarise Luc and Emile's speech in a short sentence. لخص حديث لوك وإميلي في جملة قصيرة.

**Writing Skill** مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الإنشائي)

1. We should use air conditioning when it's very hot. يجب أن تستخدم تكييف الهواء عندما يكون الطقس حارا جدا.
2. The newest phones are not sustainable. الهواتف الأحدث ليست صديقة للبيئة.
3. We should use rechargeable batteries. يجب أن نستعمل بطاريات قابلة لإعادة الشحن.

4. Electric cars are greener. — السيارات الكهربائية أكثر حفاظاً على البيئة.
5. Life in villages is simpler. — الحياة في القرى حياة أبسط.

**Answers**

1. b. helping the environment.
2. she stopped using the newest phones.
3. They are going to live a simpler life away from the city.

WB Page (86)



A large factory in Denmark[1] has an inexpensive way[2] of producing renewable energy. It burns rubbish[3]! If the factory did not burn the rubbish, it would go to landfill sites[4]. By burning the rubbish, the factory produces enough[5] electricity for 150,000 homes. If the factory burned fossil fuels[6] to make this electricity, it would produce a lot more greenhouse gases. There is a garden on the roof[7] of the factory. The plants there absorb[8] some of the air pollution that comes from[9] the factory. You can also ski down[10] the roof! Isn't that amazing?

١- دولة الدنمارك
٢- طريقة رخيصة
٣- يحرق القمامة
٤- مقالب القمامة
٥- كافٍ
٦- الوقود الحفري
٧- السطح
٨- يمتص
٩- ينبعث من
١٠- يتزلج

## Audioscript

SB Page (27)

**Judy** : What did you think of the story, Dina?

**Dina** : I liked it. I think the message[1] is easy to understand. Factories[2] should not produce pollution.

**Judy** : I agree, but the Iron Woman wanted to destroy the factory. I don't think that's right. If we didn't have factories, we wouldn't have so many things to buy in the shops.

**Dina** : That's why the Iron Man had a different plan. He didn't want to destroy the factory.

**Judy** : I didn't like his plan. Some of the factory workers probably[3] didn't like the pollution, but if they didn't work at the factory, they wouldn't have any money.

**Dina** : But Judy, when they became people again, they promised that the factory would not produce any more pollution. So his plan was a good one!

**Judy** : That's true. How do you think they made the river clean once more?

**Dina** : Perhaps[4] the factory started to use renewable[5] energy.

**Judy** : You're right. If the factory used renewable energy, it wouldn't produce pollution.

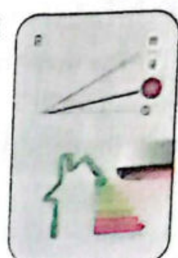
**Dina** : And if it didn't produce pollution, then everyone would be happier.

١- رسالة
٢- مصانع
٣- من المحتمل
٤- ربما
٥- متجدد





WB Page (87)



**Injy** : Hana, have you seen this diagram[1] of what uses most electricity[2] in the home?

**Hana** : No, I haven't. What does it say, Injy?

**Injy** : It says that air conditioning and heating[3] use the most electricity. In fact, these use nearly[4] 50% of the home's electricity.

**Hana** : That's a lot! What uses the second most?

**Injy** : Hot water. That uses about 15% of the home's electricity.

**Hana** : What about things in the kitchen? Don't they use much electricity?

**Injy** : They don't use very much. The fridge and the oven[5] both use about 4%.

**Hana** : That's interesting. And what about the TV and computers?

**Injy** : Televisions use about 3% and computers about 1%.

**Hana** : OK. So if I wanted to save[6] electricity, I would use less air conditioning and heating?

**Injy** : That's right[7]. Oh, and turn off the lights, too. They use about 12% of the house's electricity.

١- رسم بياني
٢- الكهرباء
٣- تدفئة
٤- تقريباً
٥- فرن
٦- يوفر
٧- هذا صحيح

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. .......... is a system that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm. (الدقهلية 2023)
   a. Factory b. Remote control c. Water wheel d. Air conditioning
2. To say that you will do something is to .......... . (دمياط 2022)
   a. absorb b. destroy c. promise d. produce
3. A.......... control is a device that helps you control and deal with a television, for example. (Longman)
   a. full b. near c. far d. remote

### Synonyms & Antonyms

4. The word .......... is close in meaning to "finish and end". (بني سويف 2022)
   a. fright b. design c. destroy d. find
5. The synonym of "enormous" is .......... . (2022)
   a. massive b. classical c. usual d. national

WB

6. "Frightened" is the same meaning as ..........
   a. excited  b. bored  c. safe  d. scared
7. The word "make" can give similar meaning to the word .......... 2022
   a. give  b. advise  c. produce  d. take
8. The antonym of "inexpensive" is ..........
   a. cheap  b. expensive  c. renewable  d. reusable
9. The elephant is really enormous. It's about 5 tons. "Enormous" means very .......... 2022 WB
   a. huge  b. tall  c. expensive  d. small
10. The boy was frightened of the snake. The opposite of "frightened" is ..........
   a. expensive  b. happy  c. scared  d. safe
11. The opposite of the word "hard" is.......... 2022
   a. difficult  b. uneasy  c. easy  d. terrible

**Prefixes & Suffixes**

12. We add the prefix.......... to the word "agree" to form the opposite. 2022
   a. dis-  b. un-  c. in-  d. im-
13. We add the suffix .......... to the verb "work" to refer to "person".
   a. -ing  b. -er  c. -ed  d. -full
14. The prefix .......... gives the opposite of "expensive".
   a. in-  b. un-  c. dis-  d. il-
15. Smoke from factories pollutes the air. We use the suffix .......... to give the noun of "pollute".
   a. -ed  b. -ly  c. -ion  d. -ive
16. To turn the adjective "total" into an adverb we add the suffix ..........
   a. -ly  b. -ing  c. -ous  d. -er

**Guessing the meaning**

17. This factory uses the sun to produce electricity. This means it uses ..........
   a. electric cars  b. remote controls  c. water wheels  d. solar panels
18. I use this machine to control my TV. This means I use ..........
   a. air conditioning  b. a battery  c. a mouse  d. a remote control
19. I told Hatem that I'll help him. This means that I .......... to help him.
   a. produced  b. reduced  c. promised  d. disagreed








## 1 Discussing pollution from factories

مناقشة التلوث الصادر من المصانع

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Why are factories important?<br>لماذا تعد المصانع مهمة؟ | - Factories are important because they produce our needs.<br>المصانع مهمه لانها تنتج احتياجاتنا . |
| - Do you think that all factories produce pollution?<br>هل تعتقد أن كل المصانع ينتج عنها تلوث؟ | - No, I don't think so, because some factories are environmentally-friendly.<br>لا اعتقد ذلك . لأن بعض المصانع صديقة للبيئة. |
| - What would you do if a factory in your area produced a lot of pollution?<br>ماذا كنت ستفعل لو أن مصنعاً في منطقتك انبعث منه تلوثاً كبيراً؟ | - I would call the police to stop it from polluting our community.<br>كنت ساتصل بالشرطة لمنعهم من تلويث مجتمعنا . |

## 2 Talking about renewable energy

التحدث عن الطاقة المتجددة

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Would you choose solar panels to have a renewable energy in your area? Why?<br>هل كنت ستختار الألواح الشمسية لانتاج الطاقة المتجددة في منطقتك؟ لماذا؟ | - Yes, because Egypt enjoys sunny weather almost round the year.<br>نعم، لأن مصر تتمتع بجو مشمس طوال العام. |
| - Would you choose water wheels to have a renewable energy in your area? Why?<br>هل كنت ستختار سواقي المياه لانتاج الطاقة المتجددة في منطقتك؟ لماذا؟ | - Yes, because Egypt has the River Nile and many canals.<br>نعم، لأن مصر تمتلك نهر النيل وقنوات مائية عديدة . |

## General Exercises on Lessons 3&4



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Mona and Salma are talking about ways to help the environment.**

Mona : Why are factories important?
Salma : ❶ ..............................................................................
Mona : Do you think that all factories produce pollution?
Salma : ❷ ..............................................................................
Mona : ❸ ..............................................................................?
Salma : Factories can use solar panels. ❹ ...........................................?
Mona : Yes, I know them. They use the sun to produce energy.
Salma : ❺ ..............................................................................
Mona : You're right. We can use electric cars to keep the environment clean.
Salma : I hope our planet will be cleaner.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**would have - planting - would - protected - protect - energy** شمال سيناء 2022

Our environment is very important, so we should ❶ ........ it. To make it cleaner and greener, we have to use safe ❷ ........ . We can also help our environment by ❸ ........ more trees. If our government used wind turbines, it ❹ ........ be cheaper and cleaner energy.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An elephant is an animal of enormous size. "Enormous" has the same meaning as very ............ . Longman
   a. fast   b. small   c. big   d. slow
2. The verb "agree" gives the meaning of ............ .
   a. accept   b. refuse   c. ignore   d. advise
3. The opposite of "turn on" is ............ .
   a. turn up   b. turn over   c. turn off   d. turn of





4. You can use a computer ............ to move around the computer screen. الفيوم 2022
   a. hand   b. board   c. mouse   d. camera
5. We turn the verb "surprise" into an adjective by adding ............ .
   a. -d   b. -al   c. -ous   d. -ic

### 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following: WB

مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة

"A review of the best form of renewable energy that you could use in your community"

..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- What are the best forms of renewable energy?
- Which of them is the most suitable for your community? Why?
- How can it help produce sustainable energy?
- Do you think that other communities use it?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات
- There are many forms of ..............................
- The most suitable one is .............................. .
- This form is suitable because it .............................. .
- People in other communities use .............................. .

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| Word | Arabic | Word | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| initiative | مبادرة | personally | شخصيًا |
| region | منطقة/اقليم | solar farm | محطة توليد طاقة شمسية |
| desertification | ظاهرة التصحر | create (d) | يبتكر/يستحدث |
| landscape | منظر طبيعي | interrupt (ed) | يقاطع أثناء الكلام |

## Vocabulary

| Word | Arabic | Word | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| interview | مقابلة شخصية | power station | محطة طاقة |
| permission | إذن / تصريح | organiser | منظم |
| quite | تماما/ إلى حد كبير | set up | ينشئ/ يؤسس |
| reason | سبب | farming | الزراعة |
| report | تقرير | farmland | الأرض الزراعية |
| reporter | مراسل صحفي | nature reserve | محمية طبيعية |
| survey | استبيان/استطلاع رأى | popular | معروف/شائع |
| bar chart | رسم بياني بالأعمدة | source | مصدر |
| description | وصف | improve (d) | يحسن - يتحسن |
| the whole world | العالم بأسره | farm (ed) (n) | يزرع/مزرعة |
| growing | متنامى/متزايد | record (ed) | يسجل |

## Definitions

| Word | Arabic | Definition |
|---|---|---|
| initiative | مبادرة | something to improve a difficult situation[1]. |
| region | منطقة/اقليم | an area of a country |
| desertification | ظاهرة التصحر | changing an area into desert |
| create | يبتكر/يستحدث | make or produce |
| landscape | منظر طبيعي | a view[2] showing an area of land |
| solar farm | محطة طاقة شمسية | an area with many solar panels[3] that provide electricity |
| interrupt | يقاطع أثناء الكلام | if you interrupt someone you speak to stop someone else from speaking |

١- موقف
٢- منظر
٣- ألواح طاقة شمسية





## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite | العكس |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| set up | ينشئ | start | finish | ينهي |
| totally | تماما | completely | partly | جزئيًا |
| useful | مفيد | helpful | useless | عديم الفائدة |
| ugly | قبيح | terrible | beautiful | جميل |
| worried | قلق | anxious | calm | هادئ |
| advantage | ميزة | merit | disadvantage | عيب |
| introduction | مقدمة | beginning | conclusion | خاتمة |
| remember | يتذكر | don't forget / recall | forget | ينسى |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix/Suffix | Use | | Examples |
|---|---|---|---|
| dis- | opposite | تعطى عكس المعنى | disagree / disadvantage لا يوافق/عيب |
| -tion | v → n | تحول الفعل الى الاسم | desertification / description التصحر/وصف |
| -ing | | | farming / growing الزراعة/متزايد |
| -ful | v → adj | تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | useful مفيد |
| -er | person | تكون اسم الفاعل | organiser منظم |
| -y | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | sunny مشمس |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| Expression | Arabic | Expression | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| create problems for | يتسبب في مشاكل لـ.. | record the answers | يكتب/يدون الإجابات |
| solve a problem | يحل مشكلة | happy about | سعيد بشان |
| do a survey | يجرى استطلاع رأى | think about / of | يفكر فى |
| produce money for | يجلب المال لـ | south of | جنوب |
| on farmland | في المزرعة | instead of | بدلاً من |
| on the land | على الأرض | at sea | عند البحر |
| two kilometres from | على بعد ٢ كيلو متر | ask for permission | يطلب الإذن |
| from west to east | من الغرب إلى الشرق | by 2050 | بحلول عام ٢٠٥٠ |

**Conjugations of Irregular Verbs**

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| set up | ينشئ/يؤسس | set up | set up |
| forget | ينسى | forgot | forgotten |
| show | يعرض/يبين | showed | shown |

## Language Notes

### 1) desertification / deforestation

- desertification ظاهرة التصحر [تحول الأرض الخصبة إلى قاحلة]

Ex. We can solve the problem of desertification by increasing farmland.

- deforestation إزالة الغابات

Ex. Deforestation affects the wildlife badly.

### 2) hundred / thousand / million

لاحظ أن hundred/thousand/million لا تجمع إذا جاء بعدها اسم، لكن يجمع الاسم الذي يليها:

Ex. This project will create jobs for two million people.

ويمكن جمعها إذا أتى بعدها حرف جر of أو إذا لم يأت قبلها رقم.

Ex. The government will plant millions of trees in the desert.

### 3) lose / miss

- lose يفقد [شيء]/يخسر

Ex. She lost her mobile on the bus last week.

- miss يفتقد [شخص]/يفوته [شيء]

Ex. I missed my family when I was on holiday in Paris.

Ex. I was late and missed the bus.

**Check on Language Notes ✓**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. An area which has no rain may suffer from يعاني من the problem of ..........
   a. desertification b. communication c. translation d. pollution
2. .................. people use the internet nowadays.
   a. Million of b. Millions of c. Thousand of d. Hundred of
3. Hazim is studying in London now, he .................. his family so much.
   a. spends b. misses c. loses d. wastes





## Audioscript

SB Page (29) استمع إلى النصوص

**Reporter** : So, Mrs Jones. Tell us why your community[1] decided to build a solar park on this farmland[2]. This area is popular for tourism[3] and people come here to enjoy the countryside[4] and the beautiful views[5] of trees and hills. Many people would say the solar park is ugly. They don't want to see lots and lots of ugly solar panels in the countryside.

**Mrs Jones** : I don't agree. Personally,[6] I think that the solar panels are beautiful. We need to create clean energy that doesn't pollute the environment. Solar panels produce clean, renewable energy. In my opinion, we need to stop burning fossil fuels[7] which create greenhouse gases and cause climate change.

**Reporter** : What do you think about the solar park, Mr Brown? Do you agree with Mrs Jones?

**Mr Brown** : I agree that we need clean, renewable energy. But I don't agree that we should build solar parks in the countryside. We should build them in cities near factories. And I don't agree that they're beautiful. They're ugly and they destroy the countryside. Farmers need this land.

**Mrs Jones** : I totally disagree[8]. The solar panels don't destroy the countryside. This solar park was built on one field. No trees were cut down[9] and the farmer can still keep his sheep in the fields. The sheep can walk under the solar panels to eat the grass. And don't forget, the solar panels produce money for the community. It helps us all. In my opinion, every community should have their own source[10] of energy.

**Reporter** : Well, thank you both for talking to us today. Now it's time to go back to the studio.

١- مجتمع
٢- أرض زراعية
٣- السياحة
٤- الريف
٥- مناظر
٦- شخصيًا
٧- وقود حفري
٨- لا أوافق
٩- يقطع
١٠- مصدر

## Reading

SB page (30)

### The Great Green Wall[1]

This report[2] is about a green initiative[3] in Africa called the Great Green Wall. This initiative was set up[4] in 2007 by the African Union[5] to solve the problem of desertification[6] in the Sahel region of Africa[7].

Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. In the Sahel region, this has happened because climate change is

١- السور الأخضر الكبير
٢- تقرير
٣- المبادرة الخضراء
٤- ينشئ / يؤسس
٥- الاتحاد الأفريقي
٦- ظاهرة التصحر
٧- منطقة الساحل الأفريقي

creating more droughts[8] every year and people do not always farm[9] the land well. People cannot grow food and they are losing their farms and homes.

The Great Green Wall initiative will plant millions of trees, seedlings and plants across Africa from west[10] to east[11], to create a growing[12], green landscape[13]. When it is finished, the wall will be 8,000 km long. It will be the biggest living thing in the world. It will create jobs for 10 million people. The trees and plants will improve the land for farming[14] again, and people will be able to grow crops.

٨- يتسبب فى جفاف أكثر
٩- يزرع
١٠- الغرب
١١- الشرق
١٢- متنامى/متزايد
١٣- مناظر طبيعية خضراء
١٤- الزراعة
١٥- يحسن

The Great Green Wall will improve[15] the lives of everyone who lives in the Sahel region. It will also help reduce the problems caused by climate change for the whole world.

**Reading Skill** (الإجابة أسفل) مهارة القراءة

1. The passage is about ......... يتحدث النص عن .....
   a. The African Union  b. The Great Green Wall
   c. Africa  d. The Sahel region
2. Infer from the text when desertification happens. استنتج من النص متى تحدث ظاهرة التصحر
3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الأخيرة فى جملة واحدة

**Writing Skill** (جمل تساعد فى كتابة الموضوع الانشائى) مهارة الكتابة

1. The Great Green Wall initiative was set up in 2007. تأسست مبادرة السور الأخضر الكبير فى عام ٢٠٠٧.
2. Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. تحدث ظاهرة التصحر عندما تصبح الأرض الخضراء صحراء.
3. The initiative will create jobs for 10 million people. ستوفر المبادرة فرص عمل لعشرة مليون شخص.
4. The initiative will improve the lives of everyone. ستحسن المبادرة من حياة الجميع.

Answers
1. b. The Great Green Wall.
2. When green land becomes desert.
3. The Great Green Wall will help reduce the problem caused by climate change.

SB Page (31)



There are many green initiatives across[1] the world which are helping to protect the environment. There are projects to build solar farms[2] to create green energy[3]. There are projects to plant seedlings and trees to give us cleaner air. At home, people are choosing to use rechargeable batteries and energy-saving light bulbs. Some people are buying more products made of bamboo, which is sustainable and doesn't cause pollution. Some people are even using air conditioning less often because it uses so much energy. What can you do to help protect the environment?

١- عبر
٢- محطات طاقة شمسية
٣- طاقة نظيفة





WB Page (88)

**Imad** : What do you think of the plan to build a power station[1] outside the town?
**Fares** : In my opinion, it's a good thing. It will give us more electricity and jobs, too.
**Imad** : I don't agree that it's a good thing. It burns fossil fuels. Don't forget, fossil fuels are not sustainable.
**Fares** : I totally[2] disagree. People are still finding oil[3] under the ground every year.
**Imad** : Personally, I think that we shouldn't build any new power stations. We should only use renewable energy.
**Fares** : I agree that we need renewable energy, but I think we still need to use fossil fuels, too.

١- محطة لتوليد الطاقة
٢- تماما
٣- البترول

WB Page (88)

**Dalida** : What do you think of this plan to build wind turbines[1] in the sea near the beach?
**Nesma** : Personally, I think it's a good idea. Wind turbines produce renewable energy.
**Dalida** : I agree that we need renewable energy, but I think the wind turbines should be built on the land.
**Nesma** : I don't agree that they should be built on the land. There is more wind at sea.
**Dalida** : Yes, but don't forget, many tourists love our beaches. They don't want to look at ugly[2] wind turbines.
**Nesma** : I totally disagree. In my opinion, wind turbines look nice[3], and they won't be very near the beach.
**Dalida** : Perhaps[4] you're right.

١- توربينات توليد الطاقة بالرياح
٢- قبيح
٣- يبدو لطيفا
٤- ربما




* turbine

ينطق الحرفين ur فى هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق حرفى ir فى كلمة bird وينطق حرف i مثلما ينطق فى كلمة fine

WB Page (89)



## Cleve Hill Solar Farm

This report is about plans to build the largest solar farm in the UK. The initiative called Cleve Hill, plans to produce enough energy for 91,000 homes across the region and should be open in 2023.

The UK plans to use renewable energy instead of[1] fossil fuels by 2050 and Cleve Hill will help with this. The solar farm will have 880,000 solar

١- بدلا من

panels on countryside that was farmland, around two kilometres from the village of Graveney. In the past, solar farms were not very good in the UK because it is not very sunny. However, new large batteries in the solar farm can save and produce electricity even when the sun is not shining[2].

Some people in the village are not happy about the plan. They think that the solar farm is too big and will create problems for wildlife[3]. Also, they are worried that the large batteries are dangerous[4] and could cause fires.

The organisers[5], however, say that the batteries are safe. They also say that there will be special areas for wildlife. They say that the solar farm will help to reduce the problems caused by climate change.

٢-مشرقة/ساطعة
٣-الحياة البرية
٤-خطير
٥-المنظمون

## Videoscript

SB Page 29

The energy that is produced by the sun is called solar energy[1]. This is good for the environment because it is renewable. This means that it comes from natural sources[2].

Egypt has almost nine and a half hours of sunshine[3] every day. The sun is nearly always shining and there aren't usually many clouds in the sky. It is one of the sunniest countries in the world. This is why Egypt is using the sun to produce energy.

Benban Solar Park[4] is the largest solar farm in Africa and one of the biggest in the world. Benban opened in 2019 and it covers almost 38 square kilometres. It has got thousands of solar panels. It produces enough energy every year for hundreds of thousands of homes and businesses[5]. Did you know that, if you went into space, you would be able to see Benban Solar Park?

Another type of renewable energy is wind energy. There are wind farms in Egypt, like this one in Hurghada[6].

Egypt uses a lot of renewable energy, and the government[7] wants people to use more. They want 20% of all energy to come from renewable sources. If we all used more renewable energy, it would help us to save the planet[8].

١-الطاقة الشمسية
٢-مصادر طبيعية
٣-سطوع الشمس
٤-محطة بنبان
٥-مشاريع تجارية
٦-مدينة الغردقة
٧-الحكومة
٨-كوكب

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. ........... is changing an area into desert.
   a. Fossil fuel b. Solar farm c. Landscape d. Desertification
2. A/An ........... is a view showing an area of land.
   a. opinion b. energy c. solar farm d. landscape





3. A/An ........... is an area with many solar panels that provide electricity.
   a. solar farm b. region c. landscape d. initiative
4. A/An ........... is an area of a country.
   a. initiative b. region c. map d. source

### Synonyms & Antonyms

5. Solar farms have many advantages. The word "advantage" can be replaced by ........... .
   a. region b. initiative c. merit d. disadvantage
6. I'm so worried about the results of my exam. The opposite of "worried" is ........... .
   a. calm b. anxious c. disappointed d. sad
7. We are worried about our grandfather's health. The word "worried" means ........... . SB
   a. interesting b. anxious c. dangerous d. calm
8. Personally, I think solar panels are useful. The word "useful" can be replaced by ........... . SB
   a. useless b. helpless c. terrible d. helpful
9. The street would be ugly if we didn't plant more trees. The antonym of "ugly" is ........... . SB
   a. terrible b. beautiful c. sunny d. dangerous
10. Khaled would like to set up his own business "set up" means ........... .
    a. finish b. start c. play d. use

### Prefixes & Suffixes

11. We add the suffix ........... to the verb "use" to give the adjective.
    a. -tion b. -ive c. -ful d. -er
12. We get the noun from the verb "farm" by adding the suffix ........... .
    a. -ation b. -ing c. -y d. -ful
13. The prefix "dis-" is added to the word "advantage" to give the ........... .
    a. noun b. opposite c. synonym d. meaning

### Guessing the meaning

14. This initiative will produce many jobs. This means that it will ..... many jobs.
    a. create b. record c. destroy d. put
15. Ahmed always organises events. This means he is an ........... .
    a. organiser b. organises c. organisation d. organised
16. "Don't forget " means to ........... . SB
    a. create b. remember c. request d. interrupt

## Speaking

### Asking for and giving opinion طلب وإعطاء الرأى

- What do you think about the plan to build a solar farm near to where you live?
- ما رأيك فى خطة بناء محطة طاقة شمسية بالقرب من المكان الذى تعيش فيه؟

**Agreeing موافقة**

- **Personally, I think that** solar panels are useful.
- شخصياً، أعتقد أن ألواح الطاقة الشمسية مفيدة.
- **In my opinion,** it will give us more electricity and jobs.
- فى رأيي، سوف تعطينا كهرباء وتوفر مزيد من الوظائف.
- **Don't forget**, the solar farms produce less pollution.
- لا تنسى، محطات الطاقة الشمسية ينبعث منها تلوث أقل.
- **I agree that** we need clean, renewable energy.
- أوافق أننا نحتاج إلى طاقة نظيفة متجددة.

**Disagreeing عدم موافقة**

- **I don't agree that** solar farms should be built in the countryside.
- لا أوافق على ضرورة بناء محطات طاقة شمسية فى الريف.
- **I totally disagree.** The solar panels may have an effect on people who live here.
- لا أوافق تماماً. محطات الطاقة الشمسية ربما يكون لها تأثير على من يعيشون هنا.

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



### 1 Finish the following dialogue: WB

**Leila and Noura are talking about a new project.**

**Leila** : What do you think of building wind turbines?
**Noura** : ❶ ............................................................?
**Leila** : Wind turbines are used to produce renewable energy.
**Noura** : ❷ ............................................................?
**Leila** : They will build them near the beach.
**Noura** : ❸ ............................................................ They will look ugly.
**Leila** : In my opinion, they will look nice.
**Noura** : ❹ ............................................................
**Leila** : I agree, it will be a useful project. I'm looking forward to seeing them.
**Noura** : ❺ ............................................................





### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**sun - didn't - electricity - farm - don't - moon**

A solar ❶ ........ is a place where a number of solar panels are used to produce ❷ ........ from the energy of the ❸ ........ In the past, we ❹ ........ use to have solar farms, but now there are many of them in sunny countries.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Anxious" is a synonym of ............
   a. calm  b. worried  c. famous  d. excited
2. To ............ means to make or produce.
   a. create  b. interrupt  c. record  d. improve
3. What are the advantages of solar energy? "Advantage" here has the opposite meaning of "............" Longman
   a. disconnection  b. dishonesty  c. disability  d. disadvantage
4. We turn the verb "describe" into a noun by using the suffix ............
   a. -ion  b. -ful  c. -ly  d. -ous

### 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following: WB

(أجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"A review of building a solar farm near a nature reserve"

........................................................................................
........................................................................................
........................................................................................
........................................................................................
........................................................................................
........................................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- What is a solar farm?
- Why is it important?
- What are its advantages / disadvantages?
- How can that project help the environment?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- This review is about ..............................
- Personally, ..............................
- In my opinion, there are many advantages / disadvantages ..........

Unit 9

# Review

## Vocabulary

- product منتج
- paper ورق / ورقي
- greener world عالم خالٍ من التلوث
- climate change تغير المناخ
- personally شخصياً
- initiative مبادرة
- region منطقة/إقليم
- enormous ضخم
- diagram رسم بياني
- energy - saving light bulb مصباح موفر للطاقة
- renewable energy طاقة متجددة
- sustainable مستدام/صديق للبيئة
- electric toothbrush فرشاة أسنان كهربائية
- battery بطارية
- crops محاصيل
- seedling نبتة
- wind turbines توربينات الرياح
- bamboo نبات خشب الخيزران (البامبو)
- bamboo cup كوب من الخيزران
- water wheel ساقية
- power قوة
- desertification ظاهرة التصحر
- landscape منظر طبيعي
- air conditioning تكييف هواء
- electric car سيارة تعمل بالكهرباء
- rechargeable قابل لإعادة الشحن
- remote control جهاز التحكم عن بعد
- mangrove tree شجرة المانجروف
- shopping bag حقيبة تسوق
- reusable قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
- rising sea level ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر
- solar farm محطة طاقة شمسية
- solar panels ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
- reuse (d) يعيد استخدام
- produce (d) ينتج
- promise (d) يوعد
- create (d) يبتكر/يستحدث
- destroy (ed) يدمر
- interrupt (ed) يقاطع أثناء الكلام

## Language

### 1- Remember: used to اعتاد أن

• تستخدم في الاثبات بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للتعبير عن فعل كان يتكرر في الماضي ولم يعد يحدث في الوقت الحاضر:

فاعل + used to + inf.

Ex. I used to have a bike when I was young.

• في النفي نستخدم:

فاعل + didn't use to + inf. لم يكن معتاد أن

Ex. I didn't use to drive a car but I do now.

• في حالة السؤال بمعنى "هل" نستخدم:

Did + فاعل + use to + inf..... ?

Ex. A: Did you use to play games when you were young?

B: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.





• في حالة السؤال "بكلمة استفهام" نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + use to + inf.... ?

Ex. A: What did you use to do when you were in Alexandria?

B: I used to go swimming on holidays.

### 2- The second conditional الحالة الشرطية الثانية

• تعبر الحالة الشرطية الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:

**Form التكوين**

If + فاعل + ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل), → فاعل + would / could + inf.

Ex. If I went to school yesterday, I would take a math test.

**Question السؤال**

Would / Could فاعل + inf. → if + فاعل + ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ... ?

Ex. Would they go swimming if they went to Alexandria?

**Usage الاستخدام**

• يمكن أن نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية مع (could / might) بمعنى ربما كان سوف (would perhaps / possible)

Ex. Ali could / might get better if he took the medicine.

(If I were...) لإعطاء النصيحة

• نستخدم were مع if لإعطاء النصيحة

Ex. If I were you, I would have a rest.

• كما تستخدم were مع if للتعبير عن التخيل/الاستحالة

Ex. If he were in your place, he would have another opinion.

- لاحظ استخدام (were) مع الفاعل المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الشرطية الثانية

## Speaking

### 1) Discussing how to live more sustainably

مناقشة كيف تعيش بطريقة أكثر محافظة على البيئة.

| Question | Answer |
| --- | --- |
| - What things could you stop using or buying that are bad for the environment? | - I could stop using / buying things made of plastic. |

## 2) Discussing visiting the Red Sea coast مناقشة زيارة ساحل البحر الأحمر

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Why do people visit the Red Sea coast? | - To enjoy the beautiful beaches. |
| - What do they like to do there? | -They like to go swimming, diving and shopping. |

## 3) Discussing pollution from factories مناقشة التلوث الصادر من المصانع

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Why are factories important? | - Factories are important because they produce our needs. |
| - Do you think that all factories produce pollution? | - No, I don't think so, because some factories are environmentally-friendly. |

## 4) Talking about renewable energy التحدث عن الطاقة المتجددة

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Would you choose solar panels to have a renewable energy in your area? Why? | - Yes, because Egypt enjoys sunny weather almost round the year. |

## 5) Asking for and giving opinion طلب وإعطاء الرأي

- What do you think about the plan to build a solar farm near to where you live?

| Agreeing موافقة | Disagreeing عدم موافقة |
|---|---|
| - **Personally, I think that** solar panels are useful. | - **I don't agree that** solar farms should be built in the countryside. |
| - **In my opinion,** it will give us more electricity and jobs. | - **I totally disagree.** The solar panels may have an effect on people who live here. |
| - **Don't forget,** the solar farms produce less pollution. | |
| - **I agree that** we need clean, renewable energy. | |





# General Exercises on Unit 9

## 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Imad and Fares are talking about power stations.

Imad : What do you think of power stations?
Fares : I think they are great projects.
Imad : ❶ ............................................................................ ?
Fares : Because they give us more electricity and jobs.
Imad : ❷ ................................... They burn fossil fuels. Don't forget, fossil fuels are not sustainable.
Fares : ❸ ........................ . People are still finding fossil fuels every year.
Imad : Personally, I think we should only use renewable energy.
Fares : ❹ ............................................................................ ?
Imad : It's energy from the sun and the wind.
Fares : ❺ ............................................................................ .

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**1** **batteries - used - sustainable - initiative - charge - use**

We should try to do a green ❶ .......... at home. We should use rechargeable ❷ .......... . We should buy more products made of bamboo, which is ❸ .......... and doesn't cause pollution. People in the past didn't ❹ .......... to do so.

**2** **would have - reusable - protect - will have - pollute - less**

I want to do something to protect our environment. If we share in keeping the environment clean, we ❶ .......... a healthy life. We should use ❷ .......... plastic. We can buy ❸ .......... shopping bags. Also, we can use bamboo coffee cups. Bamboo is sustainable and doesn't ❹ .......... the environment.

**3** **neglect - follow - was - safe - advice - weren't**

My neighbour is very careless. If he ❶ .......... careful, he wouldn't throw plastic bags into the river. I always advise him to ❷ .......... the rules for keeping the environment clean. I also ask him to use ❸ .......... bags when he goes shopping. Now, he follows my ❹ .......... and his behaviour has improved.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .......... is a machine that you can use to control something from far away.
   a. solar panel  b. telescope  c. mirror  d. remote control

2. Petrol for cars isn't sustainable. The synonym of "sustainable" is ..........
   a. renewable  b. polluted  c. weak  d. rechargeable
3. You should give up these bad ideas. The antonym of "give up" is ..........
   a. stop  b. turn off  c. continue  d. look at
4. We can reuse these bottles. We add the suffix .......... to give the adjective of "reuse".
   a. -ive  b. -able  c. -tion  d. -ing
5. Rewrite your composition. The prefix "re-" means to do it ..........
   a. before  b. again  c. first  d. last
6. An earthquake destroyed the building. This means the earthquake .......... it .
   a. damaged  b. repaired  c. recycled  d. painted

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I .......................... (have) a bike, I would lend it to you.
2. If this factory .......................... (doesn't burn) rubbish, it would go to landfill sites.
3. What places .......................... (do) you use to go to when you were young?
4. Dubai .......................... (use) to be a fishing village in the past. WB
5. Did lions and elephants .......................... (uses) to live in Egypt? WB

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A review of a green initiative in Egypt or a country in Africa"

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What is the initiative about?
- Why is it important?
- What are the advantages / disadvantages?
- How can that green initiative help the environment?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- I'm going to write a review about ..........................
- To begin with, ..........................
- There are advantages / disadvantages ..........................
- I think that ..........................





# Al Azhar Test



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Sameh and Ihab are in a factory.**

**Sameh** : What do you think of that factory, Ihab?

**Ihab** : ❶ .......................... However, it produces a lot of pollution.

**Sameh** : ❷ ..........................?

**Ihab** : No, it doesn't. It uses fossil fuels.

**Sameh** : How can it stop producing pollution?

**Ihab** : ❸ ...........................

**Sameh** : You're right, solar power is environmentally-friendly.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**use - planet - bags - cups - rechargeable - used**

Do you think that using sustainable products like bamboo ❶.......... or reusable shopping ❷.......... can help the environment become greener? Many people ❸.......... to pollute the environment, but now they don't. They are saving the ❹.......... Earth.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In 1900 the world's use of paper was about one kilogram for each person in a year. Now some countries use as much as 50 kilograms of paper for each person in a year. But countries like the United States and England certainly use more paper than other countries. In Egypt, paper was not used before the year 1400. Paper, like many other things that we use today, was first made in China. The Chinese first made paper about 2000 years ago.

### A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about?
..........................................................................
2. Which countries use more paper than other countries?
..........................................................................
3. When was paper used in Egypt?
..........................................................................

### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Paper was first made in..........
   a. The United States  b. China
   c. England  d. Egypt

5. In 1900 the world's use of paper was about one Kg for each person in a ..........
   a. day  b. month  c. week  d. year

## ④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We cannot continue to use petrol for cars because it is not ..........
   a. rechargeable  b. useful  c. sustainable  d. usable
2. We can use that bag again. It is ..........
   a. reusable  b. greener  c. dangerous  d. rechargeable
3. If I .......... special power, I would save the world.
   a. have  b. has  c. don't have  d. had
4. I .......... to cut the grass myself when I was young.
   a. use  b. is using  c. used  d. uses

## ⑤ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we .......... (have) more time, we would visit the museum.
2. If you ate more sweets, you .......... (have) bad teeth.
3. If we had more money, we .......... (buy) a new house.

## ⑥ Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

"Solar energy"

..........

..........

## Al Azhar Exercises



## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### A Vocabulary

**SB & WB Exercises**

1. Can I plug in these ..........? I need to charge them.
   a. trees  b. crops  c. batteries  d. seedlings
2. .......... my opinion, we need to stop burning fossil fuels.
   a. On  b. In  c. From  d. At
3. The elephant is really .......... It's about three tons.
   a. enormous  b. dangerous  c. light  d. tiny
4. Factories .......... a lot of pollution.
   a. promise  b. destroy  c. reduce  d. produce
5. The story is about a superhero who had special ..........
   a. powers  b. fuels  c. planes  d. batteries





**Longman Exercises**

6. .......... is the action of removing a large area of trees.
   a. Agriculture  b. Deforestation  c. Production  d. Pollution
7. We have a villa by the Red Sea ..........
   a. wave  b. valley  c. bank  d. coast
8. A .......... environment is a place where there is very little or no pollution.
   a. darker  b. bigger  c. greener  d. smaller
9. Wind turbines help us get electricity, which is a/an.......... source of energy.
   a. renewable  b. non-renewable  c. polluting  d. impossible
10. .......... increase because of the rising sea levels.
    a. Floods  b. Winds  c. Rains  d. Boats
11. Farmers always look after their fields to increase ..........
    a. seeds  b. crops  c. branches  d. floods
12. To damage something badly means to .......... it.
    a. throw  b. destroy  c. protect  d. disappear
13. A/An .......... is a machine that keeps a room's temperature normal.
    a. fan  b. oven  c. air conditioner  d. fridge
14. A ".........." could be a picture showing an area of countryside or land.
    a. landslide  b. landfall  c. land site  d. landscape
15. .......... are used to absorb the sun's rays and change them into electricity or heat.
    a. Wind turbines  b. Solar powers  c. Solar panels  d. Polar bears
16. An energy-saving light bulb is a lamp that uses less ..........
    a. air  b. water  c. oil  d. electricity
17. Plants .......... out oxygen and absorb carbon dioxide.
    a. breathe  b. breath  c. look  d. find
18. Most farmers use .......... to irrigate their fields.
    a. water glasses  b. water taps  c. water wheels  d. salty water
19. The new factory isn't small. It's ..........
    a. tiny  b. huge  c. old  d. expensive
20. If we have .......... sea levels, the sea gets high.
    a. decreasing  b. rising  c. falling  d. boiling
21. These batteries aren't dangerous; they're quite ..........
    a. unsafe  b. small  c. safe  d. big
22. I don't like this place; it's really ..........
    a. bored  b. attractive  c. quiet  d. ugly

23. **Huda** : Is it .......... to live without electricity?
**Samira**: No, it's completely difficult.
a. hard b. easy c. uncomfortable d. cheap
24. To save electricity, turn .......... the light when leaving a room.
a. on b. of c. off d. up
25. We mustn't waste water; we should know how to .......... it.
a. pollute b. pour c. lose d. save
26. We can continue to use this bag again because it's ..........
a. removable b. valuable c. reusable d. renewable
27. The Haya Karima .......... makes people's lives easier.
a. productive b. initiative c. report d. survey

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

28. Rice and wheat are ..........
a. regions b. crops c. fossils d. solar farms
29. It's very hot. Would you turn on the .........., please?
a. battery b. power station c. flood d. air conditioning
30. We can use that bag again. To use something again is to .......... them.
a. reuse b. recharge c. revise d. resolve
31. I turn on and off my TV using the remote ..........
a. control b. diagram c. bulb d. turbine
32. The Great Pyramid is a / an .......... building.
a. renewable b. enormous c. electric d. green

**B Language**

33. What .......... you do if you were in my place?
a. will b. can c. would d. may
34. .......... you use to plant crops when you lived in the village?
a. Did b. Do c. Will d. Does
35. Maher used to .......... shopping with his mother, but now he doesn't.
a. going b. goes c. went d. go
36. Ahmed .......... like cheese, but he loves it now. WB
a. used to b. uses to c. didn't use to d. doesn't use to
37. Which primary school .......... you use to go to? WB
a. does b. did c. do d. doing
38. What .......... you do if you got a job in a different city? WB
a. would b. are c. can d. will
39. If you .......... to do a green initiative, what would it be? SB
a. want b. wanted c. wanting d. to want





# B Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

**1- "A review of a visit to the Red Sea"** (Lessons 1 & 2)

A visit to the Red Sea can be the best choice for a holiday. It is one of the warmest seas in the world. The areas around the Red Sea are marked by their beautiful views. Visitors can see hundreds of fish and sea animals. They can see the beautiful green turtles and coral reefs. Many tourists enjoy diving. At night, visitors can buy lovely silver jewellery or traditional handicrafts. People are growing thousands of mangrove seedlings along the coast. This can protect the area from rising sea levels.

**2- "A review of the best form of renewable energy that I could use in my community"** (Lessons 3 & 4)

There are many ways to produce renewable energy. They are the sun, wind and rivers. They can be used to produce electricity and fuel for cars. We can use the water turbines as Egypt has the River Nile. The High Dam produces a lot of electric power every year. Solar farms can be useful as they depend on sunlight. People in other communities use wind turbines or water wheels. I think renewable energy is the best way to preserve the environment.

**3- "A review of building a solar farm near a nature reserve"** (Lessons 5 & 6)

Solar farms help to protect the environment. Solar farms consist of a huge number of solar panels. Solar energy is produced from sunlight. Solar farms will help to reduce the problems caused by climate change. However, there are some disadvantages. People believe that solar farms will create problems for wildlife. To conclude, I believe that they are useful.

**4- "A review of a green initiative in Egypt or a country in Africa"** (General Exercises)

I write this review about a green initiative called the Great Green Wall. This initiative was set up in 2007 by the African Union. They wanted to solve the problem of desertification in the Sahel region. Many people can't grow food and lost their farms. The initiative will plant millions of trees, seedlings across Africa. On the other hand, there are some disadvantages. Some African countries don't have enough money for the project. To summarise, it will create jobs for 10 million people. That's why I think that is very important.

**5- " Solar energy"** (Al Azhar)

Technology made scientists able to use the sun's energy more usefully. They use the sun as a renewable source of energy. They invented devices. These devices can change the sun's powerful light into electricity. They used the energy to run factories. This technology will help us all to keep our environment clean.

**6- "A short story about a boy who has visited a recycling factory"** (Test)

Ayman is in preparatory three. He is a clever boy. He likes reading about science very much. His science teacher always helps him know more about science. Ayman has read a book about recycling. He decided to visit a recycling factory. There, he saw recycling machines. One for recycling paper, another for recycling plastic, etc. The engineers in the factory helped him know more about these machines. He learnt many things that helped him with his study.

Unit 9 TEST



## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue**

**Dalia and Reem are talking about sustainable products.**

Dalia : What do you do to help the environment?

**Reem** : ❶ ..........................................................................

Dalia : Paper bags! ❷ ..........................................................................?

**Reem** : Because plastic bags aren't sustainable.

Dalia : ❸ ..........................................................................?

**Reem** : Yes, I use rechargeable batteries, too.

Dalia : How do you think we can save energy at home?

**Reem** : ❹ ..........................................................................

Dalia : ❺ ................................................................. You are right.

**Reem** : Don't forget that we have to save our planet.

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**produce - environment - kept - reduce - initiatives - keeps**

Our country has taken great steps to ❶ ........ our waste. They are going to set up ❷ ........ to recycle waste. If we ❸ ........ recycling rubbish, our country would be cleaner. However, great efforts are done these days to keep the ❹ ........ clean.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Water is very important for life. It is the secret of life. People, plants and animals need water to live on Earth. As for plants, they need water to grow. As for animals, they need water in their food. They also need water to drink.

For people, they need water to drink, wash their clothes, plant trees and to create some industries. Without water, life on Earth would be impossible. If we agree that water is so important in our life, we have to save every drop of water and we shouldn't





use it carelessly. If we save water, we will be able to grow more land and feed both people and animals and grow more plants as well.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the passage is ..........
   a. growing plants b. growing more land c. our planet d. the importance of water
2. People need water to ..........
   a. drink b. wash their clothes c. play games d. a & b
3. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ..........
   a. animals b. people c. plants d. clothes

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Why should we save water?

..........................................................................

5. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.

..........................................................................

6. How would life be on Earth without water?

..........................................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A/An .......... is something to improve a difficult situation.
   a. region b. solar farm c. initiative d. farmland
2. .......... is a special ability to do something.
   a. Power b. Promise c. Control d. Wheel
3. This building is enormous. The antonym of "enormous" is ..........
   a. huge b. expensive c. very tall d. tiny
4. We use the suffix .......... to give the adjective from "sun".
   a. -y b. -ly c. -ful d. -er
5. Magdy and Ashraf are clever students. This means that it is .......... for them to get low marks.
   a. reusable b. unusual c. great d. beautiful

6. If she read this interesting story, she .......... enjoy it.

a. will  b. wouldn't  c. won't  d. would

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .................. (will) the factory produce if it used fossil fuels? WB
2. The street is very nice. It .................. (be) ugly if we didn't plant more trees. SB
3. If we had more money, we .................. (can buy) that new phone in the shop window. WB
4. Did Waleed .................. (used) to read newspapers?
5. Ali .................. (doesn't) use to speak English when he was five.

## D Writing

## 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

إمتحان عنه قبل الاختبار

"A short story about a boy who has visited a recycling factory"

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What is this short story about?
- What did the boy visit?
- What did he see there?
- What did he learn?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

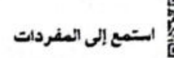
- This short story is about ..........................................
- The boy visited ..........................................
- He saw .......................................... there.
- He learnt ..........................................



# Review C

SB pages 32-33  WB pages 91-92

## Key Vocabulary

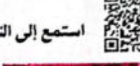



استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| eagle | طائر العقاب | recycling stations | محطات إعادة التدوير |
| furniture | أثاث | woods | غابات |
| grassland | أرض عشبية | fence | سور |
| safely | بأمان | businesses | شركات / أعمال تجارية |
| square kilometre | كيلو متر مربع | complete (d) | يكمل |
| farm animals | حيوانات المزرعة | practise (d) | يمارس |

## Audioscript

SB Page (32)



استمع إلى النصوص



**Narrator :** Between August 2019 and July 2020 about 11,000 square kilometres of Amazon rainforests[1] were burnt and cut down. The trees were cut down to make farms to plant crops[2] for cows. When the trees were burned, a lot of greenhouse gases were created, which caused climate change. But also, when the trees were destroyed, the habitats of thousands of birds and animals were lost. The animals that lived had nowhere[3] to live and they couldn't find food. This is why some habitats are made into nature reserves[4]. In 1951, the Serengeti[5] in Africa was made a nature reserve.

١- غابات الأمازون المطيرة
٢- محاصيل
٣- لا مكان
٤- محميات طبيعية
٥- اقليم سيرنيجتي "تنزانيا"

WB Page (91)



**Woman :** Today, I'm going to talk about a plan to introduce[1] an animal back to Britain[2]. I'd like to start by saying that bears used to live in Britain many years ago. However, there have been no bears in the country for hundreds of years. So why do scientists want to bring them back? To begin with, they are beautiful animals. Visitors love to see them, and they will be able to watch the bears safely[3] from special areas.

١- يقدم
٢- بريطانيا
٣- بأمان

**Man 1 :** I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by special areas.

**Woman** : The bears will live in woods[4], which is their natural habitat, but there will be fences[5] to keep the bears from people. Visitors will walk along high paths up in the trees and watch the bears from there. Are there any more questions?

٤- غابات
٥- أسوار
٦- تختم الحديث
٧- بداية

**Man 2** : Yes, what do you think about the farmers who worry that the bears will kill their animals?

**Woman** : Personally, I don't think they need to worry. The bears won't live near any farms. They will only stay in woods and they will be behind the fences. So, to conclude[6], this is just one plan to bring back animals that used to live in Britain. In my opinion, this is a great start[7].



## Reading

SB page (32)

In 2020, a lot of greenhouse gases were created by deforestation in the Amazon area. Trees were burned and a lot of carbon dioxide was made by all the fires. We could avoid creating carbon dioxide by not cutting down our forests and burning the trees. We need to protect our rainforests because they are important habitats for wildlife, plants and trees. The millions of trees keep the air clean for the whole planet. The greenhouse gas methane is produced by the cows that are brought to the area after the rainforest has been destroyed. So, it is time to plant more and more trees.

SB Page (33)



There are lots of ways we can protect our environment and build a greener world. We need to use cleaner, greener energy. If factories had solar panels on their buildings, they would save money. We need more people to work together to get renewable energy for their communities. If more communities had a wind turbine, they would have cheaper, cleaner energy. We could also help the environment by planting more trees.

١- سجاد
٢- أثاث

What about plastic? Millions of plastic bottles are used every day. When these bottles are recycled, the plastic is used to make clothes, toys, carpets[1] and furniture[2]! Glass and metal can be recycled, too. We don't recycle enough and that's why there's still so much rubbish in landfill sites.



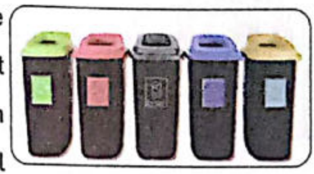


SB Page (33)

If everyone does one thing to help the environment, it will help a lot. For example, we can all use less paper or turn off the lights when we leave a room. I didn't use to buy rechargeable batteries, but now I do. We can all help.

I don't think there's much that young people can do to help the environment. Our parents buy our food and clothes. They do the shopping. If my parents don't want to recycle anything, there's nothing I can do.

WB Page (92)



Rubbish is produced by all of us every day, and we need to do something about it. In many countries, most rubbish is put into landfill sites and in others, the rubbish is burned. However, if countries keep doing this, it will cause a lot of pollution.

١- دولة السويد
٢- محطات إعادة التدوير
٣- التدفئة

In Sweden[1], only about 1% of rubbish was put into landfill sites last year. More than 50% of rubbish is recycled, and most houses are just 300 metres from a "recycling station[2]" where people can put paper, glass and plastic. The rest of their rubbish is burned in special power stations. Here, the rubbish is made into electricity and heating[3]. These power stations cause some air pollution, but something useful is created, too.

# Test on units 7, 8 & 9



## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue:**

**Mrs Amal wants to buy shopping bags.**

**Assistant :** Hello, how can I help you?

Mrs Amal : ❶ ..............................................................

**Assistant :** What type of bags do you want?

Mrs Amal : ❷ ..............................................................?

**Assistant :** Yes, we have paper bags. How many bags do you want?

Mrs Amal : ❸ ..............................................................

**Assistant :** They are really good for the environment.

Mrs Amal : That's right. ❹ ..............................................................?

**Assistant :** They are ten pounds.

Mrs Amal : ❺ ..............................................................

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**is recycled - landfill sites - grassland - bottles - is recycling - furniture**

Every day, millions of plastic ❶ ......... are used. The plastic from these bottles ❷ ......... and used to make clothes, toys, carpets, and ❸ .........! Metal and glass can also be recycled. We don't recycle nearly enough, so there is still so much rubbish in ❹ .........

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Dinosaurs were a group of huge animals. The name "dinosaur" means "terrible lizard". <u>They</u> were given this name by Sir Richard Owen in 1841. He called them that name to refer to these "great fossil lizards". Since then, fossil dinosaur skeletons have been major attractions at museums worldwide. The first dinosaur fossils were found in the early 19th century. Scientists will probably never be certain of the largest and smallest dinosaurs.

Dinosaurs can be divided into flying dinosaurs, or birds; and non-flying dinosaurs, which are all dinosaurs other than birds. Some of the dinosaurs eat meat. Others eat only plants. Scientists said they died out 66 million years ago.





**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is mainly about .....................
   a. birds  b. scientists  c. dinosaurs  d. skeletons
2. Scientists think that the dinosaurs disappeared ............ million years ago.
   a. 56  b. 65  c. 60  d. 66
3. The dinosaur is a ................... lizard.
   a. terrible  b. beautiful  c. good  d. nice

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Where can you see the skeletons of dinosaurs?
   ..............................................................
5. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
   ..............................................................
6. Summarise the second paragraph in one sentence.
   ..............................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. To "..........." is to take in liquids or gases through a surface.
   a. fill  b. protect  c. absorb  d. produce
2. A/An ........... is a place where rubbish is taken, often to be buried under the ground.
   a. landscapes  b. landfill site  c. wetland  d. green land
3. The antonym of the word "right" is "...........".
   a. full  b. large  c. wrong  d. correct
4. We get the adjective from "coast" when we add the suffix ...........
   a. -al  b. -ion  c. -less  d. -ful
5. Mrs Azza is well-known for her role as a teacher. She is a / an .......... teacher.
   a. famous  b. ugly  c. lazy  d. late
6. This shop sells beds, sofas and cupboards. It sells ...........
   a. furniture  b. equipment  c. jewellery  d. electricity

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Egypt .................... (visit) by more than 14 million tourists every year.
2. If our seas become warmer, coral reefs .................... (would) die.
3. Hundreds of fossils of ancient whales .......... (was) found by scientists in 1902.
4. We need .................... (use) cleaner renewable energy.
5. If we .................... (live) in Hurghada, we would go to the beach.

## D Writing

**6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of how to protect the environment" 2022

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

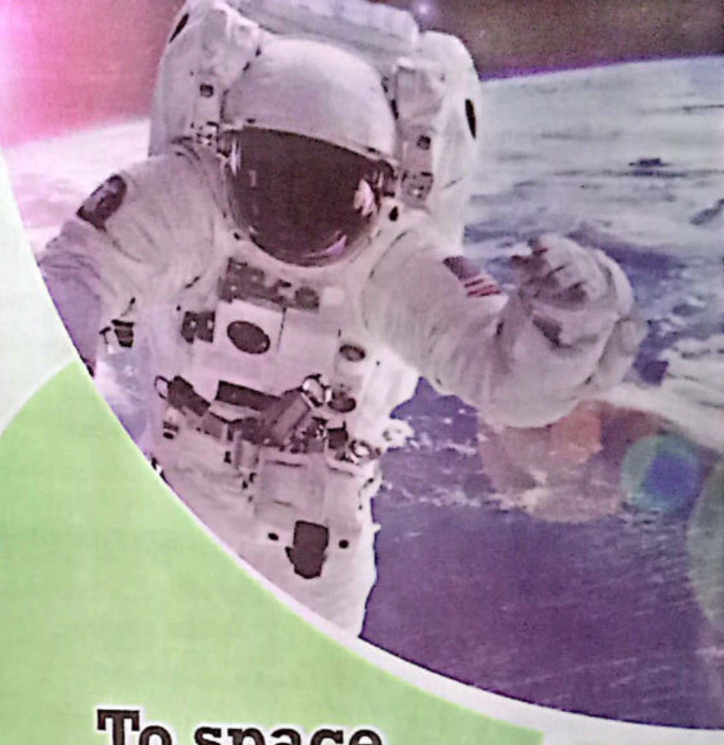
..............................................................................................................................






# The Modern World



# To space and back

## Objectives

**Reading:**

A magazine article about a space scientist; the history of space exploration; a text about satellite technology; the poem Day; an informative text about the International Space Station

**Writing:**

A paragraph about objects that use space technology; an informative text about a spacecraft

**Listening:**

A quiz about space; a podcast about satellites; a discussion about a famous photo

**Speaking:**

Talking about life experiences; talking about space and satellite technology; saying when events happened

**Language:**

*The past perfect*

**Life Skills:**

Critical thinking

SB / WB Answers جميع إجابات كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34-37 WB pages 93-94

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| astronaut | رائد فضاء | space station | محطة فضائية |
| astronomer | عالم فى الفلك | telescope | تليسكوب |
| gravity | الجاذبية الأرضية | explore (d) | يستكشف |
| lens | عدسة | recycle (d) | يعيد تدوير |
| researcher | باحث | flood (ed) | يفيض (النهر) |
| satellite | قمر صناعى | orbit (ed) | يدور حول (فى مدار) |
| solar system | النظام الشمسى | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| prize-winning | حائز على جائزة | round | مستدير |
| discovery | اكتشاف | solution | حل |
| ancient times | العصور القديمة | author | مؤلف |
| alive | على قيد الحياة/حى | spacecraft | مركبة فضائية |
| competition | مسابقة/منافسة | teaching assistant | مدرس مساعد |
| force | قوة | timeline | خط/تسلسل زمنى |
| engineering | الهندسة | collection | مجموعة |
| sports event | حدث رياضى | university lecturer | محاضر جامعى |
| Mars | كوكب المريخ | graduate (d) | يتخرج (فى جامعة) |
| jets of air | تيارات هواء قوية | revise (d) | يراجع |
| NASA* | وكالة ناسا للفضاء | publish (ed) | ينشر (كتاب/فكرة) |
| unpopular | غير محبوب | invent (ed) | يخترع |
| amount | كمية | attract (ed) | يجذب |
| recently | مؤخراً / حديثاً | collect (ed) | يجمع |
| accurately | بدقة | retire (ed) | يتقاعد ( عن العمل ) |
| | | produce (d) | ينتج / يسبب |

* NASA = National Aeronautics and Space Administration
الإدارة الوطنية للملاحة الجوية والفضاء (واشنطن - الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية)





## Important persons

| | |
|---|---|
| Ptolemy بطليموس (عالم فلك يونانى) | Galileo جاليليو (عالم فلك إيطالى) |
| Neil Armstrong نيل أرمسترونج (أول رائد فضاء يسير على سطح القمر) | Ayman Ragab أيمن رجب (باحث مصرى فى شئون الفضاء) |
| Yuri Gagarin يورى جاجارين (أول رائد فضاء) «روسى» | Peggy Whitson بيجى ويتسون (رائدة فضاء أمريكية) |
| Valentina Tereshkova فالنتينا تريشكوفا (أول رائدة فضاء) «روسية» | Nicolaus Copernicus نيكولاس كوبرنيكوس (عالم فلك بولندى) |
| Hans Lippershey هانز ليبرشى (مخترع التليسكوب) «هولندى» | |

## Space stations & satellites

| | |
|---|---|
| Mir مير (محطة الفضاء الروسية) | International Space Station محطة الفضاء الدولية |
| Sputnik 1 سبوتنك ١ (أول قمر صناعى) روسى | |

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| gravity الجاذبية الأرضية | - a force[1] which attracts[2] things or people to the centre of the Earth<br>- the force that causes things to fall to the ground when they are dropped<br>١- قوة ٢- تجذب ٣- آلة/ماكينة ٤- معدات |
| orbit يدور حول | move around a star or planet |
| researcher باحث | - a person who studies something carefully<br>- someone who studies a subject in detail in order to discover new facts or test new ideas |
| satellite قمر صناعى | a machine[3] in space that goes round the Earth to send or collect information |
| telescope تليسكوب | a piece of equipment[4] you use to see things that are far away |
| astronaut رائد فضاء | a person who travels into space |
| astronomer عالم فى الفلك | someone who studies the stars and planets. |
| space station محطة فضائية | - a large spacecraft where people live and work<br>- a large satellite going around the Earth where astronauts can live and work to study space |
| lens عدسة | a piece of glass used in cameras or on glasses, that can make things look bigger or smaller |
| solar system النظام الشمسى | all the planets and their moons which go around the sun |

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| interested | مهتم | keen | uninterested | غير مهتم |
| understand | يفهم | realize | misunderstand | يسئ الفهم |
| ancient | قديم/أثرى | old | modern | حديث |
| alive | حى / على قيد الحياة | living | dead | ميت |
| popular | شائع/محبوب | common | unpopular | غير محبوب |
| force | قوة | power | weakness | ضعف |
| collect | يجمع | gather | spread | ينشر |
| retire | يتقاعد ( عن العمل ) | stop working | continue working | يواصل/يستمر في العمل |
| different | مختلف | various | the same / similar | نفس الشئ - متشابه |
| win | يفوز | come first | lose | يخسر |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| inter- | between | تعطى معنى «بين» | international | دولى |
| un- | opposite | تعطى العكس | uncover / unpopular | يكشف/ غير محبوب |
| in- | | | inaccurate | غير دقيق |
| tele- | distance | تعطى معنى ( البعد ) | telescope | التليسكوب |
| astro- | space | تخص الفضاء | astronaut / astronomer | رائد فضاء/ عالم فلك |
| a- | v → adj | تحول الفعل إلى الصفة | alive | حى/على قيد الحياة |
| -er | person | تكّون اسم فاعل | researcher / lecturer / astronomer | باحث/مُحاضر/عالم فلك |
| -ant | | | assistant | مساعد |
| -ist | | | scientist | عالم |
| -tion / ion | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | competition / collection | مسابقة/ مجموعة |
| -ly | adj → adv | تحول الصفة إلى الحال | recently | مؤخرًا/حديثًا |
| -y | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | discovery | اكتشاف |





## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| far away | بعيد | go / travel into space | يذهب/يسافر للفضاء |
| solve the problem | يحل المشكلة | orbit the Earth | يدور حول الأرض |
| find a solution / a way | يجد حل / طريقة | collect information | يجمع معلومات |
| enter a competition | يدخل مسابقة | do with | يتعامل مع |
| save energy | يوفر الطاقة | try to + inf. | يحاول أن |
| came second | حصل على المركز الثانى | interested in | مهتم بـ |
| discover the planets | يكتشف الكواكب | go round | يذهب حول |
| make ...stronger | يجعل..... أقوى | take......off | يتخلص من |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| dream | يحلم | dreamt / dreamed | dreamt / dreamed |
| win | يفوز | won | won |
| leave | يغادر | left | left |

## Language Notes

### 1) work at / work as / work for / work on

- **work at** يعمل في (مكان)
  Ex. I have worked at this school for two years.
- **work as** يعمل كـ (يأتي بعدها وظيفة الشخص)
  Ex. Salma works as a teacher at a prep school.
- **work for** يعمل لدى (شخص/شركة)
  Ex. She works for an international company.
- **work on** يعمل على مشروع
  Ex. They have worked on this project for two months.

## 2) look at / look for

- look at ينظر الى
  Ex. I can't look at the sun.
- look for يبحث عن
  Ex. I am looking for my keys. I can't find them.

## 3) the first ..... to + inf.

أول من (قام بشئ) -

Ex. Neil Armstrong was the first astronaut to walk on the moon.

## 4) graduate in / graduate from / a graduate of

- graduate (d) in يتخرج (من تخصص ما)
  Ex. Ahmed graduated in law last year.
- graduate (d) from يتخرج (من الجامعة)
  Ex. Hamdy graduated from Ain Shams University.

## 5) As well as

- as well as + v- ing / noun بالإضافة إلى

Ex. As well as being an astronaut, Peggy has worked as a researcher.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Ayman has worked ........... a teaching assistant recently.
   a. for b. to c. as d. on
2. Look ........... this flower! It is very colorful.
   a. for b. at c. up d. to
3. Karim was the first one ........... at work.
   a. arrive b. arrives c. arriving d. to arrive
4. My sister graduated ........... engineering last year.
   a. in b. from c. at d. of
5. She is a good musician as well as ........... a photographer.
   a. be b. being c. been d. was





# Reading

SB Page (34)

استمع إلى النصوص



**1957**
the first satellite, Sputnik 1

**1961**
the first man in space, Yuri Gagarin



**1963**
the first woman in space, Valentina Tereshkova

**1969**
Neil Armstrong becomes the first astronaut[1] to walk on the moon.



١- رائد فضاء
٢- محطة فضائية
٣- تليسكوب
٤- محطة الفضاء الدولية

**1986**
The world's first space station[2], Mir, goes into space.

**1990**
The first telescope[3] is sent into space.



**1998**
The International Space Station[4]

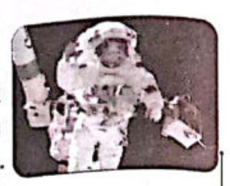
**2001**
A new Egyptian satellite





SB Page (35)

## Prize-winning[1] Egyptian helps NASA[2]



For many years, NASA has been trying to understand what it can do with the rubbish that space journeys[3] produce. Scientists have been looking for ways to solve the problem of rubbish. Astronauts use a lot of plastic, paper and other waste on their journeys to space. This can be a real problem. So NASA started a competition[4], asking the world's best scientists to try and find a solution[5].

Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has always been interested in space science[6]. In 2019, he entered NASA's competition and came second. Ayman suggested using jets of air[7] to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle[8] it.

Ayman is from the village of al-Dababiya near Luxor and graduated[9] in Engineering[10] from Aswan University. He has worked as a teaching assistant[11] at the same university and now works as a researcher[12] for a university in Finland[13].

Since he won his prize, he has worked on NASA's Technology Transfer Project[14] which looks at how to use the latest technology in space, and he has recently[15] found ways to save energy when there is little gravity[16].

١- حائز على جائزة
٢- وكالة الفضاء الوطنية (ناسا)
٣- رحلات إلى الفضاء
٤- مسابقة
٥- حل
٦- علم الفضاء
٧- قاذفات هواء
٨- يعيد تدوير
٩- تخرج
١٠- الهندسة
١١- مدرس مساعد
١٢- باحث
١٣- دولة فنلندا
١٤- مشروع نقل التكنولوجيا
١٥- حديثًا
١٦- الجاذبية الأرضية

**Say it correctly**

- solution

ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة مثلما تنطق حروف (oo) في كلمة (moon)

**Reading Skill** مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The text is about ............
   a. Space journeys.
   b. The history of space
   c. An Egyptian scientist helps NASA
   d. Rubbish in the oceans
2. Infer from the text what Ayman did to help solve the problem of rubbish in space.
3. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.

**Writing Skill** مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist. He is interested in space science.
   أيمن رجب عالم مصري . انه مهتم بعلوم الفضاء.
2. Ayman Ragab graduated in Engineering from Aswan University.
   تخرج أيمن رجب في الهندسة من جامعة أسوان .
3. Ayman Ragab works as a researcher for a university in Finland.
   يعمل أيمن رجب كباحث لجامعة في فنلندا.

**Answers**

1. An Egyptian scientist helps NASA.
2. Ayman suggested using jets of air to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle it.
3. NASA started a competition, asking the world's best scientists to try and find a solution to the problem of rubbish that space journeys produce.





SB Page (36)

## Exploring[1] space - past and present



### 1 The first astronomers[2]

The stars and the planets have always been important to us. In ancient times[3], people knew what time of year it was by looking at where the stars were in the sky. The Ancient Egyptians discovered that a star called Sirius appeared in the sky just before the Nile flooded.

### 2 Early ideas about the sun and the Earth

An astronomer from the $2^{nd}$ century, called Ptolemy, believed that the sun orbited[4] the Earth. It was a popular idea that people believed for many centuries. Islamic astronomers[5] in the $11^{th}$–$13^{th}$ centuries thought that the idea might be wrong.

### 3 A new idea

In 1532, the astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus showed that the Earth orbited the sun, but he hadn't published[6] his ideas until just before he died. Copernicus hadn't wanted people to know about his ideas while he was alive[7], because he knew they would be unpopular[8].

### 4 The first telescopes

Before the beginning of the $17^{th}$ century, astronomers had only studied space with their own eyes. Then, in 1608, the telescope was invented. The Italian astronomer Galileo improved the design[9]. He made the lenses[10] stronger so that he could study the planets in our solar system[11].

### 5 Modern discoveries[12]

The modern age is an exciting time for space discovery. We can see objects that are far away in space and look for life on other planets. What discoveries do you think we will make in the future?

١- استكشاف
٢- علماء في الفلك
٣- العصور القديمة
٤- دارت حول
٥- علماء فلك مسلمين
٦- ينشر (فكرة)
٧- على قيد الحياة
٨- غير محبوب
٩- طور التصميم
١٠- عدسات
١١- النظام الشمسي
١٢- اكتشافات

WB Page (93)

June 2018

Today, the famous American astronaut Peggy Annette Whitson has just said that she is going to retire[1]. More than 500 people have been to space, but Peggy has spent longer in space than any other woman. She has been travelling to space every few years since 2002. As well as[2] being an astronaut, Peggy has worked as a university lecturer[3] and on the International Space Station. Our newspaper has been writing about her work for more than 15 years, and we wish her luck for the future!



١- تتقاعد
٢- بالإضافة إلى
٣- مُحاضرة جامعية

## Audioscript

SB Page (37)



**Rami** : What are you looking at, Kamal?

**Kamal** : Hi, Rami. It's a quiz about space[1] history. Some of the answers to the questions are very surprising[2]. I scored 2 out of 4. Would you like to try?

**Rami** : OK. Ask me the first question.

**Kamal** : When did people first discover[3] the planets in our solar system? **A:** about 2000 years ago or **B:** about 400 years ago.

**Rami** : Hmmm ... I don't think astronomers had discovered the planets before the telescope was invented, so I think the answer is **B**: about 400 years ago.

**Kamal** : Wrong! Astronomers had discovered them a long time before that! People from an ancient place in the Middle East[4] called Babylonia[5] discovered the planets in the first and second century[6]. They saw that the planets moved differently from the stars in the sky, so they knew that they were different.

**Rami** : Wow! That was a long time ago!

**Kamal** : Yes, it was! Second question... When did people discover that the Earth was round? **A:** in the 6th century or **B:** in the 15th century.

**Rami** : Oh, I know people believed that the Earth was flat[7] for a long time. So I'll choose answer **B**: in the 15th century.

**Kamal** : Wrong answer! People had discovered the Earth was round a long time before the 15th century! Greek scientists in the 6th century saw that the sky looked different from different places. This made them think that the planet was round.

١- الفضاء
٢- مدهش
٣- يكتشف
٤- الشرق الأوسط
٥- بلاد بابل
٦- قرن
٧- مسطح





**Rami** : Oh dear! I'm not doing very well.

**Kamal** : Don't worry. Here's the third question. Who invented the telescope?
**A:** Galileo or **B:** Hans Lipperhsey?

**Rami** : Hmm ... Well Galileo improved the design of the telescope, but he didn't invent it. So the answer is **B**, Hans Lippershey.

**Kamal** : That's right. Hans Lippershey lived in the Netherlands in the 16th century. He wasn't an astronomer – he made glasses. He discovered that he could use more than one lens to make objects look bigger ... So, Galileo didn't invent the telescope, but he was the first person to use it to study space. Question 4. How many people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century? **A** : 2 or **B** : 12?

**Rami** : Hmm, I'm sure it's more than two, so I think **B** is the right answer – 12 people.

**Kamal** : That's right! Twelve people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century. No more people have walked on the moon this century, so the number is still the same.

**Rami** : So I got 2 out of 4 – the same as you! That was really interesting, Kamal! I think I learnt a lot.

## Videoscript

SB Page 37

If you look up to the sky during the day, you can see clouds and the sun. At night, you can see the moon, some planets and hundreds of thousands of stars. The sun is a star and all of the planets in our solar system move around it. It takes our planet, Earth, 365 days to orbit the sun.

We know this, and many other things about our solar system, because of the work of Islamic astronomers more than one thousand years ago.

In the tenth century, an astronomer from Iran called Abd al-Rahman al-Sufi wrote a very important book about the solar system called The Book of Fixed Stars[1]. This described the exact position[2] of the stars in the night sky at different times of the year, and it also included drawings and descriptions[3] of different groups of stars called constellations[4]. The group of stars in a constellation can form a picture in the sky, such as the Great Bear[5] and Orion[6]. Nobody had described them so accurately[7] before al-Sufi did.

١- كتاب النجوم الثابتة
٢- الموقع الدقيق
٣- وصف
٤- مجموعة نجوم
٥- الدب الأكبر
٦- كوكبة الجبار (الجوزاء)
٧- بدقة

A very large group of stars is called a galaxy[8]. Earth is in a galaxy called the Milky Way[9]. Abd al-Rahman al-Sufi wrote about other galaxies, such as the Large Magellanic Cloud[10] and the Andromeda Galaxy[11], before many other people had even seen them.

An Egyptian astronomer called Ibn Yunus studied how planets moved in the solar system in the eleventh century. Later, an important European astronomer called Copernicus used these studies to suggest that planets moved around the sun. Before this, some people had thought that the sun moved around Earth.

Today, astronomers are still discovering new things about stars, planets and galaxies. What do you think they will discover in the future ?

٨- مجرة
٩- مجرة درب التبانة
١٠- مجرة ماجلان الكبرى
١١- مجرة اندروميدا

# Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Definitions

1. A ....... is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away. WB
   a. jet of air b. station c. telescope d. satellite
2. A ....... is a machine in space that goes round the Earth to send or collect information. WB
   a. planet b. moon c. satellite d. telescope
3. A ....... is a large spacecraft where people live and work. WB
   a. space station b. train station c. balloon d. satellite
4. A/An ....... is a person who studies something carefully. WB
   a. nurse b. engineer c. researcher d. astronaut
5. ....... is the force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth. WB
   a. Gravity b. A telescope c. A spacecraft d. A space station
6. A/An ....... is a person who travels into space. WB
   a. astronomer b. vet c. teacher d. astronaut
7. A/An ....... is a scientist who studies stars and planets.
   a. driver b. engineer c. assistant d. astronomer
8. A ....... is a piece of glass used in cameras or on glasses, that can make things look bigger or smaller
   a. telescope b. satellite c. lens d. discovery





### Synonyms & Antonyms

9. Congratulations! You've won the competition. "Win" here has the opposite meaning of " ....... ". Longman
   a. avoid b. forget c. earn d. lose
10. He is going to retire. The word "retire" here means .......
    a. prevent b. stop working c. work d. invent
11. The antonym of the word "interested" is .......
    a. frightened b. keen c. excited d. uninterested
12. The synonym of "interested" is .......
    a. asleep b. keen c. worried d. uninterested
13. I visited an ancient temple yesterday. The antonym of "ancient" is .......
    a. old b. ugly c. modern d. fantastic
14. The verb "understand" gives the same meaning as the verb .......
    a. revise b. believe c. agree d. realize
15. The antonym of the word "force" is .......
    a. power b. gravity c. cleverness d. weakness

### Suffixes & Prefixes

16. We can add the prefix " ....... " to the word "scope" to mean an instrument that makes distant things nearer.
    a. fore- b. inter- c. pre- d. tele-
17. We add the prefix ....... to give the antonym of the word "accurate".
    a. in- b. un- c. im- d. non-
18. To give the opposite of the adjective "popular", we add the prefix .......
    a. re- b. un- c. in- d. dis-
19. The verb "research" is turned into a noun for a person by adding the suffix .......
    a. -ly b. -tion c. -ant d. -er
20. We use the suffix ....... with the word "science" to refer to a person.
    a. -ly b. -ist c. -or d. -er

### Guessing the meaning from the text

21. The best cameras have a very good ....... that lets in the correct amount of light. Longman WB
    a. view b. sound c. lens d. picture

22. Azza loves studying the stars and planets. This means she wants to be a/an ........ WB

a. teacher b. astronomer c. doctor d. nurse

23. My school is near, but my brother's university is very ........ from our home.

a. different b. far c. crowded d. absent

24. I could see the stars in the sky very near. This means I used a ........

a. telescope b. station c. timeline d. gravity

25. This picture shows the sun and the planets that go around it. This means it shows the ........

a. solar system b. satellite c. space station d. space science

# Language

## 1- Remember: The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام

### Form التكوين

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I / We/ You / They / اسم جمع | + | have ('ve) | + | past participle |
| He / She / It / اسم مفرد | | has ('s) | | التصريف الثالث للفعل |

Ex. I have watched a movie.
Ex. He has worked at two universities.

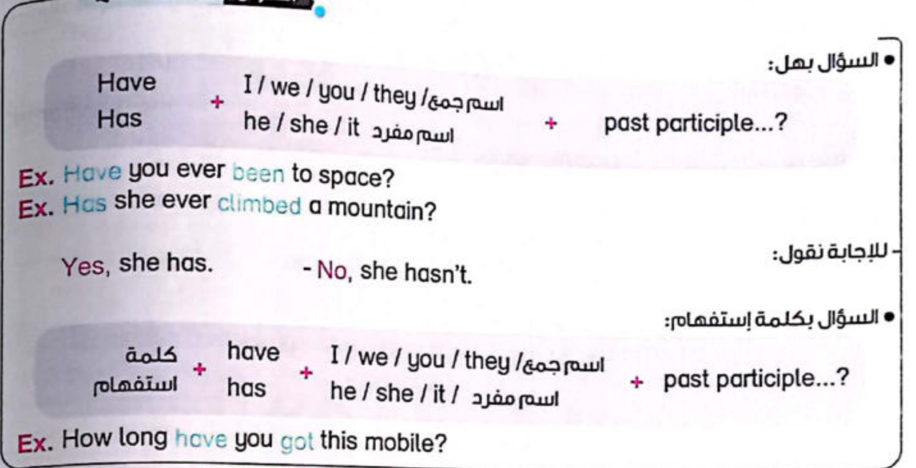
### Negative النفى

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I / We / You / They / اسم جمع | + | have | + | not | + | past participle |
| He / She / It / اسم مفرد | | has | | | | |

Ex. I haven't been to this restaurant before.
Ex. He hasn't read this book yet.







### Question السؤال

• السؤال بهل:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Have | + | I / we / you / they / اسم جمع | + | past participle...? |
| Has | | he / she / it اسم مفرد | | |

Ex. Have you ever been to space?
Ex. Has she ever climbed a mountain?

- للإجابة نقول:

Yes, she has. - No, she hasn't.

• السؤال بكلمة إستفهام:

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| كلمة استفهام | + | have | + | I / we / you / they / اسم جمع | + | past participle...? |
| | | has | | he / she / it / اسم مفرد | | |

Ex. How long have you got this mobile?

### Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام فى الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم فى الماضى دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية فى الماضى past experiences):
Ex. I have entered a competition.

٢- لوصف حدث تم فى الماضى ولا يزال أثره موجود:
Ex. Look what you have done; you will have to repair my car.

٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثًا «أى قبل قليل»
Ex. I have just read a science book.

- لاحظ استخدام الكلمات الدالة على الزمن واماكنها:

| | |
|---|---|
| توًا just (فى الجملة المثبتة) | Ex. I've just come back home. |
| من قبل ever (فى السؤال) | Ex. Have you ever seen a real lion? |
| أبدًا never فى النفى | Ex. I have never been to a theatre. |
| حتى الآن yet (فى النفى/السؤال) | Ex. We haven't visited the Cairo Tower yet.<br>Ex. Have they arrived yet? |
| since (منذ) + نقطة بداية الحدث | Ex. I've done sport since 2020. |
| for (لمدة) + مدة زمنية | Ex. I've done sport four years. |
| recently / lately حديثًا/مؤخرًا (فى بداية او نهاية الجملة أو بين جزئى الزمن) | Ex. I have bought a new jacket recently.<br>Ex. Recently, I have bought a new jacket.<br>Ex. I have recently bought a new jacket. |
| already بالفعل (فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة أو بين جزئى الزمن) | Ex. Wafaa has graduated in engineering already<br>Ex. Wafaa has already graduated in engineering. |

### always دائماً

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام always مع المضارع التام لتعبر عن دوام حدوث الحدث وعدم إنتهاءه:

Ex. Ashraf has always worked as an engineer.

Ex. Osman has always done sport.

## 2- The present perfect continuous tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

### Form التكوين

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I / We / You / They / اسم جمع<br>He / She / It / اسم مفرد | + | have<br>has | + | been | + | V-ing |

Ex. Scientists have been looking for ways to solve the problem of rubbish.

Ex. He has been studying English for 7 years now.

### Negative النفى

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I / We / You / They / اسم جمع<br>He / She / It / اسم مفرد | + | have<br>has | + | not | + | been | + | V-ing |

Ex. My dad hasn't been working at this school.

Ex. I haven't been playing tennis.

### Question السؤال

- السؤال بهل:

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Have<br>Has | + | I / we / you / they / اسم جمع<br>he / she / it / اسم مفرد | + | been | + | V-ing...? |

Ex. Have you been studying all day?

Ex. Has he been walking with his father for an hour?

- للإجابة نقول:

Yes, he has. - No, he hasn't.

- السؤال بكلمة إستفهام

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| كلمة استفهام | + | have<br>has | + | I / we / you / they / اسم جمع<br>he / she / it / اسم مفرد | + | been | + | V-ing...? |

Ex. What have you been doing recently?

Ex. How long has Omar been waiting for Sara?

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| all night | طوال الليل | all year | طوال العام | for....now | لمدة ... الآن | lately | مؤخراً |
| all day | طوال اليوم | since | منذ | still | ما يزال | recently | حديثاً |





### Usage الاستخدام

١- يعبر زمن المضارع التام المستمر عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا حتى الآن.

Ex. They have been watching the match for 2 hours now.

٢- يعبر زمن المضارع التام المستمر عن نشاط متكرر.

Ex. My friends have been phoning me all day.

### مقارنة بين الزمنين

| The present perfect | The present perfect continuous |
|---|---|
| ١- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام فى التأكيد على فعل تم وانتهى منذ فترة دون تحديد وقت حدوثه.<br>Ex. She has already typed the report.<br>٢- يعبر عن حدث تم فى الماضى ولكن مازال له بعض الأثر فى الوقت الحال.<br>Ex. Ali has So, he can't write. broken his arm.<br>Ali has broken his arm, so he can't write.<br>٣- يعبر عن حدث تم منذ وقت قليل.<br>Ex. We have just seen an accident<br>٤- نستخدم المضارع التام عند ذكر عدد الأشياء التى قمنا بإنجازها أو فعلها.<br>Ex. He has sent two e-mails this morning. | ١- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام المستمر فى التعبير عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا حتى الآن.<br>Ex. They have been studying English for ten years now.<br>٢- يعبر عن حدث أو نشاط متكرر بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا حتى هذه اللحظة.<br>Ex. Sameh has been receiving prizes. |

## Exercises on Language

### (The present perfect & continuous)

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Heba .......... (do) her housework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet. WB
2. Omar .......... (read) a new story for an hour; he is still reading it. WB
3. A: "I .......... (be) to this restaurant before. Is it good" B: "Yes, it is." WB
4. They .......... (study) English for 3 hours now. 2023
5. I .......... (visit) this restaurant three times this week. I like it. 2023
6. Have you .......... (never) driven a car? 2023
7. What have you been .......... (do) at school this week? 2022
8. Has she ever .......... (be) to Aswan? 2022

### Longman

9. My grandfather has never .......... (drove) a car.
10. Dalia .......... (has washed) the dishes for a long time now; she hasn't finished yet.
11. Have you .......... (never) used a telescope?
12. What have you .......... (being) studying at school this year?
13. I miss you so much. I haven't seen you .......... (since) years.
14. Experts have been .......... (tried) to solve the problem of global warming for years.
15. I have .......... (been knowing) my friend Magdi for years.
16. Have you solved the problem? - Yes, I .......... (have solved) it yesterday.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

17. I .......... (had lived) in Cairo since 2005.
18. We .......... (have played) chess all night.
19. A: How long have you .......... (being) sleeping? B: All day.
20. We .......... (have) finished painting the house yet.
21. Donia .......... (do) her housework for two hours now.
22. At last I .......... (solve) the problem.
23. How long have you .......... (be) wearing glasses?
24. Heba has made dresses .......... (for) 2011.

## 3- The past perfect tense زمن الماضي التام

### Form التكوين

Subject فاعل + had + past participle. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. After we had collected information, we did our research.

### Negative النفي

Subject فاعل + had not (hadn't) + past participle.

Ex. I hadn't seen her before she visited us.





### Question السؤال

• السؤال بهل:

Had + Subject + past participle...?

Ex. Had she done her homework before she went out?

- للإجابة نقول:

Yes, she had. - No, she hadn't.

• السؤال بكلمة إستفهام:

كلمة استفهام + had + Subject + past participle...?

Ex. Where had he hidden before I came?

### Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي التام في الحالات الآتية:

1- لوصف فعل تم في الماضي وانتهى قبل حدوث فعل آخر.

Ex. We left when the play had finished.

2- لوصف حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي

Ex. Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers had only studied space with their own eyes.

3- لتوضيح ترتيب الأحداث في الماضي، يمكن استخدام الروابط الزمنية التالية:

Before قبل / By the time قبل / When عندما + past simple ماض بسيط + had + p.p. ماض تام

Ex. Before / By the time / When I left the room, I had turned off the light.

After بعد / As soon as بمجرد أن / When عندما + had + p.p. ماض تام + Past simple ماض بسيط

Ex. After / As soon as / When I had turned off the light, I left the room.

Past simple ماض بسيط (منفي غالباً) + till / until حتى + had + p.p. ماض تام

Ex. I didn't leave the room until / till I had turned off the light.




1- يمكن استخدام (V + ing / noun) بعد After/Before إذا لم يأتي بعدهما فاعل، بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحد في الجملتين.

After + V - ing / n + Past simple ماض بسيط

Before + V - ing / n + had + p.p ماض تام

**Ex.** After doing her homework, she went to sleep.

= After she had done her homework, she went to sleep.

**Ex.** Before going to bed, she had done her homework.

= Before she went to bed, she had done her homework.

٢- يمكن أن نستخدم ( because / as لأن ) مع زمن الماضي التام كالآتي:

| السبب | | | | النتيجة |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| had + p.p ماضٍ تام | + | because / as | + | Past simple ماضٍ بسيط |

**Ex.** Omar went to the doctor because / as he had been ill.

- وعكس ما سبق نستخدم ( so / that's why لذلك ) كالآتي:

| النتيجة | | | | السبب |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Past simple ماضٍ بسيط | + | so / that's why | + | had + p.p ماضٍ تام |

**Ex.** Omar had been ill so / that's why he went to the doctor.

## Exercises on Language

### (The past perfect)

**1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

**SB, WB & Previous Exams**

1. People believed Ptolemy's ideas after he .......... (die). SB
2. People .............. (know) much about stars until scientists had used telescopes. SB
3. After we .......... (collect) all the necessary information last week, we did the research. WB
4. Before his death, the author .......... (publish) his latest collection of short stories. WB
5. Rami .......... (tidy) his room before he started studying. WB
6. Malak did not want to start reading the book until she .......... (prepare) dinner. WB
7. Yesterday, I .......... (go) to the club after I had finished my work. WB
8. I didn't send the report until I .......... (revise) it. شمال سيناء 2022 WB
9. He .......... (does) his homework by the time he slept. القليوبية 2023 WB
10. .......... (Did) you finished your homework before you went to the cinema? الشرقية 2023

**Longman**

11. I had cleaned my room .......... (after) I started studying.
12. Sherif did well in the exam after he .......... (revising) his lessons well.





13. .......... (Have) you made sure the car was safe before you started your journey?
14. What .......... (have) you done by the time you returned home?
15. .......... (Before) I had seen my friend off, I left Cairo Airport.
16. Dalia missed the train because she .......... (has) got up late.
17. Kamal .......... (doesn't) go to Alexandria until he had rented a flat there.
18. Before .......... (visited) my friend, I had bought him a valuable present.

Longman

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

19. I did not buy the new car until I .......... (got) the money.
20. She .......... (live) in China before she went to Thailand.
21. I thanked my friend because he .......... (help) my father yesterday.
22. I wrote a reply to the email .......... (before) I had received it.
23. .......... (After) she returned home, she had bought some bread.
24. I didn't have lunch till I had .......... (return) home.
25. Before .......... (left) home, Samir had had a shower. Longman
26. After .......... (had seen) the accident, I called the police. Longman

## Speaking

**2 Discussing life experiences:** مناقشة التجارب الحياتية

- نسأل ونجيب عن التجارب الحياتية كالآتي:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Have you ever used a telescope?<br>- هل سبق لك أن استخدمت التليسكوب؟ | - Yes, I used a telescope on the science trip last year.<br>- نعم، لقد استخدمت تليسكوبًا في رحلة العلوم العام الماضي. |
| - Have you ever tried an unusual sport?<br>- هل سبق لك وأن قمت بتجربة رياضة غريبة؟ | - No, I have never tried an unusual sport.<br>- لا، لم أقم بتجربة أي رياضة غريبة. |
| - What have you been reading recently?<br>- ماذا كنت تقرأ مؤخرًا؟ | - I have been reading a book about space.<br>- لقد كنت أقرأ كتابًا عن الفضاء. |
| - What have you been doing at school this week?<br>- ماذا كنت تفعل في المدرسة هذا الاسبوع؟ | - I have been taking tests.<br>- لقد كنت أحل الاختبارات. |

## General Exercises

on Lessons 1& 2



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Gana and Donia are talking about their life experiences.**

**Gana** : Hello! Donia. Where have you been?

Donia : ❶ ................................................................

**Gana** : At the sports club! ❷ ................................................................?

Donia : I play squash there.

**Gana** : Great! ❸ ................................................................?

Donia : No, I've never tried an unusual sport.

**Gana** : Have you ever entered a competition?

Donia : ❹ ................................................................

**Gana** : Can I join you next time to try squash?

Donia : ❺ ................................................................

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**had travelled - to walk - astronaut - walk - spacecraft - travelled**

Neil Armstrong was the first person ❶ .......... on the moon. He was an American ❷ .......... Neil Armstrong landed on the moon on July 20, 1969, in a small ❸ .......... which was launched to the moon by a rocket. He had travelled to the moon before other astronauts ❹ .......... there.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .......... is an instrument designed to make distant objects appear closer.
   a. telescope b. television c. thermometer d. spacecraft
2. A .......... is a machine in space that goes around the earth.
   a. microscope b. telescope c. ship d. satellite
3. The prefix .......... gives the adjective of the verb "live".
   a. un- b. dis- c. in- d. a-
4. I'm going to compete in that race. We use the suffix .......... to get the noun of "compete".
   a. -tion b. -ly c. -ist d. -ous





5. This is the same shirt you like; it isn't .......... from it.
   a. difficult b. different c. far d. expensive
6. The moon moves around the earth. The verb "moves around" here means ..........
   a. stops b. orbits c. bursts d. preserves

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ahmed .......... (read) three books this week, he loves reading! WB
2. Rami had tidied his room before he .......... (start) studying.
3. I .......... (don't send) the report until I had revised it.
4. I haven't .......... (do) my homework yet.
5. We .......... (worked) on that project for three months. We are still working on it.

### 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following: WB

"A short story about what you did last weekend"

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- How was your weekend?
- What kind of books did you read?
- Why do you like to read about space?
- What have you been dreaming of since you were young?

- يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات:

- I had a good weekend.................................. .
- I read a book about .................................. .
- I like this kind of books because .................................. .
- I have been dreaming to be .......... since I was young.

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38-40 WB pages 95-96

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| GPS | نظام تحديد المواقع | sensor | جهاز استشعار |
| braces | تقويم / دعامات (للأسنان) | signal | إشارة |
| continent | قارة | fellow | رجل / رفيق |
| grain | حبة - بذرة - حبوب | toiler | شخص مكافح |
| helmet | خوذة | in vain | بلا جدوى / هباءً |
| research | بحث/أبحاث | wireless | لاسلكي |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| receiver | جهاز استقبال | weather report | تقرير عن الطقس |
| motorbike | دراجة نارية | headphones | سماعات الرأس |
| weather satellite | قمر صناعي للطقس | rocks | صخور |
| sports matches | مباريات رياضية | task | مهمة |
| TV show | عرض تليفزيوني | bags of air (air bags) | أكياس هوائية |
| podcast | نشرة صوتية | diplomat | دبلوماسي |
| verse | بيت شعر | receive (d) | يستقبل |
| trainers | حذاء رياضي | check(ed) | يتحرى / يفحص |
| satellite phones | هواتف متصلة بالقمر الصناعي | rhyme (d) (n) | يتناغم / يقفي - قافية / إيقاع |
| satellite technology | تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية | allow(ed) | يسمح |

## Words & Meanings

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **braces** تقويم / دعامات (الأسنان) | something that people can wear to make their teeth straight[1] | |
| **continent** قارة | a large area[2] of land in the world, such as Africa, Asia, or Europe | |
| **fellow** رجل / رفيق | another word for a man | |
| **grain** حبة - بذرة - حبوب | a seed or seeds from a plant such as wheat | |
| **helmet** خوذة | a special hard hat used to protect the head | |

١- معتدل - مستوٍ
٢- منطقة





| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **GPS** | نظام تحديد المواقع بالقمر الصناعي | a system (Global Positioning System) for finding how to find something or to get to a place using satellites |
| **satellite receiver** | جهاز استقبال بالقمر الصناعي | a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite |
| **sensor** | جهاز استشعار | something which can measure[3] small amounts[4] of light, heat, sound, etc. |
| **signal** | إشارة | information or an instruction[5] that is sent by sound, light, etc. |
| **toiler** | كادح/مجتهد | someone who is working hard |
| **in vain** | بلا جدوى/تافه | unsuccessful[6] or useless[7] |
| **wireless** | لاسلكي | able to use the internet without wires[8] |

٣- يقيس
٤- كميات
٥- تعليمات
٦- فاشل
٧- عديم الفائدة
٨- أسلاك

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| comfortable | مريح | relaxing | uncomfortable | غير مريح |
| special | خاص/من نوع خاص | particular | general | عام |
| strong | قوي | powerful | weak | ضعيف |
| unsuccessful | غير ناجح | failed | successful | ناجح |
| vain | عديم الفائدة/تافه | useless | useful | مفيد |
| toiler | شخص مكافح | hard worker | lazy | كسول |
| allow | يسمح | let | prevent | يمنع |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| tele- | distance | تعطي معنى "البعد" | television | التلفاز |
| un- | opposite | تعطي العكس | unsuccessful | غير ناجح |
| -less | opposite | تعطي العكس / النفي | wireless / useless | لا سلكي/عديم الفائدة |
| -able | n/v→adj | تحول الاسم/الفعل إلى الصفة | comfortable | مريح |
| -or / -er | person/thing | تكون اسم الفاعل | sensor / receiver / toiler | جهاز استشعار/جهاز استقبال/كادح |
| ful | n/v → adj | تحول الاسم/الفعل إلى صفة | successful/useful | ناجح/مفيد |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| live without | يعيش بدون | send ........ to | يرسل ........ إلى |
| put.... together | يجمع...... | on TV | في التليفزيون |
| find their way | يجدوا طريقهم | on phone | في الهاتف |
| work together | يعملون سوياً | land on | يهبط على |
| check the weather | يتحرى عن الطقس | work out | يتحقق / يستنتج |
| from the inside of | من الجزء الداخل لـ | rhyme with | يتناغم / يقفى مع |

### Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| think | يفكر | thought | thought |
| fall | يسقط | fell | fallen |
| blow | يهب (للرياح) | blew | blown |

## Language Notes

### 1) Abbreviations اختصارات

- GPS = Global Positioning System نظام تحديد المواقع العالمي
- BCE = Before Common Era قبل الميلاد
- Mr = Mister السيد
- TV = Television تليفزيون
- Dr = Doctor طبيب

### 2) every day / everyday

- every day (adv) كل يوم
  Ex. I go to my work on time every day.
- everyday (adj) يومى (يأتى بعدها اسم)
  Ex. Running is my everyday activity.

### 3) allow / let

- allow(ed) + object مفعول + to + inf.
  يسمح لـ.... أن......
  Ex. Satellites allow us to study the weather.
- let (let / let) + object مفعول + inf.
  يسمح لـ... أن (مصدر بدون to)
  Ex. My teacher let me leave early.





### 4) so that

- so that لكى

- يأتى بعد so that (can / will + inf.) إذا كان النصف الأول من الجمل مضارعاً.
- ويأتى بعدها (could / would + inf.) إذا كان النصف الأول من الجملة ماضياً.

Ex. Magid runs every morning so that he can be fit.
Ex. She practised well so that she could win the race.

### 5) homophones

- هى كلمات تشترك فى نطق واحد ولكن تختلف فى المعنى وأمثلة ذلك:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| won | يفوز | one | واحد |
| I | أنا | eye | عين |
| here | هنا | hear | يسمع |
| know | يعرف | no | لا |
| sea | بحر | see | يرى |
| son | ابن | sun | شمس |

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. "Dr" is an abbreviation for ............ .
   a. door b. doctor c. drink d. drone
2. Karim likes to go running. It's his ............ hobby.
   a. every day b. on day c. everyday d. a day
3. The manager doesn't allow us ............ late.
   a. come b. coming c. to coming d. to come
4. I revised well so that I ............ answer all questions.
   a. can b. will c. could d. must
5. We say "one" in the same way as ............ .
   a. on b. won c. no d. none

## Reading (SB page (38))



استمع إلى النصوص



**We couldn't live without satellite technology[1]**

Since the late 20th century[2], we have used satellite technology for many of the things we do every day. Our lives would be very different without it. Here are some of the things that we use satellites for.

١- تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية
٢- القرن العشرين

### GPS

Before satellites were invented, people had always used maps to find their way. Now, most people use GPS, **which uses a system of satellites that work together.** These send signals to receivers[4] on Earth, which work out[5] where you are. We have GPS in cars, on phones and even in some modern motorbike helmets[6]!

٣- نظام تحديد المواقع بالقمر الصناعي
٤- أجهزة استقبال
٥- يتحقق/يستنتج
٦- خوذة
٧- تقارير الطقس
٨- العروض المفضلة
٩- إشارة

### Weather reports[7]

Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. They send photos of the Earth from space. When these are put together, they show how clouds and storms are moving.

### TV and the internet

Lots of people have satellite TV so that they can watch their favourite shows[8] and sports matches. The signal[9] goes to a receiver on the house. In some areas, satellites send signals to the internet, too.

### Mobile phones

Have you ever had problems using your phone because the signal is bad? Satellite phones can work anywhere in the world. They are very useful in places far from cities, such as on mountains or in deserts.

SB Page (40)

### "Day"

I am busy, said the sea.
I am busy. Think of me
making continents[1] to be.
I am busy, said the sea.
I am busy, said the rain.
When I fall it's not in vain[2];
Wait and you will see the grain[3].
I am busy, said the rain.

I am busy, said the air,
Blowing[4] here and blowing there,
Up and down and everywhere.
I am busy,' said the air.
I am busy,' said the sun.
All my planets, every one,
Know my work is never done.
I am busy,' said the sun.
Sea and rain and air and sun,
Here's a fellow toiler[5]* one,
Whose task[6] will soon be done.

١- قارات
٢- بلا جدوى/هباءً
٣- حبة - بذرة
٤- تهب
٥- شخص مكافح
٦- مهمة

Say it correctly
* toiler
• ينطق الجزء الملون مثل نطق كلمة (toy)





WB Page (95)

### Farouk El-Baz



Scientists had done a lot of research[1] before the first person walked on the moon in 1969, and one of the most important scientists was Farouk El-Baz. He helped to plan where Apollo 11 should land on the moon. Farouk also taught astronauts which rocks[2] to take from the moon on later visits. After studying the moon, Farouk started studying deserts on the Earth. He used satellites to find rivers[3] that were under the sand, and this work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water.

١- بحث/أبحاث
٢- صخور
٣- أنهار

## Audioscript

SB Page (39)



**Voice** : Satellites have changed the way that we do a lot of things on Earth. But did you know space technology[1] is also used to make many of the objects[2] we use every day? In fact, around 50 new products[3] are invented every year using space technology. Here are some of the ones you might use.

**Narrator: One, trainers[4]**

**Voice** : In the 1970s, space scientists invented a new type of helmet. The material inside the helmet contained small bags of air, which made the helmet more comfortable and protected the astronaut better. A few years later, one of these scientists had the idea of using same type of air bags[5] in trainers. Many modern trainers now use this design.

**Narrator: Two, mobile phone cameras**

**Voice** : In 1990, space scientists invented a new sensor[6] that allowed scientists to take photos in space without using much energy. This technology is now used in the cameras in our mobile phones.

**Narrator: Three, wireless headphones[7]**

**Voice** : It's important for astronauts to be able to communicate with their team on Earth. Before the 1960s, headphones were big and uncomfortable. So space scientists designed light[8], wireless[9] headphones that astronauts could speak into without using their hands. Neil Armstrong spoke through wireless headphones when he first stepped onto the moon.

١- تكنولوجيا الفضاء
٢- أشياء
٣- منتجات
٤- حذاء رياضي
٥- أكياس هوائية
٦- جهاز استشعار
٧- سماعات الأذن
٨- خفيف
٩- لاسلكي

**Narrator :** Four, **sunglasses**

**Voice :** In 1980, scientists were working on a way to protect astronauts' eyes in space. They read that the eyes of some birds have special oil that protects them from light and helps them to see more clearly[10]. The scientists designed a lens[11] that could do the same thing. Today, this type of lens is used in sunglasses .

**Narrator :** Five, **clear braces**[12]

**Voice :** People have wanted perfect teeth since ancient times[13]. Did you know that the Ancient Egyptians had used the insides[14] of sheep to make braces for teeth? In more modern times[15], braces were made from metal, and then, in 1986 the first clear braces were created. They used a special kind of plastic that is strong even when it's very thin. It was created to protect equipment on trips into space.

١٠- بوضوح
١١- عدسة
١٢- تقويم / دعامات اسنان
١٣- العصور القديمة
١٤- الأجزاء الداخلية
١٥- العصور الحديثة

WB Page (96)

1. I watched my favourite football team yesterday, and they won!
2. Oh, there is something in my eye.
3. My friend called me, but I could not hear.
4. I asked my mother if I could go to the park, but she said no.
5. What can you see from the top of the tower?
6. Ali is Hassan's youngest son.

## Exercises on Vocabulary

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Definitions

1. A .......... is another word for a man. SB
   a. follow b. fellow c. flew d. flute
2. A .......... is a seed or seeds from a plant such as wheat. SB
   a. grain b. branch c. tree d. brain
3. The ...... is a network of satellites that helps to show the location of something on Earth. Longman
   a. GPS b. solar system c. Cairo tower d. microscope
4. .......... are things that people can wear to make their teeth straight.
   a. Helmets b. Sensors c. Grains d. Braces
5. A .......... is a large area of land in the world, such as Africa, Asia or Europe.
   a. river b. planet c. continent d. city





6. A .......... is something which can measure small amounts of light, heat, sound, etc.
   a. brace b. helmet c. sensor d. signal
7. A .......... is a special hard hat used to protect the head.
   a. brace b. satellite c. GPS d. helmet
8. A .......... is a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite.
   a. sensor b. satellite receiver c. signal d. fellow

#### Synonyms & Antonyms

9. My parents don't allow me to watch TV late. The synonym of the word "allow" is.......... 2022
   a. let b. prevent c. reject d. find
10. I searched for the lost watch in vain. "In vain" means " .......... ". Longman
    a. without success b. carelessly c. hopefully d. without failure
11. Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. "Allow... to" here is the opposite of the meaning of " .......... ". Longman
    a. prevent ...from b. come from c. think of d. persuade ...to
12. "Comfortable" and " .......... " are synonyms.
    a. tiring b. interesting c. relaxing d. boring
13. Braces are made of a new strong material. The opposite of "strong" is ..........
    a. weak b. hard c. clean d. rough
14. Farmers in this village grow special kinds of crops. The word "special" can be replaced by .......... .
    a. popular b. public c. general d. particular
15. The antonym of the word "toiler" is .......... .
    a. active b. lazy c. similar d. general

#### Suffixes & Prefixes

16. Success in life is based on hard work. When we add the suffix "-ful" to "success", we get a/an .......... . Longman
    a. verb b. adjective c. noun d. adverb
17. You should learn how to use a dictionary. To get the adjective from the verb "use", add the suffix " .......... ". Longman
    a. -ation b. - ity c. -ful d. - ment
18. The word "successful" is turned into the opposite by adding the prefix ..........
    a. in- b. dis- c. un- d. re-

19. The suffix "-less" in the word "useless" gives the .......... of the word "useful".
   a. ability   b. opposite   c. synonym   d. meaning
20. We add .......... to the verb "receive" to turn it into a noun.
   a. -ist   b. -or   c. -r   d. -ant

### Guessing the meaning from the text

21. You can't make phone calls because there is no telephone ..........
   a. wireless   b. orders   c. GPS   d. signal
22. .......... phones can work anywhere in the world, even in places that are far from cities.
   a. Satellite   b. Ground   c. Ordinary   d. Old-fashioned
23. My father works very hard to earn his living. He is a ..........
   a. boiler   b. toiler   c. mixer   d. member
24. This camera works without using wires. This means it's ..........
   a. wireless   b. harmless   c. powerless   d. hopeless
25. This scientist always discovers new facts. This means he is always doing good ..........
   a. sensor   b. receiver   c. research   d. brace

## Speaking

### Discussing satellite technology مناقشة تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية

- نسأل ونجيب عن التكنولوجيا المستخدمة بواسطة الأقمار الصناعية كالآتي:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - How have you used satellite technology this week?<br>- كيف استخدمت تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية هذا الأسبوع؟ | - I checked the weather this morning and I watched my favourite show on satellite TV last night.<br>- لقد تحريت عن حالة الطقس هذا الصباح وشاهدت عرض المفضل في التليفزيون الليلة الماضية. |
| - Have you ever had problems using your phone because the signal is bad?<br>- هل سبق لك أن واجهت مشاكل في استخدام هاتفك لأن الإشارة سيئة؟ | - No, I have never had problems because I have a satellite phone.<br>- لا، لم أواجه أي مشاكل أبدا لأن لدي هاتف يعمل بالأقمار الصناعية. |





## General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Mahmoud is talking to Amr who has been to Alex.**

**Mahmoud:** Hi Amr. Where have you been?
**Amr:** ❶ ..........................................
**Mahmoud:** ❷ ..........................................?
**Amr:** I travelled with my friends.
**Mahmoud:** How was your trip?
**Amr:** ❸ ..........................................
**Mahmoud:** How long did you stay there?
**Amr:** ❹ ..........................................
**Mahmoud:** Two weeks! ❺ ..........................................?
**Amr:** Yes, we enjoyed it very much.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**signals - had used - GPS - technology - uses - moon**

We couldn't do without satellite ❶ .......... . Before satellites were invented, people ❷ .......... maps to find their way. Now, most people use ❸ .......... , which uses a system of satellites that work together. These send ❹ .......... to receivers on Earth, which work out where you are.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .......... is a person who works very hard, usually doing hard physical work.
   a. toiler   b. rhyme   c. receiver   d. show
2. A .......... is information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
   a. verse   b. report   c. helmet   d. signal
3. The suffix "-able" turns the verb "comfort" into a/an .......... .
   a. adverb   b. preposition   c. noun   d. adjective
4. The prefix "tele-" in the word "television" means .......... .
   a. from a distance   b. near of   c. between   d. next to

5. Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. The word "allow" is the same meaning as the word " ........ ". 2022

a. let  b. make  c. stop  d. prevent

6. If you do something in ........ , you do it unsuccessfully.

a. veil  b. verse  c. vain  d. fellow

## 4 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. No one ........ (see) a photo of the far side of the moon before astronauts landed on it. SB 2022
2. I didn't go to the theatre until I ........ (finish) my work. 2022
3. Hoda did very well in the test because she ........ (revise) carefully. 2022
4. We've been waiting for Rami; he ........ (not arrived) yet. Longman
5. It ........ (rained) for two hours now. It is still raining.

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following: SB

"A review of the trainers you have bought"

(الإجابة عنه في آخر الوحدة)

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- What technology is used in the trainers?
- What are they used for?
- When / Where were they invented?
- What makes them special?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- The trainers I have bought have ..................
- They were invented in ..................................
- Most trainers today have small air bags inside them..............
- They make the trainers lighter and.........................







## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| planetarium | مبنى القبة السماوية | asteroid | كويكب (كوكب صغير) |
| photo exhibition | معرض للصور | Mars | كوكب المريخ |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| guide | مرشد | directions | إتجاهات |
| source | مصدر | Spanish sailor | بحار اسباني |
| robot space vehicle | مركبة فضائية آلية | clearer photos | صور اكثر وضوحا |
| flat (adj) | مسطح | the far side | الجانب البعيد |
| piece | قطعة | closely | عن قرب |
| public transport | المواصلات العامة | communication | تواصل / اتصال |
| achievement | إنجاز | safely | بأمان |
| informative | تثقيفي / غنى بالمعلومات | land (ed) | يهبط |
| successfully | بنجاح | appear (ed) | يظهر |
| railway | خط سكة حديد | turn (ed) | يدور |

## Important persons

| | |
|---|---|
| Al Idrisi الإدريسي (مؤسس علم الجغرافيا الحديثة) | Gerardus Mercator چيراردوس مركاتور (جغرافى بلجيكى) «ابتكر طريقة جديدة فى رسم الخرائط» |
| William Anders وليم أندرس (مهندس وطيار أمريكى) «قام بتصوير الأرض من سطح القمر» | Juan de la Cosa خوان دى لاكوسا (مستكشف ورحالة إسبانى) «أول من رسم خريطة للأمريكتين» |

## Probes & Telescopes

| | |
|---|---|
| The Hubble telescope تليسكوب هابل | The Rosetta space probe مسبار روزيتا الفضائي |
| Osiris-Rex أوسايرس - ركس (مسبار أمريكى) | The Cassini space probe مسبار كاسيني الفضائي |
| The Mars Perseverance Rover مركبة المريخ المتجولة | المسبار الفضائى هو مركبة فضائية آلية بدون طاقم تستعمل لاستكشاف الفضاء الخارجي |

## Words & Meanings

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| asteroid | كويكب (كوكب صغير) | a large rock that is flying through space |
| planetarium | مبنى القبة السماوية | a building where lights on a curved ceiling show the movement of planets and stars (١- سقف مقوس ٢- حركة) |
| map | خريطة | something people can use to follow directions |

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| far | بعيد | remote | close/near | قريب |
| appear | يظهر | turn up | disappear | يختفي |
| clear | واضح | obvious | unclear | غير واضح |
| excited | مثار / متحمس | interested | bored | شاعر بالملل |
| everything | كل شيء | the whole / all | nothing | لا شيء |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بدائات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| trans- | move across | تعطى معنى «خلال / عبر» | transport | نقل / مواصلات |
| astro- | space | تتعلق بالفضاء | astronaut | رائد فضاء |
| -ly | adj → adv | تحول الصفة الى الحال | closely /safely/successfully | عن قرب / بأمان / بنجاح |
| -ion | v → n | تحول الفعل الى الاسم | direction / exhibition / communication | اتجاه / معرض / اتصال |
| -ment | | | achievement | إنجاز |
| -ese | place | تعبر عن شخص / شئ ينتمى الى مكان | Japanese / Chinese | يابانى / صينى |
| -ing | v → adj | تحول الفعل الى الصفة | amazing | مدهش |
| -or | person | تكوّن اسم الفاعل | sailor | بحّار |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| make travel easier | يجعل السفر أسهل | broke as/ when it landed | تحطمت فور هبوطها |
| make phone calls | يجرى إتصالات هاتفية | | |
| find a way | يجد طريقة | the Earth turning | دوران الأرض |
| get directions | يعرف الاتجاهات | land safely | تهبط بسلام |
| go around | يدور حول | travel at ... speed | يسافر بسرعة ... |
| a long time after | بعد وقت طويل | above the Earth | فوق سطح الأرض |
| take them back | يعيدهم مرة أخرى | land on | يهبط على |
| How fast.....? | كم سرعة......؟ | fly through space | يطير عبر الفضاء |





## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| begin | يبدأ | began | begun |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| make | يصنع/يجعل | made | made |
| hit | يضرب/يصدم | hit | hit |
| draw | يرسم | drew | drawn |

## Language Notes

### 1) journey / trip

- **journey** رحلة طويلة (برية/بحرية/جوية)
  Ex. His wife accompanied him on his journey to America.
- **trip** رحلة قصيرة (لها غرض معين)
  هناك كلمات تأتى مع trip
  business - school - boat
  Ex. He went on a school trip to the zoo.

### 2) orbit / spin

- **orbit** يدور (حول شئ) في مدار
  Ex. The Earth orbits the sun.
- **spin** يلف - يدور (حول نفسه)
  Ex. I threw the ball and it began to spin.

### 3) explore / discover / invent

- **explore** يستكشف/يستطلع (مكان/شئ)
  Ex. Some scientists went to explore the new site.
- **discover** يكتشف (شيء موجود و لكنه غير معروف)
  Ex. Scientists are trying to discover a new cure for COVID 19.
- **invent** يخترع (شئ لم يكن موجود)
  Ex. Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I bought this souvenir on my business .......... to California.
   a. journey b. trip c. walk d. picnic
2. The Space Station .......... the Earth.
   a. flies b. runs c. spins d. orbits
3. A space robot had .......... Mars before the end of the 20th century.
   a. made b. invented c. explored d. covered

## Audioscript SB Page (41)

استمع إلى النصوص

**Guide**: This is a very interesting photo. Do you know what it is?

**Lina**: It's the moon.

**Guide**: That's right. This is a photo of the moon, but it's an unusual photo. This isn't what we see when we look into the sky at night. This is the far side of the moon.

**Inju**: So this is the side of the moon we can't see from Earth.

**Guide**: That's right. No one had seen this side of the moon before 1959. That's when the Russian spacecraft, Luna 3 took the first photos of it. As soon as the photos were taken, they appeared in newspapers around the world. The photos weren't very clear, but everyone was very excited to see them. Then, in 1965, Russia sent Zond 3, another spacecraft to orbit the moon. It took 25 photos and they were much clearer.

١- مرشد
٢- غير عادي
٣- الجانب البعيد
٤- روسي
٥- واضح
٦- خرائط
٧- هبط على
٨- بنجاح

**Lina**: Has anyone made a map of the moon?

**Guide**: Good question! From 1966 to 1967, the USA sent spacecraft to orbit the moon and take photos. They used these to create maps of the moon. At the same time, Russia created maps using the photos from Zond 3.

**Inju**: Were all of the photos of the far side of the moon taken by spacecraft?

**Guide**: No, soon after the maps were created, astronauts from the Apollo 8 spacecraft became the first people to see the far side of the moon. They took photos of the moon as they orbited it.

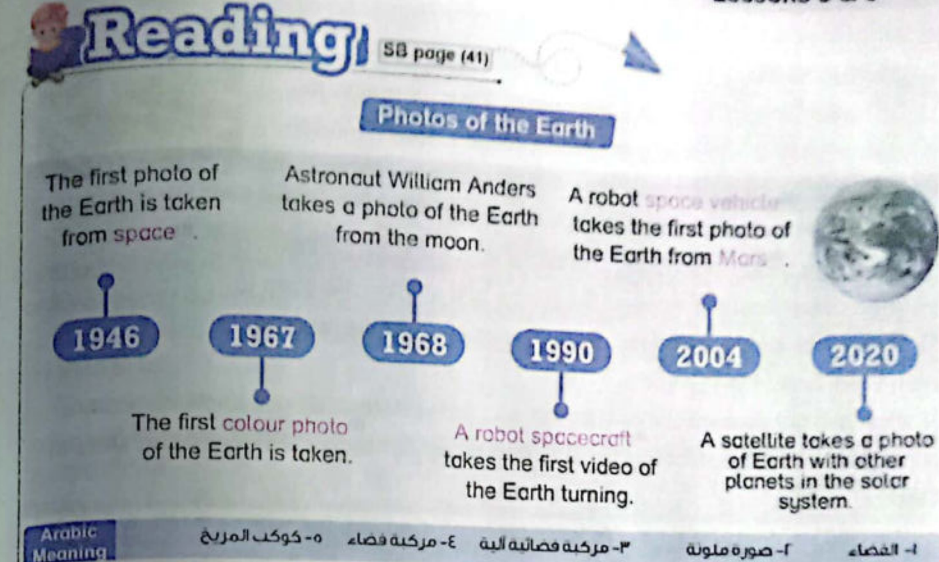
**Lina**: Have any spacecraft landed on the far side of the moon?

**Guide**: Yes. NASA sent a spacecraft to the far side of the moon in 1962, but it broke when it landed. A long time after this, in 2019, a Chinese spacecraft successfully landed on the far side of the moon.





## Reading SB page (41)




SB Page (42)

### The International Space Station

**What is the International Space Station?**

The International Space Station is a huge spacecraft 70 km above the Earth. It's a place where astronauts live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the Space Station for about six months.

**How fast does it travel?**

The Space Station orbits the Earth every day. It travels at 27,000 kilometres an hour. That means that it goes around the Earth every 90 minutes! It's one of the brightest objects in the sky and you can see it without using a telescope.

١- الأكثر إشراقاً/سطوعاً
٢- أشياء
٣- قطعة
٤- التواصل / الاتصال

**When was it built?**

Lots of countries worked together to make the Space Station and astronauts from all around the world have stayed on it. The first piece of the Space Station went into space in 1998. Since the first astronauts arrived in 2000, more than 200 astronauts from 19 countries have stayed there.

**What is life like on the space station?**

Life on the Space Station is different from life on Earth in many ways. In space, washing, sleeping and eating can be difficult! But communication isn't a problem. Astronauts can send emails or make phone calls to their families back home.

SB Page (43)



**My trip to the planetarium[1] By Hassan El-Sayed**

Last year, I went to the planetarium in Alexandria with my cousin, Magdy. I was really excited because I hadn't been to a planetarium before. Magdy lives in Alexandria, so he had visited the planetarium a few times with his family.

We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egypt[2]. We learned about how the Ancient Egyptians had studied the stars to find out when the Nile flooded. They had even used the stars to help them build the pyramids.

After the film, we went to an exhibition[3] about Mars. Did you know a space robot had explored[4] Mars before the end of the 20th century? It landed on Mars in 1997.

We had an amazing time. We were there all morning, but when we left, we hadn't seen everything! I'd like to go back there again one day.

١- مبنى القبة السماوية
٢- مصر القديمة
٣- معرض
٤- استكشف




* planetarium — ينطق حرف (a) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطقه في كلمة square
* exhibition — ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت «إكس» مع عدم نطق حرف (h)

WB Page (37)

**The history of maps**



**100s** : Ptolemy draws[1] one of the first. It shows the area around the Mediterranean[2].

**1100s** : Al Idrisi, from North Africa, draws maps in a book called Tabula Rogeriana. It shows the world as a circle[3].

**1500s** : The Spanish sailor[4] Juan de la Cosa draws the first map to show America. Gerardus Mercator finds a way to draw the round world on flat paper[5].

**1800s** : Roads and railways[6] make travel easier. Maps become smaller and better.

**1950s** : The first satellite photos are taken of the Earth and maps give much more information.

**2005** : People start to use maps on their phones and computers. They use satellites to get directions[7].

١- يرسم
٢- البحر الأبيض المتوسط
٣- دائرة
٤- بحّار أسباني
٥- ورقة مسطحة
٦- خطوط سكة حديد
٧- اتجاهات





WB Page (37)

**Journey to Bennu**



In 2020, a spacecraft landed on Bennu[1]. Bennu is an asteroid[2], which is a large rock that is flying through space. The spacecraft, called Osiris-Rex, took small rocks from Bennu and will take them back to the Earth in 2023.

This was an amazing achievement[3]. Bennu is more than 300 million kilometres from the Earth, but it is very small. It is only 510 metres from one side to the other! Osiris-Rex left the Earth in 2016 and had orbited Bennu for nearly two years before it found a place to land safely.

Then, in 2021, Osiris-Rex left Bennu for its journey home. This will be around 2.3 billion kilometres, because the spacecraft must orbit the sun twice before it can land on the Earth.

So why has Osiris-Rex made this difficult journey? Scientists think that the rocks from Bennu could help them to understand how the Earth was made. Scientists also think that understanding Bennu will help them know where the asteroid is going. It is possible[4] that it will hit the Earth, although not for many years!

١- كويكب بينو
٢- كويكب
٣- إنجاز
٤- ممكن

## Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Definitions**

1. A ........... is a building where lights on a curved ceiling show the movement of planets and stars.
   a. ship  b. space station  c. robot  d. planetarium
2. A/An ........... is a large rock that is flying through space.
   a. asteroid  b. space ship  c. astronaut  d. astronomer

**Synonyms & Antonyms**

3. The synonym of "far" is ...........
   a. remote  b. near  c. close  d. here
4. The dog appeared suddenly. The antonym of the verb "appear" is ...........
   a. reappear  b. run  c. die  d. disappear
5. "Clear" and ........... have the same meaning.
   a. difficult  b. obvious  c. far  d. hard
6. "..........." is the synonym of the word "interested".
   a. Excited  b. Connected  c. Wanted  d. Bored
7. Now, we can see everything in space. The opposite of "everything" is .........
   a. something  b. anything  c. thing  d. nothing

### Suffixes & Prefixes

8. The opposite of the word "appear" is formed by adding ..........
   a. ir-   b. im-   c. un-   d. dis-
9. We add the suffix .......... to make an adverb from the adjective "successful".
   a. -ic   b. -ly   c. -y   d. -al
10. To turn the verb "amaze" into an adjective, we delete "e" and add the suffix ..........
   a. -ly   b. -er   c. -ing   d. -or
11. We add the prefix .......... to the word "port" to mean "move across".
   a. trans-   b. astro-   c. tech-   d. dis-
12. We add the suffix .......... to the verb "direct" to turn it into a noun.
   a. -ion   b. -ly   c. -ive   d. -er
13. The prefix "astro-" in the word "astronaut" refers to .......... .
   a. sea   b. space   c. land   d. sky

### Guessing the meaning from the text

14. The moon moves around the Earth. This means it .......... the Earth.
   a. spins   b. runs   c. orbits   d. sails
15. I went to a place where I could see all the planets clearly. This means I went to the .......... .
   a. zoo   b. aquarium   c. planetarium   d. garden
16. Astronauts travel to space in a vehicle. This means they travel in the ..........
   a. spacecraft   b. house   c. tent   d. cave

## Speaking

### Discussing when events happened مناقشة متى وقعت الأحداث

- نسأل ونجيب عن تواريخ وقوع الأحداث في الماضي كما في الأمثلة التالية:

| Question | Answer |
| --- | --- |
| - When was the first photo of the Earth taken from space?<br>- متى تم التقاط أول صورة للأرض من الفضاء؟ | - The first photo of the Earth was taken from space in 1946.<br>- التقطت أول صورة للأرض من الفضاء عام 1946. |
| - Who took a photo of the Earth from the moon in 1968?<br>- من الذي التقط صورة للأرض من القمر في عام ١٩٦٨؟ | - Astronaut William Anders took a photo of the Earth from the moon in 1968.<br>- التقط رائد الفضاء ويليام أندرس صورة للأرض من القمر عام ١٩٦٨. |





## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Yasmin and Malak are at the planetarium.**

Malak : What are these photos?
Yasmin : ❶ .......................................................... .
Malak : ❷ .......................................................... ?
Yasmin : This photo of the Earth was taken from space in 1946.
Malak : ❸ .......................................................... ?
Yasmin : It was taken from the moon in 1968.
Malak : How was this first video of the Earth turning taken in 1990?
Yasmin : ❹ .......................................................... .
Malak : A robot spacecraft! ❺ .......................................... .
Yasmin : Yes, you are right. It's a great achievement.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**remote - have - solar - sun - have been - near**

Everyone knows about the ❶.......... system and its planets. They're in space, orbiting the ❷........... Astronomers ❸.......... discovered millions of stars in our solar system. Those stars are very ❹...........

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .......... is something people can use to follow directions.
   a. map   b. telescope   c. collection   d. brace
2. The .......... will take the tourists round the museum.
   a. astronaut   b. guide   c. toiler   d. receiver
3. The antonym of "clear" is .......... .
   a. obvious   b. interesting   c. common   d. unclear
4. We can get the noun from the verb "achieve" by adding the suffix .......... .
   a. -tion   b. -er   c. -ment   d. -or
5. He works on a ship in the sea. This means he is a / an .......... .
   a. astronaut   b. pilot   c. sailor   d. astronomer

6. Everyone can use buses and trains to travel from one place to another. This means they can use .................. transport.
   a. public   b. private   c. uncommon   d. bad

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Before I left school last time, I .................. (say) goodbye to all my friends. WB
2. She found a mistake .................. (before) she had reread the answer. WB
3. I have been .................. (work) as a teacher of English for 13 years now.
4. .................. (Have) Ramy tidied his room before he started studying?
5. I .................. (didn't say) nothing until she had finished talking.

**5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:** WB

"A review of an article about (Mars) one of the planets in the solar system"

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

.........................................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What is Mars known as?
- How far is Mars from the sun?
- How is the weather in Mars?
- What do scientists want to know?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- Mars is known as "the Red Planet" because..............
- Mars is the fourth planet from......................
- Mars has weather like......................
- Scientists want to know......................





# Review



## Key Vocabulary

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| astronaut رائد فضاء | braces تقويم / دعامات (للأسنان) | wireless لاسلكي |
| astronomer عالم فى الفلك | continent قارة | planetarium مبنى القبة السماوية |
| gravity الجاذبية الأرضية | grain حبة - بذرة - حبوب | photo exhibition معرض للصور |
| lens عدسة | helmet خوذة | asteroid كويكب (كوكب صغير) |
| researcher باحث | research بحث / أبحاث | Mars كوكب المريخ |
| satellite قمر صناعى | sensor جهاز استشعار | explore (d) يستكشف |
| solar system النظام الشمسى | signal إشارة | recycle (d) يعيد تدوير |
| space station محطة فضائية | fellow رجل / رفيق | flood (ed) يفيض (النهر) |
| telescope تليسكوب | toiler شخص مكافح | orbit (ed) يدور حول (فى مدار) |
| GPS نظام تحديد المواقع | in vain بلا جدوى / هباء | |

## Language

### 1- Remember: The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I / We/ You / They / اسم جمع | + | have ('ve) | + | past participle |
| He / She / It / اسم مفرد | | has ('s) | | التصريف الثالث للفعل |

Ex. We have watched a play. Ex. She hasn't completed her study.
Ex. Have you ever been to London?

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام فى الحالات الآتية:
١- لوصف حدث تم فى الماضى دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية فى الماضى past experiences):
٢- لوصف حدث تم فى الماضى ولا يزال أثره موجود:
٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثًا «أى قبل قليل»
- لاحظ استخدام الكلمات الدالة على الزمن واماكنها:

| | |
|---|---|
| just توا (فى الجملة المثبتة) | ever من قبل (فى السؤال والنفى) |
| never أبدا فى النفى | yet حتى الآن (فى آخر النفى/السؤال) |
| since (منذ) + نقطة بداية الحدث | for (المدة) + مدة زمنية |
| recently / lately (حديثا / مؤخرا) فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة او السؤال أو بين جزئى الزمن | already بالفعل فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة أو بين جزئى الزمن |

## 2- The present perfect continuous tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

• يتكون من:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have / has + been + V-ing
He / She / It / اسم مفرد

Ex. I have been playing tennis for 2 hours now.

## 3- The past perfect tense زمن الماضي التام

• يتكون من:

Subject فاعل + had + past participle. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. Ex. After I had finished my work, I went home.

Ex. I hadn't seen her before she visited us.

Ex. Had she done her homework before she went out?

• يستخدم زمن الماضي التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف فعل تم في الماضي وانتهى قبل حدوث فعل آخر.

٢- لوصف حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي

لتوضيح ترتيب الأحداث في الماضي، يمكن استخدام الروابط الزمنية التالية:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| had + p.p. ماض تام | + | past simple ماض بسيط | + | Before قبل / By the time قبل / When عندما |
| Past simple ماضِ بسيط | + | had +p.p. ماضِ تام | + | After بعد / As soon as بمجرد أن / When عندما |
| had + p.p. ماضِ تام | + | till / until حتى | + | Past simple ماض بسيط (منفي غالباً) |

## Speaking

### 1) Discussing life experiences: مناقشة التجارب الحياتية

**Question**
- Have you ever used a telescope?

**Answer**
- Yes, I used a telescope on the science trip last year.





### 2) Discussing satellite technology مناقشة تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية

**Question**
- How have you used satellite technology this week?

**Answer**
- I checked the weather this morning and I watched my favourite show on satellite TV last night.

### 3) Discussing when events happened مناقشة متى وقعت الأحداث

**Question**
- When was the first photo of the Earth taken from space?

**Answer**
- The first photo of the Earth was taken from space in 1946.

# General Exercises on Unit 10

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Basmala and Zahraa are talking about space.**

Basmala : Hi Zahraa! What are you doing?

Zahraa : ❶ ............................................................

Basmala : ❷ ............................................................?

Zahraa : Because I'm interested in stars and planets.

Basmala : ❸ ............................................................?

Zahraa : Yes, I have already visited the planetarium.

Basmala : Did you use the telescope?

Zahraa : ❹ ............................................................

Basmala : Wow! What did you see with it?

Zahraa : ❺ ............................................................

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**astronaut - have been - astronomer - had been - station - make**

The space is no longer a big secret. Scientists ❶.......... trying to discover more and more about space. In the past, Neil Armstrong was the first ❷.......... to walk on the moon. In 1990, the world's first space ❸.......... went into space. Still, we expect scientists to ❹.......... achievements.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .............. is information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
   a. gravity b. signal c. station d. lens
2. The synonym of the word "strong" is ..............
   a. unhealthy b. slow c. powerful d. weak
3. The word .............. gives the opposite of the adjective "ancient".
   a. old b. ugly c. modern d. beauty
4. We add the suffix .............. to the verb "sail" to turn it into a noun.
   a. -ly b. -ist c. -or d. -able
5. We add the prefix .............. to the word "vision" to mean from a distance.
   a. re- b. dis- c. tele- d. inter-
6. They collected the photos in one place. This means they showed them in a photo ..............
   a. exhibition b. exam c. planet d. space

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Before satellites were invented, people .............. (always use) maps to find their way. SB
2. After .............. (returned) home, he had a shower.
3. I didn't go out until I .............. (finished) my homework.
4. Astronomers .............. (have studied) space with their eyes before the telescope was invented. SB
5. Students were amazed to know that the ancient Egyptians .............. (were discovering) a star called Sirius. SB

## 4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A biography of a person you like "an astronaut"

يمكن من خلال الإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- What is the astronaut's name?
- What is his nationality?
- How often did he travel to space?
- Do you want to be an astronaut in the future? Why / Why not?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- I am going to write about a famous astronaut who is called..............
- He is from..............
- He travelled to a space more than..............
- I want to be an astronaut in the future because..............





# Al Azhar Test



## 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Eyad and Adam are talking about spending their spare time.**

Adam : What do you do in your spare time, Eyad?
Eyad : ❶..............................
Adam : Reading stories! That's wonderful ❷..............................?
Eyad : I prefer short stories.
Adam : ❸..............................?
Eyad : Sometimes at home and sometimes at school library.
Adam : I will bring you some interesting ones.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**photos - can - storms - are - signal - land**

Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. They send ❶.............. of the earth from space. When these are put together,they show how clouds and ❷.............. are moving. Lots of people have satellite TVs so that they ❸.............. watch their favourite shows and sports matches. The ❹.............. goes to a receiver on the top of houses.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many people are interested in learning English. It is known that it is a very important language as it is spoken all over the world. It isn't difficult to learn English. You will use it even when you join the university, but unless you use English, you will forget it. The English language gives us the chance to read English books and many wonderful stories. Speaking English fluently will help you when you travel to foreign countries to be able to communicate with people there. It is also difficult to use the internet without knowing much about English. It's better for all of us to learn and improve **it** well.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
..............................
2. What will happen if you don't use English?
..............................
3. Why do we use English when we travel to foreign countries?
..............................

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. It is ............ to learn English.
   a. difficult  b. easy  c. useless  d. bad
5. The underlined word "it" refers to ............
   a. the internet  b. a story  c. the university  d. English

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ............ helps us to see very distant objects well.
   a. thermometer  b. telescope  c. mirror  d. microscope
2. Astronauts can fly in a space ............
   a. station  b. telescope  c. craft  d. wire
3. They have been ............ for three hours now.
   a. study  b. studies  c. studied  d. studying
4. My father helped me do my homework after he ............ his work.
   a. has finished  b. finishes  c. will finish  d. had finished

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I went to the club after I ............ (have finished) my work.
2. As soon as I had heard the bad news, I ............ (had called) my friend.
3. I have never ............ (rode) a horse.

## 6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The International Space Station"

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What is the International Space Station?
- Where is it?
- How was it built?
- What does life look like on the space station?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- The International Space Station is a huge ....................
- The Space Station orbits ....................
- Lots of countries worked together to ....................
- Life on the Space Station is different from ....................





# Al Azhar Exercises



## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### A Vocabulary

1. Astronauts can stay on the ............ for a few months. SB
   a. lens  b. signal  c. space station  d. telescope
2. A satellite sends a ............ to a receiver on Earth. SB
   a. sensor  b. signal  c. brace  d. helmet
3. The Ancient Egyptians ............ that a star called Sirius appeared in the sky just before the Nile flooded. SB
   a. orbited  b. recycled  c. invented  d. discovered
4. The Ancient Egyptians used a star called Sirius to find out when the Nile ............ . SB
   a. flooded  b. recycled  c. damaged  d. invented
5. Don't worry, the ............ will show us the right way. WB
   a. GPS  b. weather report  c. telescope  d. camera
6. The moon ............ the Earth once every 27 days. WB
   a. revises  b. recycles  c. spins  d. orbits

### Longman Exercises

7. We should ............ rubbish that people produce.
   a. recycle  b. result  c. think  d. show
8. In ............ times, people knew what time of the year it was by looking at where the stars were in the sky.
   a. ancient  b. modern  c. new  d. future
9. ............ is the force that attracts people or things to the centre of the Earth.
   a. Flying  b. Gravity  c. Recycling  d. Pollution
10. A ............ is a spacecraft where people live and work.
    a. satellite  b. train station  c. rocket  d. space station
11. There are eight planets in our ............ .
    a. solar energy  b. solar system  c. stars  d. continent
12. An astronaut is a person who ............ .
    a. controls a ship  b. studies astronomy
    c. travels into space  d. discovers monuments

13. A/An .......... is an expert in or student of astronomy.
a. astronomer b. engineer c. pilot d. astronaut

14. Asia is the largest .......... .
a. capital b. island c. continent d. country

15. The first photo of the Earth was .......... in 1946.
a. invented b. repeated c. done d. taken

## Bit by Bit Exercises

16. I watched my favourite TV .......... yesterday.
a. shoe b. show c. space d. force

17. If something is .......... you don't need to plug it in.
a. wiring b. wireless c. wiry d. wired

18. A/An .......... is a person who studies something carefully.
a. cook b. pilot c. researcher d. traveller

19. The word won sounds like one, but has a/an .......... meaning.
a. impossible b. similar c. useless d. different

20. A sensor .......... information.
a. reads b. hides c. destroys d. damages

21. You can't make a phone call because there is no telephone .......... .
a. signal b. wireless c. information d. map

22. This camera takes good photos because it has got a very good .......... .
a. lens b. telescope c. planet d. source

## B Language

23. Heba .......... her housework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet. WB
a. has done b. has been doing c. doing d. did

24. Omar .......... reading a new story for an hour; he is still reading it. WB
a. has b. has been c. were d. have been

25. Hoda did very well in the test because she .......... carefully. WB
a. revise b. revises c. had revised d. revising

26. I have been .......... English for 10 years now.
a. study b. studied c. studying d. studies

27. It has been raining .......... 2 hours now.
a. since b. for c. ago d. never





28. I haven't seen my friend Omar .......... .
a. yet b. already c. just d. since

29. I have .......... done my homework.
a. yet b. already c. for d. since

30. Amira hasn't visited Mecca .......... 2018.
a. for b. since c. ever d. already

31. Arwa has never .......... alone before.
a. travelled b. travel c. travelling d. travels

32. The children have .......... done their homework. They finished it a moment ago.
a. just b. never c. since d. yet

33. Have you .......... met a famous person?
a. ever b. for c. never d. since

34. She went home .......... she had done the shopping.
a. before b. the same time c. until d. after

35. .......... we had arrived home, we had dinner.
a. Before b. As soon as c. Since d. Till

36. Before .......... to bed, I had done my homework.
a. went b. had gone c. going d. go

37. I went to the club after I .......... my work.
a. finish b. have finished c. had finished d. finishing

38. I didn't go out until I .......... my homework.
a. had finished b. have finished c. finish d. finishing

39. Before my father left, he .......... his breakfast.
a. have b. has c. had had d. having

40. Has she ever .......... to Aswan?
a. be b. been c. being d. is

41. .......... your father got a new job in a big company?
a. Have b. Did c. Does d. Has

42. He didn't telephone me until he .......... heard the news.
a. had b. was c. has d. have

# Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

1- "A short story about what you did last weekend" (Lessons 1 & 2)

I had a good weekend. Before I went to bed on Saturday, I had read a book. It was about a space journey. People have been interested in studying space since ancient times. It was possible to see only some stars and planets with the eye. Then, in 1608, the telescope was invented. The Italian astronomer Galileo improved the design. He made the lenses stronger so that he could study the planets in our solar system. I like this kind of books because I like everything about the space. I have been dreaming to be an astronaut since I was young.

2- "A review of the trainers you have bought" (Lessons 3 & 4)

It was my birthday, and my mother took me to the shoe store to buy new trainers for me. Once we were there, I found a lot of trainers on the wall, but I chose my favourite. I put them on quickly, so I could feel how they were on my feet. They were tight at first, but they stretched to fit my feet after a few weeks of wearing them. Most trainers today have small air bags inside them. The idea of bags of air in modern trainers came from space helmets. It is used to make the trainers lighter.

3- "A review of an article about one of the planets in the solar system" (Lessons 5 & 6)

Mars is known as the 'the Red Planet' because it's red! Mars is the second smallest planet in the solar system. Mars is the fourth planet from the sun. Mars is much colder than our own planet. Like the Earth, Mars has weather. Scientists want to know if Mars could support life now or in the future. it has two moons. Mars has been known since ancient times. Several scientists have visited Mars. Mars is the only planet we have sent spacecrafts to. They could take many pictures of it.

4- "A biography of a famous astronaut"

I am going to write about a famous astronaut. He is called Neil Armstrong. He was born in the USA. He studied space engineering at university. Armstrong worked for NASA as a pilot. He was chosen to join a new group of astronauts who would travel into space. He was the first person to walk on the moon. Armstrong left NASA to take a teaching job at the university. At the age of 82, he died on August 25, 2012.

5- "The International Space Station" (Al Azhar)

The International space Station is a huge spaceship. It is located in space. Astronauts spend about six months on the station. Life on the Station isn't easy as we may think. They don't cook or drink as easy as we do. When we ask any astronaut about the best thing in his or her life, he or she would say "space".

6- "A short story about a visit to the planetarium" (Test)

Last year, I went to the planetarium in Alexandria with my family. I was very excited because I had never seen a planetarium before. We saw a wonderful film about Ancient Egypt. We knew that the Ancient Egyptians predicted when the Nile would flood through stars. They had even used the stars to help them in building the Pyramids. We went to a Mars exhibition after the movie. We had a fantastic experience. We stayed there all morning, but when it was time to go, we hadn't seen everything! I'd like to go there again one day.



Unit 10





## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue**

**Younis is searching for information on the internet.**

Tarek : What are you doing, Younis?
Younis : ❶ ........................................................ .
Tarek : ❷ ........................................................ ?
Younis : I'm searching for information about telescopes.
Tarek : ❸ ........................................................ ?
Younis : We use them to see things that are far away.
Tarek : Did you use it before?
Younis : ❹ ........................................................ .
Tarek : Can you show me a photo of a telescope?
Younis : ❺ ........................................................ .

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**planets - telescope - had left - trip - left - sensor**

Yesterday, we went on a school ❶ ...... to the planetarium. Before we ❷ ......, our science teacher had given us a lecture about it. There, we used a huge ❸ ........ and could see the ❹ ........ .

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Mars is a cold planet in our solar system. Earth and Jupiter are Mars' neighbouring planets. It is half the size of Earth. Mars is sometimes called the "Red Planet". Like Earth, Mars has weather.

Mars is the fourth planet from the Sun. There are signs of ancient floods on Mars, but now water mostly exists in icy dirt and thin clouds. The scientists have the thought that Mars was much wetter and warmer, with a thicker atmosphere, billions of years ago. Scientists want to know if Mars may have had living things in the past. **They** also want to know if Mars could support life now or in the future.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is mainly about ..................
 a. solar system  b. Earth  c. Mars  d. Jupiter
2. The underlined word **"They"** refers to ..................
 a. stars  b. planets  c. scientists  d. volcanoes
3. Earth is .................. than Mars.
 a. bigger  b. smaller  c. older  d. colder

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What is Mars called?
..................
5. Summarize the second paragraph in two sentences.
..................
6. What do scientists want to know about Mars?
..................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Someone who studies the stars and planets is called a/an ..................
 a. astronaut  b. spacecraft  c. accountant  d. astronomer
2. The .................. is a network of satellites that helps to show the location of something on Earth.
 a. GPS  b. solar system  c. Cairo tower  d. microscope
3. Living in a coastal city is very comfortable. The word "comfortable" can be replaced by ..................
 a. relaxing  b. tiring  c. annoying  d. boring
4. The verb "research" is turned into a noun for a person by adding the suffix ..........
 a. -ly  b. -ness  c. -er  d. -ion
5. If one word .................. with another one, it means that they have a very similar sound.
 a. organises  b. arranges  c. balances  d. rhymes
6. Scientists can see the planets and stars very near. This means they use a ..................
 a. telescope  b. sensor  c. planetarium  d. system





**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. After we .................. (collect) useful information about the stars, we did our research.
2. Has your father .................. (get) a new job? SB
3. Munir .................. (not try) Japanese food before he went to the new Japanese restaurant.
4. I wrote a reply to the email as soon as I .................. (have) received it. WB
5. I have learnt English .................. (since) nine years.

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

A short story about a trip you had last year "to the planetarium"

..................
..................
..................
..................
..................
..................
..................
..................

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- When did you go to the planetarium?
- How did you go there?
- What did you see there?
- Did you enjoy it?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, I went ..................
- I went by..................
- I saw all the planets and stars..................
- It was an enjoyable day..................



# The Modern World








# Media now and in the past

## Objectives

**Reading:**
News stories from different sources; a text about the first female broadcaster; an interview about working in the media

**Writing:**
A news report; an email asking about working in the media; a biography about a person in the media

**Listening:**
A discussion about jobs in the media; a radio news report; different opinions about a story in the news; a conversation about a new restaurant

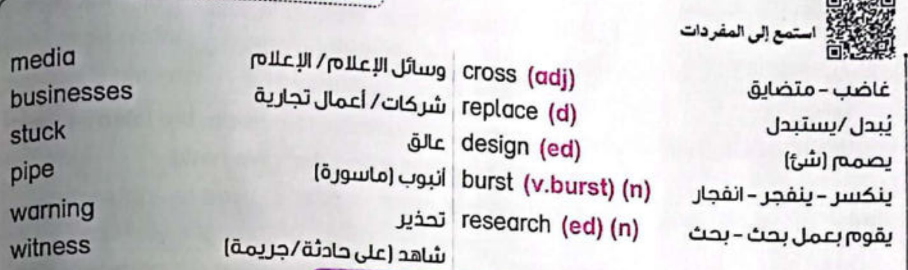
**Speaking:**
Discussing types of news; describing a picture from the news; reporting news

**Language:**
*Reported speech*

**Life Skills:**
Critical thinking

SB / WB Answers جميع إجابات كتاب الطالب والتدريبات متاحة في آخر الكتاب






## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| media | وسائل الإعلام / الإعلام | cross (adj) | غاضب - متضايق |
| businesses | شركات / أعمال تجارية | replace (d) | يُبدل / يستبدل |
| stuck | عالق | design (ed) | يصمم (شئ) |
| pipe | أنبوب (ماسورة) | burst (v.burst) (n) | ينكسر - ينفجر - انفجار |
| warning | تحذير | research (ed) (n) | يقوم بعمل بحث - بحث |
| witness | شاهد (على حادثة/جريمة) | | |

### Jobs in the media

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| camera operator | مشغل الكاميرا (مصور تليفزيوني) | radio presenter | مقدم برامج إذاعية |
| journalist | صحفي | web designer | مصمم مواقع/صفحات على الانترنت |
| newsreader | مذيع / قارئ نشرة الأخبار | editor | رئيس التحرير - محرر |
| photographer | مصور فوتوغرافي | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| news programme | برنامج إخباري | article | مقال |
| news website | موقع إخباري على الإنترنت | politely | بأدب |
| normally | عادةً / بشكل طبيعي - معتاد | rather than | بدلاً من |
| social media | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي | owner | مالك (المكان - الشئ) |
| radio show | عرض إذاعي | injure (d) | يصيب / يجرح |
| unfortunately | لسوء الحظ | trust (ed) (n) | يثق - ثقة |
| local shops | متاجر محلية | flood (ed) (n) | يفيض / يغمر بالمياه - فيضان |
| shopping centre | مركز تجاري | prefer (red) | يفضل |

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| **camera operator** مشغل الكاميرا (مصور تليفزيوني) | - a person who controls a television camera.<br>- a person whose job is to film things for television, film, etc. (1- يصور فيلم) |
| **photographer** مصور فوتوغرافي | a person whose job is to take photographs. |
| **journalist** صحفي | a person whose job is to write news and articles for newspapers, magazines, websites, etc. |
| **newsreader** مذيع / قارئ نشرة الاخبار | a person whose job is to read the news on TV or radio |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **burst** | ينكسر - ينفجر | break open suddenly. or make something do this |
| **cross** | غاضب - متضايق | angry or annoyed |
| **editor** | رئيس تحرير - محرر | a person whose job is to choose what should be in a newspaper, magazine, etc. and who checks the information and language |
| **media** | وسائل الإعلام | newspapers, magazines, radio, television, the internet, and other forms of communication that give news |
| **pipe** | أنبوب (ماسورة) | a long, thin piece of metal or plastic, used to carry water, gas, etc. often under the ground or through buildings |
| **warning** | تحذير | something that tells you about something dangerous or bad that might happen |
| **radio presenter** | مقدم برامج إذاعية | - a person who talks on a radio programme<br>- a person whose job is to introduce programmes on the radio |
| **stuck** | عالق | not able to be moved |
| **witness** | شاهد | a person who has seen an accident, crime, etc. and can tell the police about it |

٢- متضايق
٣- يتحقق من

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite | المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| late | متأخر | delayed | early | مبكر |
| politely | بأدب | kindly | impolitely | بطريقة غير مهذبة |
| unfortunately | لسوء الحظ | unluckily | fortunately / luckily | لحسن الحظ |
| cross | غاضب/متضايق | angry | calm | هادئ |
| stuck | عالق | trapped | released | متحرر |
| normally | عادةً | usually | unusually | بشكل غير معتاد |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | Examples |
|---|---|---|
| un- | **opposite** تعطى عكس المعنى | unfortunately لسوء الحظ |
| im- | | impolitely بطريقة غير مهذبة |
| -ist | **person** تكون اسم الفاعل | journalist صحفي |
| -er | | photographer / designer / presenter<br>مصور/مصمم/مقدم برامج |
| -or | | editor / operator / actor<br>محرر/مشغل/ممثل |
| -ing | **v → n** تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | warning / shopping تحذير/التسوق |
| -ly | **adj → adv** تحول الصفة إلى الحال | normally / unfortunately / politely<br>بشكل طبيعى/للأسف/بأدب |





## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| get news | يحصل على الأخبار | in the middle of | فى وسط |
| (be) stuck | عالق (فى الطريق من الزحام) | drive on the road | يقود على الطريق |
| give reasons for | يعطي أسباب لـ ... | on a motorbike | يركب دراجة نارية |
| control a camera | يتحكم في الكاميرا | at first | أولاً |
| take away | يبعد/يزيل | as quickly as possible | بأسرع ما يمكن |
| No way! | مستحيل! | break down | يتعطل |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| stick | يعلق - يلتصق | stuck | stuck |
| burst | ينكسر - يتدفق - ينفجر | burst | burst |
| hit | يصطدم - يضرب | hit | hit |
| steal | يسرق | stole | stolen |

## Language Notes

### 1) prefer

- prefer + (V + ing) / (n) يفضّل
  Ex. She prefers (having) black coffee in the morning.
- would prefer + (to + inf) / (n) يفضّل ان
  Ex. Fatma would prefer (to) work in a radio station.

### 2) on time / in time

- on time في الموعد المحدد تماماً
  Ex. He goes to school on time.
- in time في الوقت المناسب
  Ex. The doctor arrived in time and saved the patient.

### 3) cross

- cross (v) (ed) يَعبر
  Ex. Be careful before you cross this road.
- cross (adj) غاضب - متضايق
  Ex. I was cross because my friend broke my camera.

### 4) steal / rob

- steal يسرق (يأتى بعدها الشىء المسروق)
- rob يسرق (يأتى بعدها الشخص أو المكان الذى تمت سرقته)

Ex. The thief stole my money.
The thief robbed me of my money.
The thief robbed the bank.

Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My mother would prefer .............. me studying at home.
   a. to help  b. helps  c. helping  d. to helping
2. We should go to the airport .............. time.
   a. to  b. with  c. into  d. in
3. His parents were .............. when he failed the exam.
   a. happy  b. cross  c. pleased  d. ugly
4. The police are looking for the man who .............. the company.
   a. stole  b. gave  c. broke  d. robbed
5. Thieves .............. paintings from the art gallery.
   a. crossed  b. robbed  c. stole  d. thought

## Audioscript

SB Page (7)

استمع إلى المفردات

**Fatma** : What job do you want to do when you are older, Reem? I've been thinking about studying media. I love writing and I'm interested in the news so I think a journalist would be a good job for me.

**Reem** : You'd be amazing at that, Fatma! I think you would be good on the TV as a newsreader[1] too!

**Fatma** : No way[2]! I'd hate[3] to be on TV, I would be so nervous[4].

**Reem** : A radio presenter[5] then? That would be cool[6]! I'd like to do that.

**Fatma** : Yes, I'd quite like to have a radio show[7], but I think I'd prefer to work for a newspaper.

**Reem** : Online news is the future I think! No one will buy newspapers in a few years. I'm going to study to be a web designer[8].

**Fatma** : Hmmm, well, maybe I will work for online news then. I'll write the stories and you can design the website[9]!

**Reem** : Great! And your brother can be the photographer, he likes taking photos!

**Fatma** : Good idea!

١- قارئ الأخبار
٢- مستحيل
٣- يكره
٤- متوتر
٥- مقدم برامج إذاعية
٦- رائع
٧- عرض إذاعي
٨- مصمم مواقع على الإنترنت
٩- موقع على الإنترنت





SB Page (46)

### FLOOD IN CITY CENTRE

Yesterday morning, part of the city centre[1] was [illegible][2] for more than six hours after a large water pipe [illegible][3]. The road and all the shops in the shopping centre[4] were closed all day.

A local witness[5] said: "There was a lot of water in the road and the shops. Some people were still trying to drive on the road. I saw a man on a new, blue motorbike who was stuck[6]. He was really cross[7]."

The water has now gone and the road is open. They will replace[8] the pipe[9] today with a new, strong pipe. Some of the shops are still closed while the owners clean their [illegible][10].

١- وسط البلد
٢- غارق في المياه
٣- انكسرت - انفجرت
٤- مركز تجاري
٥- شاهد
٦- عالق
٧- غاضب/متضايق
٨- يستبدل
٩- أنبوب/ماسورة
١٠- شركات/متاجر

**Say it correctly**

*burst — ينطق حرف u في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق حرف الـi في كلمة bird

SB Page (46)

Newsreader: "Welcome to the lunchtime news. This is Mariam El-Shazly. This morning at around 10 am, a water pipe burst outside the Shabana Supermarket. The road is closed while workers try to fix[1] the pipe. Some of the local shops are flooded[2] and some cars are stuck in the road."

Police Officer: "An old water pipe in the city centre has burst. People are working to fix it as quickly as possible[3] and we hope to open the road soon."

١- يصلح
٢- تغمرها المياه
٣- بأسرع ما يمكن

SB Page (46)

**WARNING!** The street outside the shopping centre is closed! There is water everywhere. A big, old red car is stuck in the middle of the road. DON'T TRY TO GO THERE!

SB Page (46)

There was a dangerous accident on the road to our school yesterday. A car hit[1] a big tree, and the driver was injured[2]. We were stuck and couldn't move. The police arrived quickly and took the damaged car[3] to the side of the road. Unfortunately[4], we went to school late!

١- اصطدمت بـ
٢- أصيب
٣- السيارة المحطمة
٤- لسوء الحظ

# Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Definitions

1. The person who controls a television camera is a camera .......... WB
   a. operator b. presenter c. reader d. designer
2. A/An..........'s job is to take photographs. WB
   a. web designer b. witness c. editor d. photographer
3. A .......... is the person whose job is to write news articles for newspapers and magazines. 2022
   a. photographer b. witness c. journalist d. web designer
4. A ...... is a person who reads the news on the radio or in television. 2023
   a. designer b. newsreader c. photographer d. journalist
5. A person whose job is to introduce programmes on the radio is a ..........
   a. witness b. radio presenter
   c. photographer d. camera operator
6. A .......... is a person who designs websites or pages on websites.
   a. photographer b. journalist c. web designer d. newsreader
7. A/An .......... is a person whose job is to choose what should be in a newspaper, magazine, etc.
   a. operator b. editor c. designer d. witness
8. A/An .......... a person who has seen an accident, crime, etc. and can tell the police about it
   a. thief b. witness c. presenter d. astronomer

## Synonyms & Antonyms

9. Unfortunately, we lost the final match. The synonym of "Unfortunately" is .......... 2022
   a. luckily b. unhappily c. sadly d. unluckily
10. The antonym of the word "normally" is ..........
    a. unusually b. carefully c. lonely d. usually
11. The word .......... is a synonym of the adjective "late".
    a. delayed b. early c. lately d. soon





12. "Politely" is similar in meaning to ..........
    a. impolitely b. unluckily c. kindly d. fortunately
13. The antonym of the adjective "stuck" is ..........
    a. released b. damaged c. hit d. trapped
14. My mother was cross because I was late for school. "Cross" here can be replaced by ".........." Longman
    a. ready b. easy c. quiet d. angry

## Prefixes & Suffixes

15. To turn the verb "design" into a noun we add the suffix .......... 2022
    a. -able b. -tian c. -er d. –ive
16. The word "photograph" refers to a person's job by adding the suffix ........
    a. -ist b. -er c. -or d. -ly
17. The suffix .......... turns the word "journal" into a person's job.
    a. -er b. -ist c. -or d. -ly
18. We add the prefix .......... to the adverb "fortunately" to form the opposite.
    a. un- b. in- c. dis- d. inter-
19. We can change the verb "warn" into a noun by adding the suffix ..........
    a. -ing b. -ist c. -ly d. -ous

## Guessing the meaning

20. When a ball or pipe has a hole in it, we say that it has .......... WB
    a. preferred b. reported c. started d. burst
21. My teacher told me not be late again. He gave me a .......... 2023
    a. promise b. warning c. witness d. present
22. My friend is angry. He must be .......... about what I did. 2022
    a. pleased b. enjoyable c. injured d. cross
23. Omar's job is to read the news on TV. This means he is a/an ..........
    a. newsreader b. journalist c. photographer d. editor
24. My car was not able to move in the heavy traffic. This means it was ..........
    a. stuck b. run c. speedy d. fast
25. Mr Hatim owns a new factory in the city. This means he is the .......... of the factory.
    a. designer b. reader c. presenter d. owner

# Grammar

## Remember: The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل المنتظم أي يضاف له d / ed / ied

الافعال الغير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي

go → went    break → broke

Ex. Noha arrived at school late yesterday.

Ex. We went home at ten o'clock last night.

### Negative النفي

للنفي نستخدم: فاعل + didn't + inf.

Ex. I didn't go to work yesterday.

### Question السؤال

• السؤال بهل: Did + فاعل + inf. ...... ?

Ex. Did they visit the Pyramids?

- للإجابة نقول: - Yes, they did.    - No, they didn't.

• السؤال بكلمة استفهام: كلمة الاستفهام + did + فاعل + inf. ...... ?

Ex. How did you go to school yesterday?

### Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن شيء حدث في الماضي وانتهى.

Ex. Ahmed broke his arm last summer. Now he is in good health.

• يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادة تكررت في الماضي.

Ex. When I had a problem, I always talked (used to talk) to my parents.

• لاحظ: يمكن استخدام used to + inf. للتعبير عن العادات مع زمن الماضي البسيط.

### Key words الكلمات الدالة

| yesterday | in (2010) | in the past | ago |
|---|---|---|---|
| last (night / week / month / year) | | one ( day - week) | once |





# Exercises on Language

## Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

1. Was there an accident yesterday? Yes, there ................ (be). SB
2. ................ (Do) the car hit the child yesterday? SB
3. Did the police ................ (took) the damaged car? SB
4. The actor ................ (wear) expensive sunglasses in yesterday's show. WB
5. We were stuck because the bus ................ (break) down in the middle of the street. WB
6. When I was young, I always ............ (talk) to my teachers politely. WB
7. The government ................ (build) a new bridge in our town last year.
8. Mother ................ (buy) a new dress for my little sister yesterday.

### Longman Exercises

9. When my father was young, he usually ................ (walks) to school.
10. Did you ................ (found) your mobile?
11. I ............ (watched) the film with my friends because I was busy studying.
12. Why ................ (don't) you come to school yesterday?
13. I ........ (didn't show) the way to the museum, so I couldn't go there.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

14. I ............ (go) to visit my cousins last night.
15. Did you ............ (sent) the letter yesterday?
16. (Are) ............ there any injured people in the accident last week?
17. Your father ............ (drive) his car to Alexandria last week.
18. They ............ (paint) their house yesterday.
19. A: ............ (Be) there water on the road? B: No, there wasn't.
20. Tamer ............ (do) the homework alone last night.
21. He ............ (use) to go swimming when he was young.
22. I ............ (don't) have a bike when I was a child.
23. Why did you ............ (came) home late yesterday?
24. I ............ (do) my homework, so my teacher was angry.



## Speaking

### 1) Discussing work and types of jobs in the media. مناقشة عن العمل وأنواع الوظائف فى وسائل الاعلام

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Would you like to work in the media? Why?<br>- هل ترغب فى العمل فى وسائل الاعلام؟ لماذا؟ | - Yes, I would like to work in the media because I want to know more people.<br>- نعم، اريد العمل فى وسائل الاعلام لأنى أرغب فى معرفه المزيد من الناس. |
| - Which jobs would you like to do in the media? Why?<br>- أى الوظائف تريد العمل بها فى وسائل الاعلام؟ لماذا؟ | - I would like to work as a journalist because I want to write about different things in life.<br>- ارغب فى العمل كصحفى لأننى أريد ان اكتب عن أشياء عديدة فى الحياة. |
| - Which jobs wouldn't you like to do in the media? Why?<br>- أى الوظائف لا تريد العمل بها فى وسائل الاعلام؟ لماذا؟ | - I wouldn't like to work as a camera operator. This won't let me meet and talk to different kinds of people.<br>- لا أرغب فى العمل كمشغل كاميرا لأن ذلك لن يسمح لى بمقابلة الناس والتحدث إلى العديد منهم. |

### 2) Reporting an accident الاخبار عن حادث

A: Was there an accident yesterday? هل كان هناك حادث بالأمس؟

B: Yes, there was. نعم كان هناك حادث.

A: What happened? ما الذى حدث؟

B: A car was about to hit a child, but it hit a big tree.

كانت هناك سيارة على وشك ان تصدم طفل و لكنها اصطدمت بشجرة كبيرة.

A: Did the police arrive quickly? هل وصل رجال الشرطة سريعا؟

B: Yes, they did. نعم، لقد فعلوا ذلك.

A: What did the police do? ماذا فعل رجال الشرطة؟

B: They took the damaged car to the side of the road.

قاموا بأخذ السيارة المتضررة إلى جانب الطريق.

A: Did you go to school on time? هل ذهبتم الى المدرسة فى الموعد المحدد؟

B: Unfortunately, we went to school late! لسوء الحظ، ذهبنا إلى المدرسة متأخرين!





## General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Dina is talking with Reham about jobs in the media.**

Dina : I read an interesting article in yesterday's newspaper.

Reham : ❶ .................................................................?

Dina : It was about jobs in the media.

Reham : ❷ .................................................................?

Dina : Yes, jobs in the media are very interesting.

Reham : ❸ .................................................................

Dina : Me, too. I hope I will work in the media.

Reham : What would you like to be?

Dina : ❹ .................................................................

Reham : A journalist is a good job. ❺ ..........................................

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**tried - on - late - yesterday - try - early - tomorrow**

I always go to school ❶ ........ time, but ❷ ........ was an unusual day. Some robbers ❸ ........ to rob a bank in the city centre. Someone called the police and they arrived quickly. At the bank, they caught three persons. When we realised we were ❹ ........, we ran to our school.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ........ decides on the final content of a newspaper, magazine, etc. Longman
   a. newsreader b. news presenter c. editor d. newspaper seller
2. A ............ plans, creates and codes internet sites and web pages. Longman
   a. web designer b. photographer c. camera operator d. reader
3. The antonym of the adjective "cross" is ...........
   a. anxious b. annoyed c. angry d. calm
4. To change the verb "present" into a noun, we add the suffix "..........."
   a. -or b. -er c. -ly d. -ist

5. The police want to talk to the person who saw the accident last night. This means they want to talk to the ..........
a. designer b. businessman c. researcher d. witness

6. A person writes news and articles for newspapers, magazines and websites. This means he is a/an ..........
a. journalist b. newsreader c. editor d. photographer

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Marwa's father .......... (buy) a big motorbike last week.
2. We .......... (paint) our house alone last week.
3. .......... (Are) there any books on that desk yesterday?
4. Hazem .......... (play) football with his friends last night.
5. A: Why .......... (do) you come to the club two days ago? B: Because I was ill.

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about a flood in the city centre"

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- What is the short story about?
- What happened? Where did it happen?
- When did it happen?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات
- Yesterday, I was on my way to ................
- There was....................
- It happened in.............
- In the end, ....................

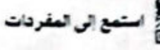




# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48-50 WB pages 102-103

## Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| governor | حاكم/محافظ | female voice | صوت نسائي |
| career | حياة مهنية | linguist | متخصص في اللغويات/عالم لغويات |
| award | جائزة | early life | في بداية حياة.... |
| tourism | السياحة | presenter | مذيع/مقدم (برامج) |
| broadcasting | بث اذاعي/تليفزيوني | graduate (d) | يتخرج في (جامعة) |
| broadcaster | مذيع | retire (d) | يتقاعد عن العمل |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| water park | ملاهي مائية | news reporter | مراسل أخبار |
| tournament | دورة (رياضية) | cultural | ثقافي |
| poet | شاعر | guardian | حارس/وصي |
| poetry | الشعر | head | رئيس |
| novel | رواية | elementary school | مدرسة ابتدائي |
| literature | الأدب | encourage (d) | يشجع |
| Faculty of Arts | كلية الآداب | specialise (d) | يتخصص (في مجال) |
| housewives | ربات البيوت | present (ed) | يقدم (برنامج) |
| educational | تعليمي | explain (ed) | يشرح |
| drama | دراما | | |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| broadcast يبث | to send a programme or some information by radio or TV | |
| broadcasting بث | - the business of making television or radio programmes | |
| presenter مقدم برامج | - someone who introduces the different parts of a television or radio show[1]<br>- a person who presents a programme on the radio or TV | |
| linguist متخصص في اللغويات/ عالم لغويات | - someone who studies foreign[2] languages or can speak them well<br>- a person who specialises[3] in languages<br>- someone who teaches or studies linguistics[4] | |
| voice صوت بشري | - the sounds that you make when you speak or sing<br>- sound produced by a person when they speak | |
| retire يتقاعد | to leave a job or stop working because of old age | |
| governor حاكم/محافظ | the person who rules a city or an area | |

١- عرض اذاعي
٢- اجنبي
٣- يتخصص
٤- علم اللغويات

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym تعطى عكس المعنى | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| female | انثى | feminine / woman | male | ذكر |
| well-known | معروف / مشهور | famous | unknown | غير معروف |
| local | محلى | national | international | عالمى |
| governor | حاكم/محافظ | ruler | | |
| noisy | صاخب | loud | quiet / calm | هادئ |
| special | خاص/مميز | unusual | usual | عادى |
| encourage | يشجع | support | discourage | لا يشجع / يثبط / يحبط |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| en- | n → v | تحول الاسم إلى فعل | encourage | يشجع |
| -y | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | noisy | صاخب |
| -al | | | educational / cultural | تعليمي/ثقافي |
| -ian | person | تكون اسم الفاعل | guardian | حارس/وصي |
| -ist | | | linguist | عالم لغويات |
| -er | | | broadcaster / reporter | مذيع /مراسل |
| -or | | | governor | حاكم |
| -ism | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | tourism | السياحة |
| -ing | | | broadcasting | بث اذاعي/تليفزيوني |
| -ise | adj → v | تحول الصفة إلى الفعل | specialise | يتخصص |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| study online | يدرس عبر الإنترنت | kind to | عطوف مع |
| (be) head of | يعمل "كرئيس لـ..." | helpful to | متعاون مع |
| on fire | مشتعل | on the internet | على الإنترنت |
| bring more tourism | يجلب المزيد من السياحة | specialise in | يتخصص فى |
| (be) getting busy | يزداد ازدحاماً | for free | بالمجان |
| look forward to + v-ing / noun | يتطلع إلى | for this reason | لهذا السبب |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| build | يبنى | built | built |
| bring | يجلب/يُحضر | brought | brought |





## Language Notes

**1) the more / adj + er ⟶ the better**

يستخدم الاسلوب السابق بمعنى كلما كان ............ كان افضل

Ex. The more tourism, the better for our country.

**2) stop**

- stop to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء آخر

Ex. While she was running, she stopped to drink some water.

- stop + v.ing يتوقف عن فعل شيء

Ex. Please, stop playing in the street, Tamer.

**3) voice / sound**

- voice صوت بشرى

Ex. Please, raise your voice, I can't hear you.

- sound صوت شئ

Ex. Please, turn down the TV sound, it's too loud.

**4) career / job**

- career حياة مهنية [اسم يُعد]

Ex. My father had a successful career in teaching.

- job وظيفة - مهمة [اسم يُعد]

Ex. Ali has got a job at a bank recently.

Ex. Housewives have many jobs to do at home.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The doctor told him that he should stop ............
   a. smoke  b. smokes  c. to smoke  d. smoking
2. The ............ you do sport, the better for your health.
   a. more  b. much  c. less  d. little
3. Ali always speaks to us in a loud ............
   a. sound  b. ring  c. voice  d. mouth
4. He has spent most of his ............ as a journalist.
   a. career  b. holiday  c. space  d. tourism

# Audioscript

SB Page (49)

استمع إلى النصوص



News reporter[1]: This is the 12 o'clock news. Today a new water park[2] opened in Sharm El Sheikh. The governor[3] of the town said the park was the biggest in Egypt and would be great for tourism[4] in the area. The owner[5] of the new park explained[6] that there would be over one hundred new jobs for people at the park. The park has restaurants and the owner is going to build a new hotel next year. The owner also told us that the park had taken over three years to build. The first fifty visitors today can go to the water park for free[7].

١- مراسل الاخبار
٢- ملاهي مائية
٣- حاكم/محافظ
٤- السياحة
٥- مالك
٦- وضح/شرح
٧- بالمجان

SB Page (49)

**Narrator** : **Maged**
**Journalist** : What do you think about the new water park, Maged?
**Man** : I think it's great! I've got a new job working in one of the restaurants and I'm looking forward to[1] visiting the park with my friends.

١- يتطلع الى
٢- صاخب
٣- يزداد ازدحاما
٤- الشباب

*********

**Narrator** : **Heba**
**Journalist** : What do you think about the new water park, Heba?
**Woman** : Well, I'm happy now they've finished because there has been a lot of building and it has been noisy[2]!

*********

**Narrator** : **Nadia**
**Journalist** : What do you think about the new water park, Nadia?
**Woman** : We need more jobs and visitors to the area. I have a shop in the town and so the more tourism, the better! It looks cool, too.

*********

**Narrator** : **Kareem**
**Journalist** : What do you think about the new water park, Kareem?
**Man** : I don't know. I'm not sure that we need more water parks. It's getting very busy[3] around this area. But more jobs will be a good thing, we need them for the young people[4] here.





SB Page (102)

"I want to go to the new water park," said Lama.
"I went there last week," said Malak.
"I haven't been yet," said Hanan.
"I'm going with my family on Saturday," said Dina.
"Aya won't go because she doesn't like water parks!" said Injy

# Reading

SB page (50)

## The Mother of All Broadcasters[1]



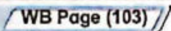
Egyptian radio broadcasting[2] started in 1934. It was the first broadcast in Africa and in the whole Arab world. Safia el Mohandes was the first female voice[3] on the radio.

Safia was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist[4]. He encouraged[5] Safia to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English literature[6] at the university and graduated[7] from the Faculty of Arts[8] in 1945.

In 1947, Safia joined[9] the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female radio presenter[10]. Safia presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme 'Housewives'[11], presented news, educational[12] advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family.

Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone, and so she was called the 'mother of all broadcasters'. Safia was head of the radio broadcasting from 1975 until she retired[13] in 1982.

١- مذيعون
٢- بث اذاعي
٣- صوت نسائي
٤- متخصص في اللغويات
٥- شجع
٦- الأدب
٧- تخرج
٨- كلية الاداب
٩- يلتحق بـ
١٠- مقدم برامج
١١- ربات البيوت
١٢- تعليمي
١٣- تقاعد



WB Page (103)

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet[1].

### Early life[2]

Shousha was born in Damietta in 1936. He went to a nearby elementary school[3]. He went to the local library at a very early age[4], and was able to read many books in the Arabic language. Later on, Shousha went to Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum[5] in 1956.

### Career[6]

Shousha worked as a radio presenter in 1958 and later on as a TV presenter too. He always liked poetry[7] and Arabic literature[8]. He presented many programmes like "Our Beautiful Language[9]"on the radio, and "Cultural Evening[10]".

١- شاعر
٢- بداية حياته
٣- مدرسة ابتدائي
٤- سن مبكرة
٥- كلية دار العلوم
٦- الحياة المهنية
٧- الشعر
٨- الادب العربي
٩- لغتنا الجميلة
١٠- امسية ثقافية

**Awards**

In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called 'the guardian of the Arabic language'. He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

١١- الجوائز
١٢- وصي / حارس

**Reading Skill** مهارة القراءة (الإجابات أسفل)

1. The text mainly talks about an Egyptian ..........
   a. scientist b. sports star c. actor d. poet
2. Farouk Shousha won the Nile Prize for Literature at the age of ..........
   a. thirty six b. sixteen c. eighty d. sixty
3. People, who graduate from Dar al-Ulum, are usually good at ..........
   a. English b. Arabic c. programming d. French

**Writing Skill** مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى كتابة الموضوع الانشائى)

1. Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet.
   فاروق شوشة مذيع إذاعي (راديو) معروف وشاعر مشهور.
2. Farouk Shousha was born in Damietta in 1936.
   ولد فاروق شوشة في دمياط في عام ١٩٣٦.
3. He graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in 1956
   تخرج من كلية دار العلوم في عام ١٩٥٦.
4. He was called 'the guardian of the Arabic language'.
   كان يلقب بـ "حارس اللغة العربية".

Answers
1. poet 2. eighty 3. Arabic

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. A .......... is a person who specialises in languages. WB
   a. linguist b. presenter c. broadcaster d. poet
2. To .......... means to leave a job or stop working because of old age WB
   a. graduate b. broadcast c. retire d. encourage
3. To .......... is to send a programme or some information by radio or TV. WB
   a. broadcast b. replace c. own d. explain
4. A/An .......... is a person who presents a programme on the radio or TV. WB
   a. researcher b. editor c. presenter d. linguist
5. The sound that you make when you speak is your ..........
   a. sight b. voice c. hearing d. smell
6. A/An .......... is the person who rules a city or an area.
   a. governor b. player c. journalist d. broadcaster
7. .......... is the business of making television or radio programmes.
   a. Retiring b. Graduating c. Broadcasting d. Recycling





### Synonyms & Antonyms

8. He is the governor of the city. "Governor" is similar in meaning to ..........
   a. ruler b. worker c. helper d. assistant
9. Farouk Shousha is a well-known poet. The synonym of "well-known" is ..........
   a. pleased b. helpful c. interested d. famous
10. She was the first female voice on the radio. The antonym of "female" is ..........
    a. feminine b. male c. kid d. adult
11. My father was the head of the radio broadcasting until he retired in 1980. "Retired" means .......... working.
    a. stopped b. began c. continued d. kept
12. The synonym of the word "noisy" is ..........
    a. loud b. cruel c. calm d. good
13. The antonym of "special" is ..........
    a. kind b. usual c. nice d. unusual
14. The antonym of the adjective "local" is ..........
    a. near b. large c. close d. international

### Prefixes & Suffixes

15. We add the suffix .......... to get the noun of the word "govern".
    a. -y b. -er c. -or d. -ing
16. The government is greatly interested in education. We can change "education" into an adjective when we add the suffix ".........." Longman
    a. -al b. -ful c. -ive d. –ist
17. The verb "present" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix ..........
    a. -im b. -er c. -or d. –ir
18. We get the verb from "courage" by adding the prefix ..........
    a. en- b. re- c. im- d. di-
19. We add the suffix .......... to the word "guard" to refer to "person".
    a. -ist b. -er c. -ian d. -or

### Guessing the meaning

20. He spent all his life studying languages. This means that he is a ..........
    a. linguist b. graduate c. governor d. poet
21. Salma has just got a degree from the university. This means that she has just ..........
    a. worked b. explained c. failed d. graduated
22. We must encourage tourists to visit Egypt. This means we must encourage ..........
    a. recycling b. broadcasting c. tourism d. graduation

# Grammar

## 1- Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech الكلام المباشر وغير المباشر

الكلام المباشر (Direct speech) هو الكلام الفعلى الذى قاله الشخص ويأتى بين علامات تنصيص "......"

الكلام غير المباشر (Indirect speech) هو نفس كلام الشخص لكنه منقول على لسان شخص آخر ويكتب بدون علامات تنصيص.

قارن الآتى

Ex. Kamal said, "I come from Egypt."

Ex. Kamal said that he came from Egypt.

**Notes:**

فى الجملة الأولى هذا كلام الشخص وعلى لسانه فاستخدمنا ضمير المتكلم ونفس الزمن الذى استخدمه المتكلم داخل علامات تنصيص وهذا هو الكلام المباشر.

أما فى الجملة الثانية حذفنا علامات التنصيص وغيرنا الضمير والزمن وهذا هو الكلام غير المباشر.

## 2- Reported statement الجملة الخبرية

• تتكون الجملة الخبرية من فاعل + فعل + مفعول/صفة/حال ......

خطوات التحويل

• فعل القول فى الكلام المباشر يأتى إما قبل الكلام أو بعده لكن عند التحويل إلى الكلام غير المباشر يأتى قبل الكلام.

Ex. Sherif said, "I'm happy to see you." (Direct)

= "I'm happy to see you," said Sherif.

- Sherif said that he was happy to see me. (Indirect)

١- يحول فعل القول عادةً كما يلى:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| say → say | says → says | said → said |
| say to → tell | says to → tells | said to → told |

• الفعل said لا يأتى بعده مفعول لكن الفعل told لابد أن يأتى بعده مفعول.

٢- نحذف علامات التنصيص ونربط بـ (that) ويمكن حذفها.

٣- نقوم بتحويل الضمائر فى الجملة بما يتفق مع المعنى عند نقل الكلام - وفى أغلب الأحوال يتم تحويل الضمائر التالية كما يلي:

| Direct | Indirect |
|---|---|
| I → | he / she / I |
| you → | I / we |
| we → | they / we |

| Direct | Indirect |
|---|---|
| me → | him / her/ me |
| you → | me / us / you |
| us → | them / us |

| Direct | Indirect |
|---|---|
| my → | his / her |
| your → | my / our |
| our → | their |





٤- يتم تحويل ظروف الزمان والمكان وأسماء الإشارة في الجملة غير المباشرة كما يلي:

| Direct speech | Indirect speech |
|---|---|
| this / these → | that / those |
| here → | there |
| now → | then |
| today / tonight → | that day / that night |
| tomorrow → | the following day / the next day |
| next (week) → | the (next) following (week) |
| yesterday → | the day before / the previous day |
| last (week) → | the (week) before / the previous (week) |
| ago → | before |

٥- يتم تحويل الأزمنة الى الماضى كما يلى:

| Direct speech | Reported speech |
|---|---|
| Present simple مضارع بسيط<br>(s/es/ies) + مصدر الفعل / فعل | Past simple ماضى بسيط<br>التصريف الثانى للفعل |
| Ex. "I need to fix this machine," said Magdy. | Magdy said that he needed to fix that machine. |
| Past simple ماضى بسيط<br>التصريف الثانى للفعل | Past perfect ماضى تام (had +p.p) |
| Ex. Reda said, "I did well in my test." | Reda said that he had done well in his test. |

**Notes:**

- لاحظ تغيير (was - were) إلى الماضى التام past perfect:

was / were → had been

Ex. Samir said, "I was late."

- Samir said that he had been late.

| Present continuous مضارع مستمر → | Past continuous ماضى مستمر |
|---|---|
| am / is / are + v-ing | was / were + v-ing |
| Ex. "I am cleaning my room," Nour said. | Nour said that he was cleaning his room. |
| Present perfect مضارع تام → | Past perfect ماضى تام |
| have / has + p.p | had + p.p |
| Ex. Mustafa said to me, "I have taken a new photo." | Mustafa told me that he had taken a new photo. |

**Modals مع الأفعال الناقصة**

will / can + inf. ⟶ would / could + inf.

Ex. Mervat said, "I will watch the film tonight." — Mervat said that she would watch the film that night.

**Future with (am, is, are) going to + inf. → (was / were) going to + inf.**

Ex. Mai said, "I'm going to buy a new dress." — Mai said that she was going to buy a new dress.

**Notes:**

• يظل الفعل والظرف في جملة غير المباشر كما هما دون تغيير وذلك في الحالات الآتية:

١- إذا كان فعل القول مضارع say / says / tell / tells

Ex. Medhat says, "I get a headache when I read a lot."
= Medhat says (that) he gets a headache when he reads a lot.

٢- إذا كانت الجملة غير المباشرة تدل على حقيقة أو ظاهرة طبيعية ثابتة (أو من الممكن أن تحول).

Ex. "I have a shop in the city centre," Mohsen said.
= Mohsen said (that) he has / had a shop in the city centre.

٣- إذا كان في الجملة مايدل على أن الكلام قيل منذ فترة بسيطة جدا، أو تحتوى على إحدى التعبيرات الآتية.

have - has just said / said a minute ago

Ex. Samy has just said, "I'm happy."
= Samy has just said (that) he is happy.

٤- يمكن إن نستخدم الفعل explained بدلاً من said

Ex. The owner explained that there would be over 100 new jobs next year.

SB

- Amr told me that he .................. (travel) abroad the next week. القاهرة 2022

- وردت هذه الجملة فى امتحان محافظة القاهرة ٢٠٢٢، ورغم وجود (the next week) إلا أن الجملة ستتحول إلى كلام غير مباشر ويصبح الفعل (travel) ⟶ (would travel)

Answer : Amr told me that he would travel abroad the next week.

- وكذلك يمكن أن تكون الإجابة will travel / is travelling.





# Exercises on Language

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. She .................. (told) that she was happy that they had finished. SB
2. The police said that lots of mobile phones .................. (have) been stolen that year. SB
3. Kareem said that more jobs .................. (will) be a good thing. SB
4. Nadia said that she .................. (has) a shop in town. SB
5. The teacher said that .................. (these) books were very interesting. WB
6. "The red team .................. (win) the match yesterday," said Tarek. WB
7. Mona said she .................. (be) tired that day.
8. Shereen said that she .................. (didn't watch) the film the day before.
9. Sally .................. (told) Samira, "I will go to Cairo tomorrow."
10. Samir .................. (said) me that he would travel to London the following week.

**Longman Exercises**

11. My father .................. (said to) us that he had bought a new mobile.
12. Sherif told me that .................. (him) was doing his work, so he couldn't go to the club with me.
13. I said to Manal, "I .................. (had) just finished my work."
14. Walid said that he .................. (can't) go to school because he was ill.
15. Basma told me that she wouldn't go to her village the .................. (last) weekend.
16. Sami said that they .................. (don't go) to the park the week before.
17. Hamza told me .................. (this) he had visited his uncle in the village.
18. "I .................. (was doing) my homework now," said Taher
19. My brother said that the car .................. (is) ready for the trip because a lot of things needed to be fixed.
20. Dalia told us that she .................. (prepares) lunch then.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

21. "The building is on fire!" ............ (told) a witness.
22. Mona told me that she ............ (visit) the museum yesterday.
23. The governor said that the park ............ (be) the biggest in Egypt.
24. The witness said that the accident ............ (happen) near the park.
25. Ashraqat ............ (told) she had bought a new car.
26. Amir said to Ali, "I ............ (was preparing) for the school trip now."
27. Ashraf said that his father took ............ (he) to the zoo.
28. Hanan said she ............ (finish) work the night before.
29. Khaled said that he ............ (travel) to Luxor the following month.
30. The man told us the football tournament ............ (will start) the next day.

## Speaking

### 1 Asking and giving opinions

السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - What do you think about studying online?<br>ما رأيك فى الدراسة عبر الانترنت؟ | - I like it because it saves time.<br>- أحبها لأنها توفر الوقت.<br>- I don't like it because I can't discuss things with my friends.<br>- انا لا أحب هذا النوع من الدراسة لأنها لا تتيح لى الفرصة لمناقشة الأشياء مع أصدقائى. |
| - What do you think about doing sport?<br>ما رأيك فى ممارسة الرياضة؟ | - I think it is good for our health.<br>- أعتقد أنها مفيدة لصحتنا. |

### 2 Asking and answering questions about radio broadcasting:

السؤال والاجابة عن البث الاذاعى :

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Was radio broadcasting very important in the last century? Why?<br>- هل كان البث الاذاعى له اهمية كبيرة فى القرن الماضى؟ لماذا؟ | - Yes, it was very important as it helped us learn and know many things.<br>- نعم، كان مهم جداً لأنه ساعدنا فى تعلم ومعرفة أشياء عديدة. |





## General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Samir is asking Ayman about his opinion about tourism.**

**Samir** : What do you think about tourism, Ayman?
**Ayman** : ❶ ............................................................
**Samir** : ❷ ............................................................?
**Ayman** : Because it brings our country a lot of money.
**Samir** : ❸ ............................................................?
**Ayman** : We should treat tourists kindly.
**Samir** : What else can we do?
**Ayman** : ❹ ............................................................
**Samir** : You are right. We need more hotels. Does tourism provide a lot of jobs?
**Ayman** : ❺ ............................................................

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**family - cinema - governor - said - told - park**

Yesterday, I talked to my best friends. We were talking about a new water ❶ ........ in our city. Nahla ❷ ........ that she wanted to go to the new water park and she liked to go there with her ❸ ........ . Hanan told us that the ❹ ........ had opened it the previous day. Dina said that she was going to go there with her family on the following Saturday.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ........ is a person whose job it is to understand, describe, and analyse a language. (Longman)
   a. engineer b. discoverer c. foreigner d. linguist
2. ........ is the sound produced by a person when they speak. (WB)
   a. Literature b. Voice c. Hearing d. Tourism
3. The word "famous" is similar in meaning to ........ . (المعاصر 2022)
   a. private b. special c. unknown d. well-known

4. I saw wonderful places during my tour in Cairo. To change "tour" into a noun that expresses a source of national income, we add the suffix "........". Longman

a. -ist b. -ism c. -er d. -tion

5. In Egypt, the people working in government places usually ........ at the age of sixty. Longman

a. refuse b. resign c. start d. retire

6. A university student ........ when he / she passes the final exams. Longman

a. qualifies b. graduates c. leaves d. stops

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The owner told us that the park ........ (has) taken over three years to build. SB
2. Manal ........ (said) me, "I have seen this movie." 2023
3. Yasser said that he ........ (is meeting) his close friends. Longman
4. Nagwa ........ (say) me that she had finished her work on time.

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of a person you like who was working in the media" 2022

(إجابة عنه في آخر الوحدة)

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- When and where was he /she born?
- What university did he / she graduate from?
- What did he / she talk about in his programme?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات
- He / She was born in........................
- He / She graduated from.............................
- He / She presented..........................................



# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51-53 WB pages 104-106

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| festival | مهرجان | according to | طبقًا ل |
| apparently | على ما يبدو/بوضوح | serve (d) | يقدم (طعام) |
| interview | مقابلة شخصية | report (ed) (n) | يقدم تقرير - تقرير |
| meeting | اجتماع/لقاء | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| teenager | مراهق | traditional | تقليدي |
| volunteer | متطوع | national news | أخبار محلية |
| spelling mistake | خطأ إملائي | nature reserve | محمية طبيعية |
| path | مسار/طريق | sports star | نجم رياضي |
| climber | متسلق | opening | افتتاح |
| facts | حقائق | celebrate (d) | يحتفل |
| hole | ثقب - حفرة | film (ed) (n) | يُصوِّر فيلم - فيلم |
| unable | غير قادر | pull (ed) | يجر - يسحب |
| garage | جراج(ورشة سيارات) | respond (ed) (n) | يرد - رد |
| businessmen | رجال أعمال | | |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| apparently | على مايبدو/بوضوح | according to what you have heard is true |
| festival | مهرجان | a day or time for people to celebrate [1] something |
| meeting | اجتماع | a situation [2] when groups of people meet to discuss something |
| according to | طبقًا ل | as said by someone or as shown by something |
| normal | عادى / طبيعي | usual, not different |

١- يحتفل
٢- موقف

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد/العكس | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| wonderful | رائع | amazing | terrible | سيئ |
| the nearest | الأقرب | the closest | the farthest | الأبعد |
| expensive | غالي الثمن | pricey | cheap / inexpensive | رخيص |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| un- | opposite | تعطي عكس المعنى | unfortunately / unable | سوء الحظ/غير قادر |
| ab- | | | abnormal | غير طبيعي |
| -er | person | تكوّن اسم الفاعل | teenager / climber | مراهق/متسلق |
| -ly | adj → adv | تحول الصفة الى الحال | normally / apparently / finally / probably | بشكل طبيعي / بوضوح / اخيرا / من المحتمل |
| -al | n → adj | تحول الاسم الى الصفة | national / traditional | قومي/تقليدي |
| -ing | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | meeting / spelling | اجتماع/هجاء |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| make a mistake | يرتكب خطأ | give warning | يحذر |
| have a meeting | يعقد اجتماع/لقاء | make it easy to | يجعل الأمر سهل لكى |
| have a picnic | يذهب فى نزهة | hear about | يسمع عن |
| have a festival | يقيم مهرجان | find out about | يعرف عن |
| do an interview | يجرى مقابلة/حوار | for a while | برهة من الوقت |
| normal for me | عادى بالنسبة لى | by mistake | عن طريق الخطأ |
| serve food | يقدم طعام | on the news | فى الأخبار |
| get lost | يضل الطريق | report on | يقدم تقرير عن |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| spend | يقضى (وقت) / ينفق (مال) | spent | spent |
| tell | يخبر | told | told |

## Language Notes

### 1) spend

- spend + time + (v.ing) يقضى وقت فى

Ex. Shereen spent the last week preparing for the mid-year exam.

- spend + money + on + (v.ing / noun) ينفق اموال على

Ex. Young children always spend a lot of money on candy.





### 2) good (at / for / to)

- good at (v - ing / n) جيد فى

Ex. Osman is good at English.

- good to حسن المعاملة مع

Ex. We should be good to our parents.

- good for مفيد لـ

Ex. Milk is very good for our heath.

### 3) decide (to / on / that)

- decide to + inf. يقرر ان

Ex. They decided to go on holiday to Luxor.

- decide on + (noun) يستقر على "رأى/قرار" - يختار

Ex. Karim has decided on a date for his wedding.

- decided (that + (جملة) subject + verb) يقرر أن يفعل

Ex. The school decided that they should build new classrooms.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

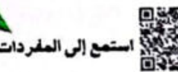
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Hala spends much time .......... video games.
   a. to play b. plays c. playing d. play
2. My younger brother is good .......... using the internet.
   a. to b. on c. for d. at
3. She decided .......... her bedroom pink.
   a. paint b. painting c. to paint d. that paint
4. He's very .......... his mother.
   a. good to b. good at c. good in d. good on

## Audioscript

SB Page (51)





استمع إلى المفردات



**Adel** : Fawzi, did you know that they are having a new food festival[1] next month in our village.

**Fawzi** : Really? That's good. Why are they having it?

**Adel** : According to[2] the newspaper, it is to celebrate[3] the opening[4] of a new restaurant. It's opening next to the water tower.

**Fawzi** : That's good news.

**Adel** : Have you heard that they think more tourists will visit the village, too?

١- مهرجان طعام
٢- طبقاً لـ/ وفقاً
٣- يحتفل
٤- افتتاح

**Fawzi** : Yes, tourists like visiting traditional[5] villages like ours. What type of restaurant will it be?
**Wael** : Apparently[6], it's going to be a modern Egyptian restaurant.
**Adel** : Wow, it'll probably be expensive. But we should go to the food festival.
**Fawzi** : Yes, all our friends want to go, too.
**Wael** : I heard that you need to buy a ticket. I'll find out how much it is.
**Fawzi** : Good idea.

٥- تقليدي
٦- على ما يبدو

SB Page (52)

### Shaimaa's Interview

**1- What is a normal working day like?**

I start my day early. We have a meeting[1] at 8 am and we decide which new stories we will put on the news that day. After that, I normally[2] spend a long time on the internet and talk to people on the phone. Then I go out with a camera operator and we do some interviews[3] and I write about what I'm going to say.

**2- What do you like about your job?**

I like meeting different people and finding out more about the world and the things that are happening in it. At first, it was exciting to be on the TV, but it is normal for me now!

**3- What don't you like about your job?**

I don't like the long hours and sometimes we report[4] on bad news and that can be very difficult.

**4- How did you get your job?**

I studied media[5] and Arabic at university and then I worked for a newspaper for a while. Someone at the newspaper thought that I would be good on TV and told me about a job working in TV news.

**5- What skills do you need to do your job?**

I think you have to be interested in the world around you and also like meeting lots of different people. You need to be good at listening and writing.

١- اجتماع/لقاء
٢- عادة
٣- مقابلات
٤- يقدم تقرير
٥- وسائل الإعلام

SB Page (53)

Last week, we decided to spend the weekend in Sharm El-Shiekh. We took our friend's car. Unfortunately, the car broke down[1]. We asked a mechanic[2] from the nearest village to come as soon as possible. He checked[3] the car well. Then, the mechanic decided to take the car back to the garage[4]. It was pulled all the way to our city!

١- تعطلت
٢- ميكانيكي
٣- فحص
٤- جراج | ورشة سيارات





SB Page (53)

### NEW NATURE RESERVE

This weekend, a new nature reserve[1] will open on the coast. The reserve will protect many fish, birds and sea animals[2], including turtles. The nature reserve will be a good place for families to walk and have a picnic. A scientist said, "We hope people will visit to learn more about the environment[3] of our wonderful coast."

### CLIMBERS FOUND!

Two men who got lost[4] when climbing a mountain have been found. The climbers[5] took the wrong path[6] by mistake[7] and then one of them fell and broke his leg. They were on the mountain for four days. A police officer said, "They are tired and hungry but happy to be home."

١- محمية طبيعية
٢- حيوانات بحرية
٣- البيئة
٤- ضل الطريق
٥- متسلقون
٦- مسار/طريق
٧- بطريق الخطأ

WB Page (104)

**Adam** : Have you heard that a famous sports star is going to visit our village?
**Taha** : Really?
**Adam** : Yes. According to this website, the famous basketball player is going to watch a children's match at the sports centre.
**Taha** : That's good.
**Adam** : Did you know that the basketball player went to school in our village?
**Taha** : No, I didn't know that.
**Adam** : Apparently, he might send his son to the school, too.
**Taha** : That's good news.
**Adam** : I heard that his son is already good at basketball, but he's only five!
**Taha** : Wow!

WB Page (104)

**Noha** : Did you know that Randa's cousin is a famous newsreader?
**Hania** : No, I didn't know.
**Noha** : Apparently, she reads the local news every night at 10 pm.
**Hania** : Really?
**Noha** : According to my mother, she is very good at her job.
**Hania** : That's good.
**Noha** : I heard that she might work for the national news soon.
**Hania** : Wow!
**Noha** : Have you heard that she is visiting Randa tomorrow?
**Hania** : No! We should try and meet her.

WB Page (105)

I work for an English language news website[1]. I started at a newspaper, but I think more people read news online now, so I prefer this job. Lots of different journalists[2] send me their articles, and I have to decide which ones are the most important. These will be the first ones that our readers will see.

Before the article goes on[3] the website, I also have to check the facts[4] that are in it. I look at two or three different websites that I trust to do this. Then I check the writing. Sometimes, there are spelling mistakes[5] or the language is not very easy to understand. It's my job to make the article as easy to understand as possible. Finally, I have to choose photographs to go with the article. Sometimes a photographer sends these, but usually we get them from other websites.

I studied English and media at university. First, I wanted to be a journalist, but then I decided that I preferred this job. It is very interesting because I can look at so many people's articles.

١- موقع على الانترنت
٢- صحافيون
٣- توضع على/تنشر
٤- حقائق
٥- اخطاء إملائية

WB Page (106)

"I've always liked taking photographs. However[1], I never wanted to be a photographer. I have always wanted to be a camera operator. It is a great job and it is always different. Today, I am working at a sports stadium[2]. Tomorrow, I will be working inside. I am filming[3] a meeting with some important people! I have never met the governor of Cairo before. I am looking forward to[4] it!"

١- على الرغم من
٢- استاد رياضي
٣- يصور فيلم
٤- يتطلع إلى

## Videoscript

SB Page (51)



If you look up in Cairo, you will see some tall skyscrapers[1]. But the tallest building of them all is Cairo Tower, which is on Gezira Island. This is 187 metres high and it is one of the tallest buildings in Africa.

The tower first opened in 1961. It was built by the famous Egyptian architect[2] Naoum Shebib. Shebib also built another tall building in Cairo - the Thabet-Thabet building. This skyscraper is more than 100 metres high.

The design of the tower looks like a type of flower called the pharaonic lotus flower[3]. This is the national flower of Egypt. It was very important in Ancient Egypt because it represented[4] birth[5] and life.

١- ناطحات سحاب
٢- مهندس معماري
٣- زهرة اللوتس الفرعونية
٤- تمثل
٥- الميلاد





The Cairo Tower is very popular with tourists, who visit it to see all of the city from the top. Sometimes, you can even see the Pyramids of Giza in the distance[6]. You can even have a meal at the top of the tower. My sister said that she ate fresh fish there! At night, the tower is illuminated[7] with lights. People say that it looks very beautiful.

Soon, the tallest building in Africa will be in Egypt. The Iconic Tower[8] in the New Administrative Capital[9] will be more than 385 metres tall when it is built.

Are there any skyscrapers or tall buildings in your town or city?

٦- من على بعد
٧- مضاء
٨- البرج الأيقوني
٩- العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. A/An .......... is a day or time for people to celebrate something.
   a. film b. festival c. fair d. accident
2. ".........." means according to what you have heard is true.
   a. Normally b. Apparently c. Finally d. Usually
3. ".........." means as said by someone or as shown by something.
   a. Normally b. Firstly c. Really d. According to
4. A/An .......... is a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something.
   a. meeting b. warning c. festival d. report
5. ".........." means usual, not different.
   a. Abnormal b. Local c. Normal d. Terrible

### Synonyms & Antonyms

6. .......... is the antonym of international.
   a. Normal b. Local c. Final d. Universal
7. Al Azhar Park is the nearest park to my house. The synonym of "the nearest" is the "..........".
   a. widest b. tallest c. closest d. farthest
8. She was wearing a very expensive dress. "Expensive" is similar in meaning to ..........
   a. pricey b. boring c. inexpensive d. exciting
9. The antonym of the adjective "wonderful" is ..........
   a. nice b. good c. terrible d. attractive
10. .......... is the opposite of "different".
   a. Unlike b. Similar c. Close d. Terrible

### Prefixes & Suffixes

11. We add the prefix .................. to get the opposite of the adjective "normal". 2022

a. ab- b. ir- c. un- d. dis-

12. It's probable that it will be sunny tomorrow. To change "probable" into an adverb, delete "e" and add ".................". Longman

a. -ily b. -ly c. -lly d. -ies

13. This restaurant serves traditional food. "Traditional" in this sentence is a/an ................. Longman

a. adjective b. noun c. verb d. adverb

14. The verb "climb" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix ..................

a. -or b. -less c. -ful d. -er

15. To turn the word "normal" into an adverb, we add the suffix ..................

a. -or b. -ful c. -er d. -ly

16. We get the opposite of the word "able" by adding the prefix ..................

a. un- b. ab- c. mis- d. inter-

### Guessing the meaning

17. Ibrahim works for a charity for free. This means he is a .................. 2022

a. volunteer b. manager c. governor d. worker

18. A journalist wrote about the accident. This means that he .................. the accident.

a. served b. read c. reported d. filmed

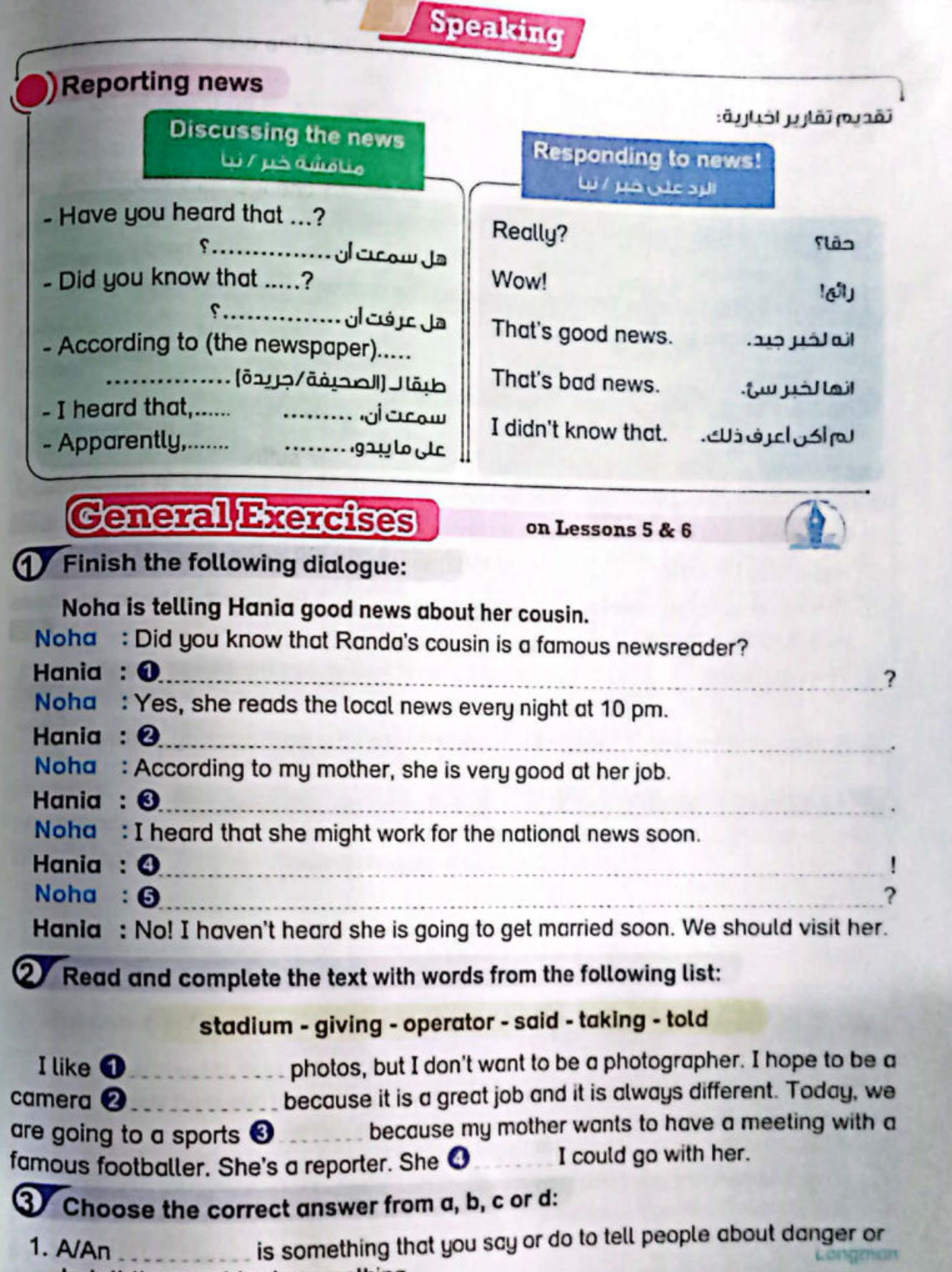
19. Mr Hamdy is busy talking to his employees. This means he has a .................. with them.

a. meal b. meeting c. shower d. picnic

20. He teaches English to students who are between 13 and 19 years old. This means he teaches English to ..................

a. babies b. kids c. teenagers d. climbers







## Speaking

### Reporting news

تقديم تقارير اخبارية:

| Discussing the news مناقشة خبر / نبأ | |
|---|---|
| - Have you heard that ...? | هل سمعت أن ...............؟ |
| - Did you know that .....? | هل عرفت أن ...............؟ |
| - According to (the newspaper)..... | طبقاً لـ (الصحيفة/جريدة) ............... |
| - I heard that,...... | سمعت أن، ......... |
| - Apparently,....... | على ما يبدو، ........ |

| Responding to news! الرد على خبر / نبأ | |
|---|---|
| Really? | حقاً؟ |
| Wow! | رائع! |
| That's good news. | انه لخبر جيد. |
| That's bad news. | انها لخبر سئ. |
| I didn't know that. | لم أكن اعرف ذلك. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

**1 Finish the following dialogue:**

**Noha is telling Hania good news about her cousin.**

**Noha** : Did you know that Randa's cousin is a famous newsreader?

**Hania** : ❶ ..................................................................?

**Noha** : Yes, she reads the local news every night at 10 pm.

**Hania** : ❷ ..................................................................

**Noha** : According to my mother, she is very good at her job.

**Hania** : ❸ ..................................................................

**Noha** : I heard that she might work for the national news soon.

**Hania** : ❹ ..................................................................!

**Noha** : ❺ ..................................................................?

**Hania** : No! I haven't heard she is going to get married soon. We should visit her.

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**stadium - giving - operator - said - taking - told**

I like ❶ .................. photos, but I don't want to be a photographer. I hope to be a camera ❷ .................. because it is a great job and it is always different. Today, we are going to a sports ❸ .......... because my mother wants to have a meeting with a famous footballer. She's a reporter. She ❹ .......... I could go with her.

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A/An .................. is something that you say or do to tell people about danger or to tell them not to do something. Longman

a. warning b. interview c. festival d. mistake

2. The noun "tradition" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix ..........

a. -ing b. -or c. -al d. -ful

3. Don't worry, the baby's temperature is normal. "Normal" is an antonym for " .............".

a. dishonest b. unclear c. abnormal d. unimportant

4. It was a wonderful day! "Wonderful" is the synonym of ..........

a. expensive b. easy c. amazing d. hard

5. They're going to come together to discuss the problem. This means they are going to have a ..........

a. meeting b. picnic c. festival d. mistake

6. He likes to climb mountains. This means he is a ..........

a. reporter b. climber c. poet d. businessman

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Dalia said that it .................. (will) be hot on Monday. WB
2. Heba said that they .......... (didn't go) to the museum the previous week. WB
3. The scientist explained that the world .............. (is warming) because there was climate change. SB
4. The housewife .............. (say) the thief had stolen the house the last night. القاهرة 2023
5. Roqia said that she .............. (is) so tired the previous day before.

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story you have read online"

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What is the name of this short story?
- When have you read the story?
- Did you like it? Why?
- What about its characters?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have read a short story about ..............................
- I read it online, it was about ..............................
- The characters are ..............................
- I liked it because ..............................



# Unit 11 Review



## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| award | جائزة | meeting | اجتماع/لقاء | normal | عادى/طبيعى |
| media | الإعلام / وسائل الإعلام | festival | مهرجان | interview | مقابلة شخصية |
| businesses | شركات/أعمال تجارية | apparently | على ما يبدو/بوضوح | replace (d) | يُبدل/يستبدل |
| governor | حاكم/محافظ | stuck | عالق | design (ed) | يصمم (شئ) |
| career | حياة مهنية | pipe | انبوب (ماسورة) | research(ed) (n) | يبحث - بحث |
| tourism | السياحة | warning | تحذير | graduate (d) | يتخرج فى (جامعة) |
| broadcasting | بث اذاعى/تليفزيونى | female voice | صوت نسائى | retire (d) | يتقاعد عن العمل |
| broadcaster | مذيع | early life | فى بداية حياة.... | serve (d) | يقدم ( طعام ) |
| linguist | متخصص فى اللغويات/عالم لغويات | presenter | مذيع/مقدم (برامج) | report (ed) (n) | يقدم تقرير - تقرير |
| | | cross (adj) | غاضب - متضايق | burst (v.burst) (n) | ينكسر - ينفجر - انفجار |
| | | witness | شاهد ( على حادثة/جريمة ) | | |

## Jobs in the media

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| camera operator | مشغل الكاميرا ( مصور تليفزيونى ) | radio presenter | مقدم برامج إذاعية |
| journalist | صحفى | web designer | مصمم مواقع/صفحات على الانترنت |
| newsreader | مذيع/قارئ نشرة الأخبار | editor | رئيس التحرير - محرر |
| photographer | مصور فوتوغرافى | | |



## Language

### 1- Remember The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن شيء حدث في الماضي وانتهى.
- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادة تكررت فى الماضى

**Ex.** My father arrived home late last night.

**Ex.** I always walked to school when I was young.

**Ex.** I didn't hear about yesterday's accident.

Ex. Did Ola cook for the family yesterday?

Ex. How did you make this cake?

**Keywords** الكلمات الدالة

| yesterday | in (2010) | in the past | ago |
|---|---|---|---|
| last (night / week / month / year) | | one ( day - week) | once |

## 2- Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech الكلام المباشر وغير المباشر

الكلام المباشر (Direct speech) هو الكلام الفعلى الذى قاله الشخص ويأتى بين علامات تنصيص "....."

الكلام غير المباشر (Indirect speech) هو نفس كلام الشخص لكنه منقول على لسان شخص آخر ويكتب بدون علامات تنصيص.

خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية

• فعل القول فى الكلام المباشر يأتى إما قبل الكلام أو بعده لكن عند التحويل إلى الكلام غير المباشر يأتى قبل الكلام.

**(Direct)**

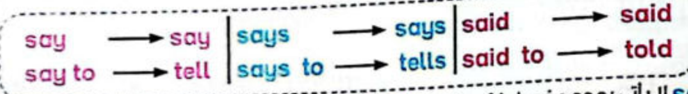
Ex. Ali said, "I'm going to buy a car."

= "I'm going to buy a car," said Ali.

**(Indirect)**

- Ali said that he was going to buy a car.

١- يحول فعل القول عادةً كما يلى:



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| say → say | says → says | said → said |
| say to → tell | says to → tells | said to → told |

• الفعل said لا يأتى بعده مفعول لكن الفعل told لابد أن يأتى بعده مفعول.

٢- نحذف علامات التنصيص ونربط بـ (that) ويمكن حذفها.

٣- نقوم بتحويل الضمائر في الجملة بما يتفق مع المعنى عند نقل الكلام

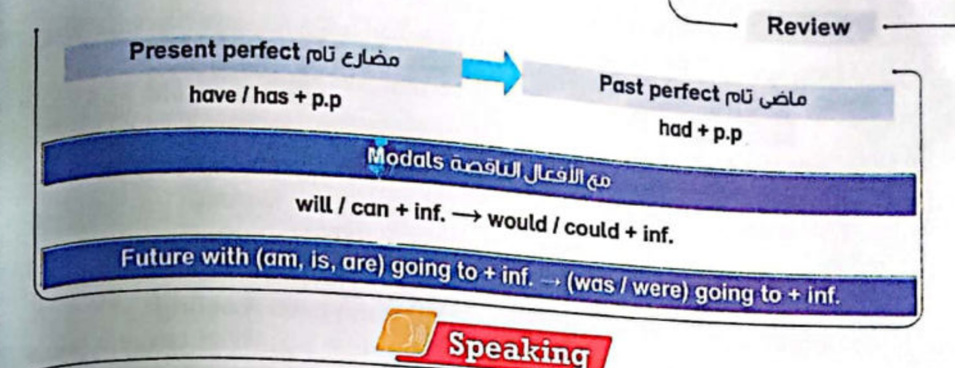
٤- يتم تحويل ظروف الزمان والمكان وأسماء الإشارة في الجملة غير المباشرة .

٥- يتم تحويل الأزمنة الى الماضى كما يلى:

| Direct speech | Reported speech |
|---|---|
| **Present simple** مضارع بسيط<br>(s/es/ies) + فعل / مصدر الفعل | **Past simple** ماضى بسيط<br>التصريف الثانى للفعل |
| **Past simple** ماضى بسيط<br>التصريف الثانى للفعل | **Past perfect** ماضى تام (had +p.p) |
| **Present continuous** مضارع مستمر<br>am / is / are + v-ing | **Past continuous** ماضى مستمر<br>was / were + v-ing |



Review



| | |
|---|---|
| **Present perfect** مضارع تام<br>have / has + p.p | **Past perfect** ماضى تام<br>had + p.p |

**Modals** مع الأفعال الناقصة

will / can + inf. → would / could + inf.

**Future with (am, is, are) going to + inf. → (was / were) going to + inf.**

## Speaking

### 1) Asking and giving opinions

السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Would you like to work in the media? Why? | - Yes, I would like to work in the media because I want to know more people. |
| - Which jobs would you like to do in the media? Why? | - I would like to work as a journalist because I want to write about different things in life. |
| - Which jobs wouldn't you like to do in the media? Why? | - I wouldn't like to work as a camera operator. This won't let me meet and talk to different kinds of people. |

### 2) Reporting an accident

الإخبار عن حادث

A: Was there an accident yesterday?

B: Yes, there was.

A: What happened?

B: A car was about to hit a child, but it hit a big tree.

A: Did the police arrive quickly?

B: Yes, they did.

A: What did the police do?

B: They took the damaged car to the side of the road.

A: Did you go to school on time?

B: Unfortunately, we went to school late!

## 3 Asking and giving opinions:

السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء :

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - What do you think about studying online? | - I like it because it saves time.<br>- I don't like it because I can't discuss things with my friends. |
| - What do you think about doing sport? | - I think it is good for our health. |

## 4 Asking and answering questions about radio broadcasting:

السؤال والإجابة عن البث الاذاعى :

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Was radio broadcasting very important in the last century? Why? | - Yes, it was very important as it helped us learn and know many things. |

## 5 Asking and answering questions about radio broadcasting:

تقديم تقارير اخبارية :

| Discussing the news مناقشة خبر / نبأ | Responding to news! الرد على خبر / نبأ |
|---|---|
| - Have you heard that ...? | Really? |
| - Did you know that ...? | Wow! |
| - According to (the newspaper)...... | That's good news. |
| - I heard that, | That's bad news. |
| - Apparently | I didn't know that. |

# General Exercises on Unit 11

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Nada and Hala is talking about Dr Magdy Yacoub.**

**Nada** : Do you know Dr Magdy Yacoub?
**Hala** : ❶ ..............................................
**Nada** : ❷ ..............................................?
**Hala** : I know that he visited Aswan in 1990.
**Nada** : ❸ ..............................................?
**Hala** : He helps children with sick hearts.
**Nada** : Have you heard that we are going to have a meeting with him?
**Hala** : ❹ ..............................................
**Nada** : We can ask him to visit our village, too.
**Hala** : ❺ ..............................................





### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**1** **got - tell - spend - exciting - interested - told**

I always visit famous tourist places in Egypt. My favourite is the Egyptian Museum. It is an ❶ ................ place. I am ❷ ................ in history. The museum is so huge, you can ❸ ................ nice time there. My father ❹ ................ me that he had visited it before.

**2** **do - have passed - operator - had passed - designer - applied**

I'm pleased to tell you some good news. Last month, I ❶ ................ for a new job. Yesterday, the secretary told me that I ❷ ................ the interview. I'm happy to ❸ ................ the job I prefer. I'm going to work as a camera ❹ ................ for a famous TV channel. What about your work? I hope you'll have more success in your career.

**3** **told - about - get - said - journalist - grow**

We like our social studies teacher very much. He always says to us, "Everyone must be careful ❶ ................ the job they choose." Last week, he said to me, "Which job will you prefer when you ❷ ................ up?" I ❸ ................ him that I wanted to be a ❹ ................. I like to look for true and exciting news related to most people, especially the famous.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ........ is someone who introduces the different parts of a television or radio show.
   a. presenter  b. editor  c. governor  d. graduate
2. Newspapers, magazines, television, the internet and other forms of communication are all types of ...........
   a. mountain  b. medicine  c. meteorite  d. media
3. Unfortunately, the old man wasn't saved. "Unfortunately" can be replaced by ...........
   a. Uncommonly  b. Unluckily  c. Interestingly  d. Lately
4. The word "operate" is turned into a noun by using the suffix ...........
   a. -or  b. -ful  c. -er  d. -less

5. Mr Tawfeek works for Al Akhbar newspaper. This means he's a / an ..........

a. engineer b. journalist c. mechanic d. player

6. He can't go anywhere. He is .......... in his house because of the flood.

a. busy b. full c. stuck d. free

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The government .......... (build) a new bridge in our town last year.
2. .......... (Be) there many people at the party yesterday?
3. Salma said that she always .......... (like) taking photographs.
4. Did you .......... (knew) that I bought a car last week?
5. Noura said that it .......... (will) be hot on Monday.

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A biography of a person you know "Farouk Shousha"

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Where was he born? - Where did he graduate from?
- What about his career? - What did he talk about in his programmes?
- What do you know about the awards he won?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- He was born in .................... - He graduated from ....................
- He worked as ..............................
- He presented many programmes ..............................
- In his programmes, Shousha always talked about ..............................





# Al Azhar Test



## 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ola : Have you ever read about Safia el Mohandas?
Aya : ❶ ..........................................................................
Ola : ❷ ..........................................................................?
Aya : She was the first female radio presenter.
Ola : ❸ ..........................................................................?
Aya : She was called "the mother of all broadcasters".

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**do - make - for - newsreader - since - presenter**

My brother Hazem hopes to find a good job. He has been thinking about media ❶ .......... a long time. He doesn't like to be on TV as a ❷ .......... because he would be nervous. Instead, he wants to be a radio ❸ ..........; that would be cool! So, he will work hard to ❹ .......... more success in his new job by all means.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet. He was born in Damietta in 1936. he went to a nearby elementary school. He went to the local library at a very early age, and was able to read many books in the Arabic language. Later on, He went to Cairo University and graduated from the faculty of Dar Al–Ulum in 1956. Shousha presented many programmes. He always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, He was called the guardian of the Arabic language. He won the Nile prize for literature in 2016..

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What did Shousha always talk about?

..........................................................................

2. Where did he go at a very early age?

..........................................................................

3. Which faculty did he graduate from?

..........................................................................

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Shousha was born in the .................. century.
   a. 19th b. 20th c. 13th d. 16th
5. He was called the .................. of the Arabic language.
   a. gardener b. greener c. guardian d. grade

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .......... is someone who reads the news on television or radio.
   a. photographer b. tourist c. sailor d. newsreader
2. To .......... is to send programmes or some information by radio or TV.
   a. retire b. present c. award d. broadcast
3. The manager said he .......... the clients the following day.
   a. meet b. would meet c. met d. will meet
4. The man .......... us that he would attend the meeting.
   a. said b. told c. asked d. said to

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There .............. (be) a dangerous accident on the road to our school yesterday. SB
2. Arwa .............. (says) me that she would visit me on Friday.
3. Ahmed told us that he .............. (is doing) his homework then.

## 6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

2022 ... اعجاب عنه في أخر الوحدة

"A bad accident happened on the road to your school"

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................





# Al Azhar Exercises



## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



### A Vocabulary

**SB & WB Exercises**

1. A person whose job is to read the news is a .......... WB
   a. news designer b. news reviewer c. news maker d. newsreader
2. The police want to talk to Ola and the other .......... who saw the accident last night. WB
   a. designer b. businessman c. researcher d. witness
3. Many businessmen have.......... with their customers to discuss their work. WB
   a. garages b. customs c. traditions d. meetings
4. People often give you a .......... when something might be dangerous. WB
   a. smile b. warning c. present d. speech
5. My favourite newsreader has studied .......... and language at university. WB
   a. science b. media c. chemistry d. biology
6. We can't play football because the ball has ..........! WB
   a. burst b. fixed c. closed d. filled
7. That .......... takes water from the roof of our house to the ground. WB
   a. article b. tape c. pipe d. type
8. My father was .......... because my young brothers made so much noise. WB
   a. hungry b. happy c. pleased d. cross

**Longman Exercises**

9. I was late for work because I was .......... in a very busy street in the city centre.
   a. stored b. allowed c. stuck d. started
10. We should try to get our news from trusted .......... online.
    a. websites b. situations c. operations d. locations
11. A .......... introduces radio programmes such as news or social programmes.
    a. web designer b. police officer
    c. camera operator d. radio presenter
12. .......... is a play for the theatre, radio, or television.
    a. Drawing b. Music c. Photography d. Drama

13. Safia el Mohandes was the first female ............ in Egypt.
   a. radio presenter    b. linguist
   c. recorder    d. producer
14. Egyptian radio ............ started in 1934. It was the first in Africa and the whole Arab world.
   a. news reading    b. photography
   c. broadcasting    d. writing

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

15. It is very bad. There are a lot of spelling ............ in my writing.
   a. breaks    b. talks    c. apps    d. mistakes
16. You should have many ............ to get that job.
   a. picnics    b. skills    c. stars    d. mistakes
17. Egypt has a film ............ every year.
   a. festival    b. website    c. flood    d. park
18. The child was ............ when his toy broke.
   a. cross    b. famous    c. pleased    d. hungry
19. To ............ is to send a programme or some information by radio or TV.
   a. retire    b. present    c. award    d. broadcast
20. A ............ is a series of contests in some sports or games
   a. towel    b. tower    c. tournament    d. tour
21. A ............ is a person who rules an area or a city.
   a. witness    b. worker    c. governor    d. tourist
22. Tourists like visiting old and ............ villages in Egypt.
   a. traditional    b. terrible    c. bad    d. ugly

## B Language

23. She ............ that she was happy that they had finished. SB
   a. told    b. said    c. says    d. tells
24. The police said that lots of mobile phones ............ been stolen that year. SB
   a. had    b. have    c. would    d. could
25. Kareem said that more jobs ............ be a good thing. SB
   a. will    b. would    c. has    d. have
26. Samy said that he ............ tired. WB
   a. will    b. was    c. is    d. are
27. The teacher said that ............ books were very interesting. WB
   a. this    b. that    c. these    d. those
28. Tamer ............ me that he was ill. Longman
   a. said    b. tell    c. told    d. says





29. My friend said that he ............ to go to Cairo Airport to meet his uncle. Longman
   a. has    b. have    c. had    d. having
30. Hadi ............ me that he would travel to London on Friday. Longman
   a. says    b. said    c. explained    d. told
31. Nada told me that she ............ be ready for the journey. Longman
   a. can    b. will    c. would    d. may
32. Sagda said that she ............ met the new manager. Longman
   a. had    b. has    c. have    d. is
33. He didn't ............ to bed early yesterday.
   a. went    b. going    c. go    d. gone
34. Last week, I ............ a very important museum.
   a. visit    b. visiting    c. visited    d. to visit
35. A famous actor ............ to our village last month.
   a. comes    b. is coming    c. will come    d. came
36. Rahma told us that she ............ the Egyptian Museum the next day.
   a. visits    b. visiting    c. would visit    d. will visit
37. Fatma said that she ............ tired the day before.
   a. is    b. would be    c. will be    d. had been
38. Samir told me that he would ............ to London the following week.
   a. travelled    b. travels    c. travelling    d. travel
39. Sally ............ Samira, "I will go to Cairo tomorrow."
   a. told    b. said    c. said to    d. asked
40. Heba told me that her plane ............ to London that day.
   a. leaves    b. left    c. leaving    d. leave
41. Ahmed told me that he ............ abroad the next week.
   a. are travelling    b. had travelled    c. would travel    d. travelling
42. Jana said that it ............ be cold on Monday.
   a. will    b. can    c. may    d. could
43. Huda said that she ............ the film the day before.
   a. watch    b. don't watch    c. hadn't watched    d. doesn't watch
44. Ramy said that he ............ to go to the park.
   a. want    b. wants    c. wanted    d. will want
45. Ali told me that he had bought a new laptop ............
   a. the following day    b. tomorrow
   c. now    d. the day before
46. Ali told me that he would buy a new laptop ............
   a. the following day    b. now
   c. the day before    d. the previous week

# Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

**1- "A short story about a flood in city centre"** (Lessons 1 & 2)

Yesterday, I went down to have a walk. After a few minutes' walk, I saw many people standing on the corner of the street. When I came nearer, I asked what was the matter. Someone told me that there was a flood in the city center because of a burst water pipe. The police came quickly with some men from the city and began fixing the pipe as traffic stopped and people were stuck in their cars. It didn't take long. The pipe was fixed and people began to clean their businesses. The city center opened again and everything went well later on.

**2- "A biography of a person you like who was working in the media"** (Lessons 3 & 4)

Dr Mustafa Mahmoud was born in Shibin el-Kom. He graduated from the faculty of medicine, and became a famous doctor. But later he worked as a journalist and writer for famous newspapers. He wrote 89 books in different subjects. He began working in the media and presented his well-known programme "Al-elm wa al-eman", which was watched by most Egyptians. He had his hospital and charity which always helped the poor in our society. I really like that man, and I want to be like him in the future.

**3- "A short story you have read online"** (Lessons 5 & 6)

I like to read stories on the internet. Yesterday, I read a story called "The Old Man and the Sea". It is a story of an old, poor fisherman. He couldn't catch any fish for a long time. The other fishermen were sorry about him. They wanted to help him but he always refused. One day, he took his small boat to catch fish. Finally, he could catch a big one. On his way home, many sharks came and ate that fish. They left it only a skeleton. When he reached home, he was very tired so he went to bed. He slept for a long time. Later, the fishermen saw the skeleton. They knew that he was strong and brave.

**4- "A biography of Farouk Shousha"**

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet. He was born in Damietta in 1936. He went to Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in 1956. He worked as a radio presenter and later on as a TV presenter. He liked poetry and Arabic literature very much. He presented many programmes like 'Our Beautiful Language". He always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and literature. For this reason, he was called 'the guardian of the Arabic language'. He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

**5- "A bad accident happened on the road to your school"** (Al Azhar)

There was a dangerous accident on the road to our school yesterday A car hit a big tree, and the driver was injured. We were stuck and couldn't move. The police arrived quickly and took the damaged car to the side of the road. Unfortunately, we went to school late!

**6- "A biography of a person you like most"** (Test)

Safia el Mohandes was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father encouraged her to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English literature at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts in 1945. In 1947, Safia joined the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female radio presenter. Safia presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme, 'Housewives', presented news, educational advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family. Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone, and so she was called the 'mother of all broadcasters'.







# Unit 11 Test

## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue:**

**Hamza and Mustafa are talking about an interesting book**

Hamza : How are things?
**Mustafa :** 1 ..........................................
Hamza : What are you doing?
**Mustafa :** 2 ..........................................
Hamza : Is reading a useful hobby?
**Mustafa :** 3 ..........................................
Hamza : 4 ..........................................?
**Mustafa :** The book is about a famous scientist, Dr Farouk El-Baz.
Hamza : 5 ..........................................?
**Mustafa :** He helped Egypt and other countries to find more water.

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**said - literature - wonderful - told - English - Egyptian**

The first 1 ........ writer to win the Nobel Prize for the Arabic literature was Naguib Mahfouz. There are many famous names in the Egyptian 2 ........ . Our teacher 3 ........ us that he had written a lot of 4 ........ novels and short stories.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

In the past, people simply contacted each other through letters only, but now, it is so easy to send messages, photos, posters and even personal news of them. Food, clothes, holidays and even birthdays became online events for a lot of people.

Recently, researchers have found out that, media such as Facebook, Instagram and other social media became a serious danger over families in different places. News is uncontrollable. No secrets can be kept, and of course **this** caused a lot of problems for the young and the old as well. Negative effects were shown in many shapes. So, everyone should work together to put an end to such destruction to our society.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is mainly about ..........
 a. social media b. news c. families d. letters
2. News has become .......... to control.
 a. easy b. hard c. slow d. nice
3. Different .......... suffer from the technology of social media.
 a. streets b. drivers c. families d. players

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What does the underlined word "**this**" refer to?
..........
5. What problems does social media cause?
..........
6. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
..........

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A .......... is a person whose job is to introduce programmes on the radio.
 a. journalist b. web designer
 c. radio presenter d. linguist
2. To .......... means to break open suddenly, or make something do this.
 a. burst b. burn c. present d. broadcast
3. The synonym of the word "female" is .......... 2022
 a. man b. woman c. adult d. customer
4. To turn the verb "present" into a noun, we use the suffix ..........
 a. -er b. -less c. -ive d. -ful
5. Murad works as a journalist. This means that he works in the ..........
 a. middle b. media c. station d. factory
6. A lot of cars were stuck on the road yesterday. This means they ..........
 a. could move b. were able to move
 c. could stay d. were unable to move





**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. She said that she .......... (can) help me the following day.
2. Mona said that she .......... (is living) in Paris then.
3. Yasser made a bad mistake, so the teacher .......... (punish) him.
4. A hundred years ago, people .......... (use) online websites, but now we use them.
5. He said to us, "The football tournament .......... (would) start tomorrow."

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"A biography of a person you like most" الإسكندرية 2023

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

..........

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- When and where was he / she born?
- What do you know about his / her education?
- What do you know about his / her achievements?
- Did he / she win any prizes?

- يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات:

- He / She was born in ..........
- I know that he / she ..........
- He / She did ..........
- He / She won ..........





**New Hello!**





# Into the future

## Objectives

**Reading:**

A text about future technology; a blog about personal goals; an article about future cities in Africa; a text about driverless cars

**Writing:**

A paragraph about personal goals and ambitions; a short report about a future technology

**Listening:**

A conversation about future predictions; a radio programme about learning in the future; students talking about their goals; talking about a city in the future

**Speaking:**

Making predictions; discussing future ability; discussing personal goals; expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future

**Language:** will / won't be able to

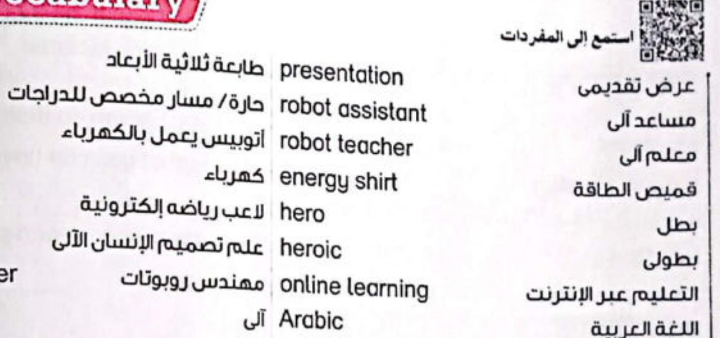
**Life Skills:**

Critical thinking and self-management

**SB / WB Answers** جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54-57 WB pages 107-108



## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3D printer | طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد | presentation | عرض تقديمي |
| cycle lane | حارة / مسار مخصص للدراجات | robot assistant | مساعد آلي |
| electric bus | أتوبيس يعمل بالكهرباء | robot teacher | معلم آلي |
| electricity | كهرباء | energy shirt | قميص الطاقة |
| e-sports player | لاعب رياضة إلكترونية | hero | بطل |
| robotics | علم تصميم الإنسان الآلي | heroic | بطولي |
| robotics engineer | مهندس روبوتات | online learning | التعليم عبر الإنترنت |
| robotic | آلي | Arabic | اللغة العربية |
| floating farms | مزارع عائمة | temperature | درجة الحرارة |
| solution | حل | device | جهاز |
| virtual reality | واقع افتراضي | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| robot | إنسان آلي | mask | كمامة |
| business meeting | لقاء / اجتماع عمل | Arab | شخص عربي |
| percent | نسبة مئوية ( في المائة ) | billion | مليار |
| prediction | تنبؤ | farmland | أرض زراعية |
| coronavirus pandemic | جائحة كورونا | produce (d) | يُنتج |
| challenge (n) | تحدٍ | charge (d) | يشحن |
| passport | جواز سفر | collect (ed) | يجمع |
| fabric | قماش | remind (ed) | يُذكر |
| driverless car | سيارة بدون سائق ( ذاتية القيادة ) | print (ed) | يطبع |

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| **3D printer** طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد | a machine that can make copies[1] of whole objects[2]. |
| **cycle lane** مسار مخصص للدراجات | - a special area, often on or near a road, for people to cycle[3] on |
| **robotics engineer** مهندس روبوتات | a person whose job is to design or work with robots |
| **temperature** درجة الحرارة | how hot or cold something is |
| **hero** بطل | a person who is admired by many people for doing something brave or good |
| **e-sports player** لاعب رياضة إلكترونية | a player of online video games |

١- نسخ
٢- أشياء
٣- يركب دراجة

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **device** | جهاز | - a machine or equipment for a particular[4] job<br>- electric equipment[5] that can do a special job (WB) |
| **virtual reality** | واقع افتراضي | when a computer makes you think that you are in a real place using pictures and sound<br>٤- محددة/معينة ٥- معدات |
| **assistant** | مساعد | somebody who helps a person do their job |
| **online learning** | التعليم عبر الإنترنت | education or teaching that you can have on the internet |
| **solution** | حل | a way to solve a problem or answer a puzzle or a question (WB) |

## Synonyms & Antonyms

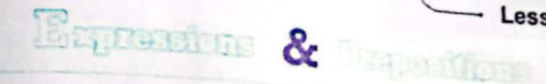
| Word | الكلمة | Synonym | المرادف | Antonym/opposite | المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| safe | آمن | secure | | dangerous | خطير |
| disappear | يختفي | hide | | appear | يظهر |
| outside | خارج | outdoors | | inside | داخل |
| robotic | آلي | mechanical | | manual | يدوي |
| float | يطفو | swim | | sink | يغرق |
| heroic | بطولي | brave | | cowardly | جبان |
| rise | يرتفع | increase | | decrease | يقل |
| advantages | مميزات | benefits / merits | | disadvantages / demerits | عيوب |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | Examples |
|---|---|---|
| e- | تضاف للاسم وتعنى "الكترونى" electronic | e-sports player<br>لاعب رياضة الكترونية |
| -ics | تضاف إلى الاسم لتعنى دراسة أو علم science | robotics علم تصميم الانسان الالى |
| -ic | n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | heroic / robotic / Arabic<br>بطولي/آلي/اللغة العربية |
| -y | | windy<br>عاصف |
| -ion / -ation | v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | prediction / presentation<br>تنبؤ/عرض تقديمي |
| -ant | person تكون اسم الفاعل | assistant<br>مساعد |
| -ly | adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الظرف/الحال | importantly<br>بشكل مهم |
| -ity | adj → n تحول الصفة إلى الاسم | reality<br>الواقع |







## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| produce electricity | ينتج الكهرباء | by 2030 | بحلول 2030 |
| charge a device | يشحن جهاز | on the farmland | في الأرض الزراعية |
| find solutions to | يجد حلول لـ | on the sea | على سطح البحر |
| do very well | يؤدي بشكل جيد | hear of | يسمع عن |
| do projects | ينفذ مشروعات | remind.....to | يذكر......بفعل شيء |
| make designs | يقوم بعمل تصميمات | in different ways | بطرق مختلفة |
| keep safe | يحافظ على سلامة | apply for a job | يتقدم لوظيفة |
| that's a pity | هذا مؤسف | in about a year's time | في غضون سنة تقريبا |
| do talks | يجرى حوارات | in fact | فى الواقع/فى الحقيقة |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| feed | يُطعم | fed | fed |
| hurt | يؤلم - يُصيب | hurt | hurt |
| rise | يرتفع | rose | risen |

## Language Notes

### 1) remind / remember

- **remind (ed) (of) + n**
  يُذكر شخص بشيء/بشخص

  **Ex.** This old man reminded me of my grandfather.

- **remind (ed) (to + inf.)**
  يُذكر شخص أن يفعل شيء

  **Ex.** My mother reminded me to do my homework.

- **remember (ed)** يتذكر

  **Ex.** I can remember people's faces, but not their names.

### 2) pandemic / epidemic

- **pandemic** جائحة
  (مرض يصيب الناس بشكل سريع فى كل العالم)

  **Ex.** All countries did great efforts to stop coronavirus pandemic.

- **epidemic** وباء
  (مرض يصيب الناس بشكل سريع فى منطقة محددة)

  **Ex.** A lot of people died during flu epidemic in Spain.

## (3) device / tool

• **device**
جهاز كهربائي أو ميكانيكي لوظيفة محددة
Ex. A telescope is a device for seeing objects nearer.

• **tool**
أداة/ آلة - تُحمل باليد - وتستخدم فى مهنة
Ex. Carpenters use tools such as hammers and saws.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

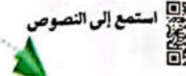
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .............. me to buy some milk tonight, please.
 a. Remember b. Forget c. Remind d. Hit
2. Coronavirus .............. caused death of many people all over the world.
 a. epidemic b. pandemic c. topic d. magic
3. The TV receiver is an electronic ..............
 a. tool b. machine c. device d. building

## Audioscript

SB Page (55)

استمع إلى النصوص







**Girl 1:** Look, this article says that cities across the world are building new cycle lanes[1]. This one is in Beijing[2]. It goes above the city.
**Girl 2:** That looks amazing!
**Girl 1:** According to the article, the most popular way to travel in future won't be by fast train or driverless car[3], it will be by bike.
**Girl 2:** Do you think that's possible?
**Girl 1:** Not really. It's good that some cities are building new cycle lanes, but I think there will always be quicker and easier ways to travel.
**Girl 2:** Hmm ... I think you're right.

١- مسارات الدراجات
٢- بكين (عاصمة الصين)
٣- سيارة بدون سائق
٤- طاقة متجددة
٥- في الحقيقة



**Boy 1:** So, this article is about the energy that we will use in future.
**Boy 2:** What does it say?
**Boy 1:** It says that we will all be using more renewable energy[4]. In fact[5], by 2050, all of our energy will be renewable.
**Boy 2:** I agree. We have to change to renewable energy to protect the planet.





(3)

**Girl 3:** It says here that we will need a lot more scientists[6] in the future.
**Girl 4:** Well, there are already a lot of jobs that people need science for. And in the future, science will be more important.
**Girl 3:** Why?
**Girl 4:** Well, with problems like climate change[7], we will need new ideas and new technology. We need scientists for this.
**Girl 3:** Oh yes. I see what you mean.

٦- علماء
٧- التغير المناخي
٨- دورة رياضية
٩- اكثر شعبية



**Boy 3:** Look at this e-sports tournament[8], 60 million people watched it online.
**Boy 4:** Yes, e-sports are becoming really popular.
**Boy 3:** It says here that e-sports will be more popular[9] than football by 2030.
**Boy 4:** I don't think that will happen. Billions of people watch football matches. E-sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.
**Boy 3:** No, I don't think they will.

SB Page (57)

**Interviewer :** Well, we've all got our own ideas about what life will be like in the future. Perhaps we'll be able to control devices[1] with our eyes or travel in planes that go into space ... But what will education[2] be like? Dr Leila Hamed, an expert[3] in education and technology, is here to tell us more.
So, Dr Leila Hamed. How do you think education will be different in the future?
**Dr Leila :** Well, recently,[4] all students have been doing more online learning[5]. And I'm sure that they'll do more of their learning this way in the future.
**Interviewer :** So what are the advantages[6] of online learning?
**Dr Leila :** The great thing about online learning is that you don't need lots and lots of books, so you can work anywhere. Students will be able to complete a school project wherever[7] they are. And they won't be able to lose their homework!
**Interviewer :** That's true![8] ... And what kind of new technology could we see in the classroom?

١- اجهزة
٢- التعليم
٣- خبير
٤- حديثًا - مؤخرًا
٥- التعلم عبر الأنترنت
٦- مزايا
٧- أينما
٨- هذا صحيح

**Dr Leila :** I think 3D printers[9] will be very important in the future. Students will be able to use these to make all kinds of things.

**Interviewer :** So will they be able to print[10] anything they like?

**Dr Leila :** No, they won't be able to print very large things or objects made from certain materials,[11] but they will be able to print models[12] and even make their own designs.

**Interviewer :** Great! ... I've heard that some places, such as restaurants, shops and even hospitals are starting to use robot assistants[13]. Do you think that we could use robot assistants in schools?

**Dr Leila :** No, I don't think so. I think that in future, robots will help with simple jobs in some places, but it would be very difficult to make a robot that could teach a lesson! So, I don't think that we will see robots in the classroom.

**Interviewer :** That's a pity[14]. It would be fun to have a robot teacher!

**Dr Leila :** Well, lessons in the future will definitely[15] be fun! Teachers already use the internet for videos and educational[16] games. In the future, it's going to be even more exciting. Students will be able to use virtual reality[17] to discover new things or explore places that are far away or that existed in the past.

**Interviewer :** So you think that in a history lesson, students will be able to visit ancient Egypt?

**Dr Leila :** Yes, they will! Of course, the students won't be able to taste[18] the food or smell the flowers, but they will be able to see the people and places.

**Interviewer :** That does sound[19] exciting! ... But what about traditional[20] teaching? Will students still listen to the teacher and answer questions? Will they do talks, projects and presentations[21]?

**Dr Leila :** Yes, of course! These things will always be important. It's the teacher's job to present the lesson and make sure that students understand[22]. But technology will help to make them more exciting.

**Interviewer :** Well, it's been really interesting talking to you, Dr Leila Hamed. Thank you!

**Dr Leila :** You're welcome.

٩- طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
١٠- يطبع
١١- مواد
١٢- نماذج
١٣- مساعدين
١٤- هذا مؤسف
١٥- بالتاكيد
١٦- تعليمى
١٧- الواقع الافتراضى
١٨- يتذوق
١٩- يبدو
٢٠- تقليدى
٢١- عروض تقديمية
٢٢- يفهم








## THE TECHNOLOGY OF TOMORROW

Here are three things that could be part of our lives in the future.

### Floating farms

One of the biggest problems we will have in the future is how to feed[1] the world. As the population[2] grows and sea levels[3] rise, we won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland[4] we have. One solution[5] is to build floating farms[6] on the sea. The farms will have solar panels[7] so they will be able to produce[8] their own electricity.

### Energy shirts

Have you heard of a shirt that can charge[9] your phone? Scientists have made a new fabric[10] that produce electricity as it moves. This means that we'll be able to charge our devices as we run or walk outside.

### Robot assistants

When we go to hospital in the future, we may see doctors, nurses ... and robots! During the coronavirus pandemic[11], robot assistants worked in hospitals in Rwanda[12]. They checked people's temperatures[13], collected information and even reminded people to wear masks[14]! More importantly, they helped to keep hospital workers safe.

١- يطعم
٢- تعداد السكان
٣- مستوى سطح البحر
٤- أرض زراعية
٥- حل
٦- مزارع عائمة
٧- ألواح شمسية
٨- ينتج
٩- يشحن
١٠- قماش
١١- جائحة كورونا
١٢- دولة رواندا
١٣- درجات الحرارة
١٤- كمامات

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Definitions**

1. A/An .......... is electric equipment that can do a special job. WB
   a. device   b. office   c. mask   d. price
2. A/An .......... is a way to solve a problem or answer a puzzle or a question. WB
   a. farmland   b. challenge   c. solution   d. passport
3. A .......... is a special place where people can cycle on roads.
   a. solution   b. farm   c. rail   d. cycle lane
4. A / An .......... is a machine that can make copies of whole objects.
   a. GPS   b. 3D printer   c. CV   d. MP3 player

5. A/ An .......... is a person whose job is to design or work with robots
a. volunteer b. robotics engineer c. accountant d. sports person

6. A .......... is a person who is admired by many people for doing something brave or good.
a. hero b. mask c. robot d. dream

7. .......... learning is education or teaching that you can have on the internet
a. Offline b. Face to face c. School d. Online

8. A/An .......... is somebody who helps a person do their job.
a. assistant b. sports person c. expert d. robot teacher

### Synonyms & Antonyms

9. The antonym of the word "dangerous" is .......... 2022
a. safe b. different c. harmful d. serious

10. "Heroic" is similar in meaning to ..........
a. brave b. secure c. cowardly d. manual

11. The antonym of the word "manual" is "..........".
a. local b. safe c. exciting d. robotic

12. The verb "rise" means ..........
a. decrease b. go down c. sink d. increase

13. The word "disappear" is the opposite of ..........
a. large b. vanish c. appear d. important

### Prefixes & Suffixes

14. To get the adjective from the word "hero", We add the suffix.......... 2023
a. -ment b. -ly c. -ic d. -ful

15. The verb "print" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix "..........". 2022
a. -or b. -er c. -able d. -ful

16. The prefix ".........." means "electronic".
a. e- b. inter- c. un- d. re-

17. We get the noun from "predict" by adding the suffix "..........".
a. -er b. -ly c. -ion d. –ion

### Guessing the meaning

18. The toy moves like a robot. This means it is ..........
a. robotic b. heroic c. safe d. protected

19. Omar always cycles at the side of the road. He always uses the ..........
a. 3D printer b. cycle lane c. electric bus d. energy shirt

20. In the future, there will be electric buses. This means they will use ..........
a. electricity b. oil c. water d. wind








## 1- The Future Simple "revision"

**Form التكوين**

يتكون زمن المستقبل البسيط كالآتى:

فاعل (كل الضمائر) + will + inf.

١- يستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل فى المستقبل مع عدم وجود دليل على ذلك.

Ex. In the future, we will use renewable energy.

٢- يستخدم فى اتخاذ القرارات السريعة.

Ex. Someone is at the door. I'll open it.

٣- يستخدم فى العرض والطلب.

Ex. Will you help me, please? (request طلب)

Ex. I will help you. (offer عرض)

٤- يستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق فى المستقبل.

Ex. My sister will be 15 next year.

**Negative النفى**

تنفى زمن المستقبل البسيط كالآتى:

فاعل + won't (will not) + inf.

Ex. E-sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.

**Question السؤال**

السؤال بهل Will + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. Will Heba arrive tonight?

السؤال بكلمة استفهام (كلمة استفهام) will + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. When will she change this old car?

**Key words الكلمات الدالة**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tomorrow | غداً | next (week/month..etc.) | (الأسبوع / الشهر ..) القادم |
| in the future | في المستقبل | one day | يوماً ما |
| in + سنة قادمة (in 2030) | في سنة | by + سنة قادمة (by 2050) | |
| soon | قريبًا | | |

## 2- The ability in the future with " will / won't be able to"

- نستخدم (will / won't be able to) للحديث عن القدرة فى المستقبل:

**Form التكوين**

فاعل + will be able to +inf. (مصدر الفعل)

Ex. In the future, the floating farms will be able to make their own electricity.

Ex. Scientists will be able to find good solutions to the challenges of the future.

Ex. We won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland we have.

**Question السؤال**

السؤال بهل — Will + فاعل + be able to + inf...?

Ex. Will 3D printers be able to print large objects?

السؤال بكلمة استفهام — (كلمة استفهام) will + فاعل + be able to + inf...?

Ex. What will floating farms be able to produce?

# Exercises on Language

## Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)in brackets:

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Nawal hopes that she ........ (able) work as an engineer when she's older. SB
2. In the future, I think we .............. (will able) to produce electricity in lots of different ways. SB
3. It's very windy, so we .......... (don't) be able to go to the beach today. WB
4. My baby sister is six months old, so she will be able ................ (starting) speaking in about a year's time. WB
5. In the future, more people .......... (learn) online.
6. How big .......... (Cairo be) in 2050?
7. It's raining, we .......... (be) able to go out today.

**Longman Exercises**

8. Do you think it ............ (rained) tomorrow?
9. I am not sure our team will ............ (wins) the match.
10. Dalia hopes she will be able ............ (of passing) the final exam.
11. ............ (We will) be able to solve the problem of pollution?
12. I ............ (will) go to school tomorrow because I'm very sick.

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

13. She always studies hard. She ............ (able) pass the next exam.
14. Next Sunday, I will be able ............ (see) the new fountains in the park.
15. ............ (We will) travel to space one day?
16. What places will she ............ (visits) when she travels to Paris?
17. If you don't study well, you ............ (will) be able to find a good job.
18. She ............ (is) do the shopping for her mother tomorrow.
19. .......... (You will be able) to travel abroad when you finish your university?
20. The teacher is sorry. She ............ (doesn't) be able to help them.





# Speaking

## Making predictions

عمل تنبؤات

لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل نستخدم الآتى:

- I think......will + inf. — اعتقد أن........سوف.........
- I think......won't + inf. — اعتقد أن........لن............

Ex. In the future, I think there will be new types of transport

Ex. I think our cities will be bigger, but they won't have as much traffic.

Ex. I think that more people will ride bikes in the future. We won't have as many cars on the road.

Ex. By 2100, 95 percent of people will live in tall buildings.

# General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Samar and Randa are talking about schools in the future.**

**Samar** : How do you think schools will be in the future, Randa?
**Randa** : ❶ ..........................................................
**Samar** : Will online learning be better?
**Randa** : ❷ ..........................................................
**Samar** : ❸ ..........................................................?
**Randa** : We will be able to do our homework online everywhere.
**Samar** : ❹ ..........................................................?
**Randa** : Yes, I think we can communicate with our teachers on social media.
**Samar** : ❺ ..........................................................
**Randa** : Of course, that will be enjoyable.

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**are - reality - technology - be - into - over**

In the future, our lives will be easier. We will use ❶ .............. at any place like schools, companies and our homes. In schools, I think we will ❷ .............. able to apply the online learning all ❸ .............. the world. We will also use the virtual ❹ .............. and visit places from the past.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: WB

1. A/An .............. is a special place where people can cycle on roads.
   a. platform b. floating farm c. cycle lane d. airport
2. A/An .............. is a machine or equipment for a particular job.
   a. device b. office c. advice d. price

3. If you throw a piece of wood into water, it floats." Float" is an antonym for "..............".
a. appear   b. swim   c. sink   d. come

4. Prices are rising all over the world. "Rise" here is similar in meaning to "..............".
a. improve   b. move   c. decrease   d. increase

5. Electric machines are used everywhere. When we add the suffix "-ity", to "electric", we change it into a/an "..............".
a. verb   b. adjective   c. noun   d. adverb

6. He expects that Al-Ahly will win the next match. This means he is making a ..............
a. prediction   b. contribution   c. invention   d. discovery

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There will be lots of challenges in the future, but scientists .............. (be able) find good solutions to some of them. SB WB
2. What .............. (is) the weather be like tomorrow?
3. Do you think we .............. (be able to) live on the moon in the future?
4. I'm sure you .............. (will) be able to lift the heavy box; I will help you.
5. I think Ali .............. (get) the top mark in the next exam. He is so clever.

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of schools in the future."

2022 ... (تجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- **What do you think we will have at schools in the future?**
- **Do you think we will be able to use 3D printers?**
- **Do you think we will use the virtual reality?**
- **What do you think we won't be able to use?**

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

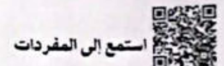
- **In the future, we will have .................. at schools.**
- **We will be able to ..................**
- **We will not be able to ..................**



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 110-111

## Key Vocabulary



استمع الى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| skill | مهارة | university | جامعة |
| sports team | فريق رياضي | volunteer | متطوع |
| professional | محترف/مهني | set up | يؤسس/ينشىء |
| professional qualification | تأهيل مهني | monorail | قطار معلق أحادي القضبان |
| internship | تدريب عملي | district | حي سكني - مقاطعة |
| distance | مسافة | cashless | غيرنقدي |
| marathon | ماراثون (سباق مسافات طويلة) | reuse (d) | يعيد استخدام |
| online course | دورة تعليمية عبر الإنترنت | train (ed) | يتدرب |

### jobs وظائف

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| business person | رجل اعمال | mechanic | ميكانيكي |
| engineer | مهندس | architect | مهندس معماري |
| sports person | شخص رياضي | accountant | محاسب |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| dream | حلم | administrative capital | عاصمة إدارية |
| apartment | شقة | ambition | طموح |
| technical schools | مدارس فنية | charity | جمعية خيرية |
| experience | خبرة | rainwater | مياه الأمطار |
| public transport | مواصلات عامة | race | سباق |
| disabled | معاق (من ذوي الهمم) | achieve (d) | يحقق/ينجز |
| disability (ies) | اعاقة | create (d) | ينشيء |
| IT = information technology | تكنولوجيا المعلومات | link (ed) | يربط |
| | | connect (ed) | يصل/يربط |
| expert | خبير | | |

## Definitions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **distance** | مسافة | how much space [1] is between two things | ١- مساحة/فراغ |
| **marathon** | ماراثون | a running race [2] of around 42 kilometres | ٢- سباق جري |
| **monorail** | قطار معلق احادي القضبان | a railway [3] system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground. | ٣- سكة حديد |
| **district** | حي سكني | an area of a town, city or the countryside [4]. | ٤- الريف |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| cashless | غير نقدي | - done or working without using cash<br>- done without using money you can hold |
| internship | تدريب عملي | when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job |
| set up | يؤسس | start a business |
| skill | مهارة | the ability* to do something well (*قدرة) |
| professional qualification | تأهيل مهني | something that shows you have special training to do a job |
| train | يتدرب | to prepare for a sports event by exercising |

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| professional | محترف | skilful | amateur | هاو |
| pass | يجتاز | succeed in | fail | يفشل |
| important | مهم | necessary | unimportant | غير مهم |
| smart | ذكي | intelligent | stupid | غبي |
| cashless | غير نقدي | without using money | cash | نقدا |
| set up | يؤسس | start | end / finish | ينهي/ينتهي |
| expert | خبير | skilful | inexpert | غير خبير |

## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples |
|---|---|---|---|
| mono- | one | تضاف قبل الاسم تعني "أحادي" | monorail قطار معلق احادي القطبان |
| re- | again | تفيد اعادة الفعل مرة أخرى | reuse / redo / rewrite يعيد استخدام/يعيد فعل/يعيد كتابة |
| dis- | opposite | تفيد عكس المعنى | disabilities اعاقات |
| -ant | person | تُكون اسم الفاعل | accountant محاسب |
| -al | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | professional / technical محترف/فني |
| -ion | n | تكون الاسم | qualification مؤهل |
| -ship | | | internship تدريب عملي |
| -less | without | تعطي معنى "بدون" | cashless / driverless غير نقدي/بدون سائق |
| -ity | adj → n | تحول الصفة الى اسم | ability / disability قدرة/اعاقة |





## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| set goals | يحدد أهدافا | reuse rainwater | يعيد استخدام مياه المطر |
| achieve goals | يحقق أهدافا | pass through | يمر عبر |
| get a qualification | يحصل على مؤهل | link the city to | يربط المدينة بـ |
| set up a business | يؤسس شركة | walk round in | يتجول في |
| do marathon | يشارك في ماراثون | connect......with | يوصل.....بـ |
| do an internship | يؤدي تدريب عملي | with disabilities | ذوي الاعاقة |
| do an online course | يأخذ دورة تدريبية عبْر الانترنت | | |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| set up | يؤسس | set up | set up |
| rewrite | يعيد كتابة | rewrote | rewritten |
| burn | يحرق | burned / burnt | burned / burnt |

## Language Notes

### 1) would ('d) like / like

- 'd like + to + inf / noun يريد/أريد

Ex. Ex. I would ('d) like to have some tea.
Ex. I would like some tea.

- like + to + inf. / v.ing / noun يحب

Ex. I like to play tennis.
Ex. I like playing tennis.
Ex. I like tennis.

- (be) like يشبه-يبدو

Ex. Samir is just like his father, he loves to play tennis.
Ex. What will the weather be like tomorrow?

### 2) dream / plan

- لاحظ بعض الكلمات تستخدم كافعال واسماء:

- dream (ed) (n) يحلم-حلم

Ex. My dream is to be rich.
Ex. I dream of living by the sea.

- dream job وظيفة الأحلام

Ex. Noura's dream job is to become a robotics engineer.

- plan (ed) (n) يخطط-خطة

Ex. Do you plan for your future?
Ex. Do you have a future plan?

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Magid ............ to be a doctor in the future.
   a. like  b. 'd like  c. 'll like  d. liking
2. Omar likes ............ to the cinema every weekend.
   a. going  b. goes  c. to going  d. went
3. Ali works hard to achieve his ............
   a. draws  b. drinks  c. dreams  d. drives

## Audioscript (SB Page (58))

استمع إلى النصوص

**Narrator :** Taha.

**Taha :** First of all,[1] I want to finish my education[2] and do well in my exams. But when I leave school, I don't want to become a business person or an accountant.[3] My dream is to become a professional[4] basketball player. I've been playing basketball since I was six and I love it. I play for my local team. I practise every evening, because I want to improve[5] my skills. My ambition[6] is to join the national team[7] and play for my country.

**Narrator :** Fatma.

**Fatma :** My ambition is to become an architect[8]. I think it would be amazing to look at buildings in a city that I had designed. I know it won't be easy, so I'm going to work very hard. I need to pass my exams to go to university. When I've finished university, I'm going to get an internship[9] with a good company[10].

**Narrator :** Khaled.

**Khaled :** I love computers, so when I finish school, I'd like to work for an IT[11] company. I'm going to do an online course to get some professional[12] qualifications.[13] That will mean that I can get a really good job one day. I could even set up[14] my own business[15] one day!

١- في البداية
٢- تعليم
٣- محاسب
٤- محترف
٥- يحسن - يطور
٦- طموح
٧- الفريق الوطني
٨- مهندس معماري
٩- فترة تدريبية
١٠- شركة
١١- تكنولوجيا المعلومات
١٢- مهني/محترف
١٣- مؤهلات
١٤- يؤسس
١٥- شركة/عمل تجاري





**Narrator :** Malak.

**Malak :** I'm not sure what I want to do when I'm older, but I'd like to do something to help other people or to help protect the environment. I think it's important to get a good education so I'd like to go to university, but I'm also going to work as a volunteer[16]. I think it will be a good way to find out[17] more about what kind of job I want and to meet new people.

١٦- متطوع
١٧- يكتشف

### WB Page (109)

**1**

**Injy :** I'm Injy. I know which job I want to do. I'm going to study very hard for many years, but when I finish, I'll get a good job. I'm going to design some amazing buildings. They'll all use renewable energy[1].

**2**

**Hany :** My name's Hany. I'm also going to study hard for many years. I want to learn how to help people who are sick. I think this is a really important job. I'll probably[2] work in a hospital.

**3**

**Hoda :** I'm Hoda. When I was little, my grandparents[3] bought me a toy. It could walk and talk! I'm going to do a job which will make toys like this even better in the future. I'm going to design machines[4] that will walk and talk and also be able to help people do things.

**4**

**Amir :** I'm Amir. Before I take a job that pays[5] me, I'm going to do something to help people. There are many people who do not have homes or enough to eat. I'm going to help a charity[6] that makes these people's lives better.

١- طاقة متجددة
٢- من المحتمل
٣- اجدادي
٤- آلات
٥- تدفع
٦- جمعية خيرية



## Reading (SB Page (17))

### My goals for the future

**By Hussein**

I love maths and science, so when I leave Preparatory school, I'd like to go to a technology school[1]. My dream is to become a robotics engineer.

Robotics engineers can create[2] anything from machines for hospitals to robots that go into space[3].

١- مدرسة تكنولوجيا
٢- ينشئ
٣- الفضاء

Technology schools help students with the skills[4] that I will need to work well with this technology, although it won't be easy. You need to pass a test to get into a technical school. Students who are successful[5], often work in factories[6] and businesses[7] to get experience[8], and often get jobs there when they leave school.

Sport is also a big part of my life. I like playing handball and football, but my favourite sport is running. I'm in a local team[9] and we usually run 10 kilometres per day, but we're going to train to run longer distances[10]. I'd love to do the Egyptian marathon[11] when I'm old enough.

Finally, I want to do something to help other people. When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends.

There is a children's hospital near my apartment[12]. Volunteers go to the hospital to read to the children and play games with them. I think that would be a great thing to do, so I'm going to ask how I can help.

٤- مهارات
٥- ناجح
٦- مصانع
٧- شركات
٨- خبرة
٩- فريق محلى
١٠- مسافة أطول
١١- ماراثون
١٢- شقة

**Reading Skill** مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The text is about ............
   a. Hussein's ambitions  b. Hussein's parents
   c. Hussein's problems  d. Hussein's experiences
2. Infer from the text why Hussein would like to be a robotics engineer.
3. Where do students at technical schools often work?

**Writing Skill** مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى كتابة الموضوع الانشائى)

- My dream is to become a robotics engineer. - حلمي أن أصبح مهندس روبوتات.
- Robotics engineers can create anything from machines. - يستطيع مهندسي الروبوتات إنشاء أي شيء من الآلات
- I want to do something to help other people. - أريد أن أفعل شيئًا لمساعدة الآخرين.
- When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends.
- عندما أكبر، سأعمل كمتطوع في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع.

**Answers**

1. Hussein's ambitions.
2. Because robotics engineers can create anything from machines for hospitals to robots that go into space.
3. In factories and businesses to get experience.





SB Page (60)

## Our cities of the future

Africa's population[1] is growing quickly. Experts[2] believe that by 2050, there will be twice as many people in Africa as there are today. Many African countries are planning exciting new cities, where people can live, work and study. What will these cities of the future be like?

### New Administrative Capital

My country is planning for a new administrative capital[3] in the desert, east of Cairo. The New Administrative Capital is going to have modern universities, offices and hotels. There will be a monorail[4] passing through the business districts[5]. Electric trains[6] will link[7] the city to other cities around Egypt. The city is designed to work with smart technology. Roofs will be covered in solar panels[8].
The shops will be cashless[9], and they will have more green spaces to walk round in the city.

**Dalia, 15, Egypt**

١- تعداد السكان
٢- خبراء
٣- عاصمة إدارية
٤- قطار معلق أحادى القضبان
٥- مناطق/أحياء
٦- قطارات تعمل بالكهرباء
٧- يربط
٨- ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
٩- غير نقدي
١٠- مراكز التسوق
١١- خطة
١٢- مياه الأمطار
١٣- مواصلات عامة

### Diamniadio Lake City

My country is planning an amazing new city: Diamniado Lake City. It will have modern apartments, offices, hotels, shopping centres[10] and sports stadiums. There will be schools and universities. A new train will connect the new city with our capital city, Dakar, so people will be able to travel between the cities easily.

**Oumar, 16, Senegal**

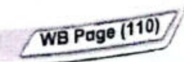
### The Green City Kigali

I live in the capital city of Rwanda, Kigali. It's a beautiful city and a lot of people come here to live. Now, there is a plan[11] to create a new part of the city: Green City Kigali. The buildings will use renewable energy and reuse rain water[12]. There will be cycle lanes and good public transport[13], but it will also be easy to walk around the city. I think there will be lots of cities like this in Africa one day.

**Alice, 15, Rwanda**

WB Page (109)

I'm good with numbers, so I'm going to get a good job with a business in Cairo. I'll probably do an internship first. But this is an important job. All businesses need to know how much money they have! That's why I'm going to be an accountant.



WB Page (110)

## Cities of the future

What will cities be like in the future? Architects are already planning how city life could be better for all of us. Here are some of their ideas.

Cities need water, but at the moment, most rainwater is taken away from our cities. In the future, cities will have areas which will collect[1] water when it rains. Then people will be able to use the water for plants, cleaning, etc.

Cities will have houses for many people, but they will also have big parks. The trees and other plants will give us clean air, and also give a home to animals and birds. There will also be city farms. People will grow their own food in gardens on roofs.

The city will only use renewable energy. This won't come from outside the city, but will be made by solar panels and wind turbines on buildings.

Transport will be very fast, safe and cheap. Cars will be driverless[2]. That means there will be more space for walk or cycle. People will be healthier, and life will be easier for people with disabilities[3].

١- يجمع
٢- ذاتية القيادة
٣- إعاقة

## Videoscript

SB Page 60

More than five years ago, the government[1] decided to build a new capital[2] city in Egypt. It is going to be located[3] east of Cairo. The government wanted to create[4] this new city because the population[5] of Egypt is very big, and it is growing. In the future, there will be more people who want to live in cities like Cairo, Alexandria and Giza.

The new city will have homes for[6] more than six million people. These people will be able to visit parks, shops, an opera house[7] and restaurants. There will also be jobs for these people. Lots of people will be able to work here because the government and many businesses will move here.

١- الحكومة
٢- عاصمة جديدة
٣- تقع
٤- ينشئ
٥- تعداد السكان
٦- مساكن ل
٧- دار الأوبرا
٨- يدفع ل
٩- يتجول

The new city is going to be a smart city. This means that it will use technology to do a lot of things, such as control traffic, control the energy that people use and make the city a safe place to live.

People will be able to use this technology to do many everyday things. For example, if you want to buy something in the shops, you won't need money. You will be able to use your phone to pay for[8] things. And if you want to get around[9] the city, you will be able to use a monorail. A monorail is a train that often travels above the ground.

Will you live and work in the new capital city when you are older?





## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. A .......... is a running race of around 42 kilometres. WB
   a. district b. qualification c. marathon d. skill
2. A/An .......... is when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job. WB
   a. internship b. charity c. skill d. course
3. A .......... is how much space is between two things WB
   a. disability b. distance c. district d. skill
4. A .......... is the ability to do something well. WB
   a. device b. skill c. disability d. dream
5. A professional .......... is something that shows you have special training to do a job. WB
   a. distance b. link c. ambition d. qualification
6. A/An .......... is a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground. Longman
   a. monorail b. lane c. train d. airport
7. A .......... is an area of a town, city or the countryside. Longman
   a. continent b. city c. lane d. district

### Synonyms & Antonyms

8. The word "cashless" is a synonym of "..........".
   a. money b. paying in cash
   c. without using money d. in cash
9. The word "smart" is similar in meaning to the word "..........".
   a. different b. intelligent c. stupid d. disabled
10. Khaled would like to set up his own business. "Set up" is a synonym of "..........".
    a. connect b. link c. protect d. start
11. The opposite of "important" is ..........
    a. necessary b. unimportant c. public d. stupid
12. .......... is an antonym of the word "professional".
    a. Stupid b. Private c. Amateur d. Cruel

### Prefixes & Suffixes

13. Rewrite your composition. The prefix "re-" means to do it ..........
    a. next b. first c. again d. last

14. The suffix .............. is added to the word "cash" to mean "without."
a. -less  b. -ness  c. -tion  d. -ity

15. The prefix "mono-" means "..............".
a. two  b. one  c. plural  d. no one

16. We use the suffix ".............." to turn "profession" into an adjective.
a. -ness  b. -al  c. -inlo  d. –ian

17. The word "abilities" is turned into the opposite by adding the prefix "..............".
a. dis-  b. de-  c. im-  d. ir-

### Guessing the meaning

18. He is good with numbers so he wants to be a/an .............. SB
a. accountant  b. farmer
c. doctor  d. professional person

19. Tarek is a skilful accountant. This means that he has .............. qualifications.
a. local  b. usual  c. professional  d. manual

20. I was tired after the marathon. This means that I ran a long ..............
a. skill  b. distance  c. goal  d. experience

## Language

### Future with (be) going to:

- نستخدم (be going to) للحديث عن الخطط التي قمنا بإعدادها أو الأشياء التي قررنا القيام بها في المستقبل.

**Form التكوين**

فاعل + am / is / are (not) + going to + inf

**Ex.** When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends.
**Ex.** Khaled is going to do an internship to get some professional qualifications.
**Ex.** She's going to work as a volunteer as she wants to help people.
**Ex.** They are not (aren't) going to watch the match tonight.

**Question السؤال**

السؤال بهل  Am / Is / Are + فاعل + going to + inf...?

**Ex.** Is he going to do an internship?
**Ex.** Are you going to work as a volunteer?

السؤال بكلمة استفهام  (كلمة استفهام) + am / is / are + فاعل + going to + inf...?

**Ex.** What are you going to do when you finish university?
**Ex.** What is Amr going to do at the weekend?





**Keywords الكلمات الدالة**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I have planned | خططت | It's my plan | إنها خطتي |
| I have decided | قررت | It's my decision | انه قراري |
| I intend | أنوي | It's my intention | إنها نيتي |

## Exercises on Language

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)in brackets:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. When I've finished university, I'm .............. (go) to get an internship with a good company. SB
2. He .............. (going) to work as a volunteer. SB
3. Omar is going to .............. (studies) very hard. SB
4. .............. (You are) going to work as a volunteer at weekends? SB
5. Injy .............. (is going) be an architect. WB
6. Which jobs .............. (they are) going to do? WB

### Longman Exercises

7. What do you intend to do tomorrow? - I .............. (will) visit my uncle in Tanta.
8. I .............. (spend) the holiday in Hurghada as planned.
9. We .............. (going) to buy a bigger house in our village.
10. He .............. (will) complete his study abroad, as he decided.
11. I .............. (am going to) Alexandria next month; this is my plan.
12. What .............. (you are) going to study when you join the university?

### Bit by Bit Exercises

13. The new city .............. (will) be a smart city as planned.
14. He .............. (is going) to go to the party because he is too busy.
15. When .............. (he is) going to come to the meeting?
16. Ahmed .............. (going design) some amazing buildings.
17. Is your brother .............. (going) travel soon?
18. We .............. (not going have) dinner together tomorrow.
19. Which athlete .............. (going to) win the race?
20. I .............. (design) machines that will walk and talk. It's my intention. 

## Speaking

مناقشة الأهداف الشخصية

### Discussing personal goals

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| 1. What's your dream job?<br>- ما هى وظيفة احلامك؟ | - My dream job is to be a robotics engineer.<br>- وظيفة احلامى هى أن اصبح مهندس روبوتات. |
| 2. What can you do to achieve your dream job?<br>- ماذا يمكنك فعله لتحقيق وظيفة احلامك؟ | - I can go to a technical school.<br>- يمكننى أن التحق بمدرسة فنية. |
| 3. What are your other goals?<br>- ما هى اهدافك الآخرى؟ | - I want to be a successful person.<br>- احلم بأن اكون شخص ناجحا. |
| 4. What can you do to get your dream job?<br>- ماذا يمكنك فعله لتنال وظيفة أحلامك؟ | - I have to work hard to achieve my goals.<br>- يجب أن اعمل بجد حتى احقق اهدافى. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4



### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Fatma and Noura are talking about dream jobs.**

**Fatma** : Do you have a plan for your dream job?
**Noura** : I always think about my dream job.
**Fatma** : ❶ ........................................................................ ?
**Noura** : My dream job is to be an accountant.
**Fatma** : Really! Why do you want to do this job?
**Noura** : ❷ ............................................................ . What about you?
**Fatma** : ❸ ........................................................................
**Noura** : ❹ ........................................................................ ?
**Fatma** : Because I like creating new things like machines and robots.
**Noura** : ❺ ........................................................................

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**Administrative - will be - is - population - districts - pollution**

Africa's ❶ ........ is growing quickly. I think there ❷ ....... twice as many people as there are today. Many African countries are planning exciting new cities like the New ❸ ....... Capital in Egypt. It will have modern universities. There will be c monorail passing through the business ❹ ........ .





### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To ............ means to start a business. WB
   a. set up   b. sit down   c. train   d. stand up
2. A ............ is a long race of about 26 miles or 42 kilometres. Longman
   a. speed   b. marathon   c. competition   d. way
3. The antonym of the verb "pass" is "............".
   a. fail   b. succeed in   c. improve   d. increase
4. We use the suffix ............ with the word "able" to give the noun.
   a. -ity   b. -less   c. -al   d. -ion
5. My mother has a special skill in making dresses. This means she is a/an ............ at making them.
   a. student   b. trader   c. trainee   d. expert
6. He designs buildings and advises on their construction. He is a/an ....... Longman
   a. architect   b. builder   c. doctor   d. trader

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Talia speaks Japanese, so she ........... (be able) to apply for the job in Tokyo. WB
2. Adam has hurt his leg, so he ........... (will) be able to play football on Saturday. WB
3. The visitors to the zoo won't be able to ........... (feeding) the monkeys. WB
4. I'm good with numbers, so I'm going ........... (get) a good job with a business in Cairo.
5. I ........ (do) an online course to get some professional qualifications. It's my plan.

### 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of life in the future"

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:
- What is the article about?
- What will cities be like in the future?
- What about houses in the future?
- Do architects plan for that?
- Will transport be faster?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- The article was about........................
- Architects are already planning how........................
- Cities will have houses for many........................
- Transport will be........................

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| spacecraft | مركبة فضاء | definitely | بالتأكيد |
| drone | طائرة بدون طيار | controls (n) | أدوات/مفاتيح التحكم |
| flying cars | سيارات طائرة | law | قانون |
| perhaps | ربما | likely | محتمل |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| testing | تجربة - اختبار | negative | سلبى |
| everywhere | في كل مكان | conclusion | خاتمة |
| passenger | راكب | road signs | لافتات الطريق |
| impossible | مستحيل | rule | قاعدة - قانون |
| helicopter | طائرة مروحية | improve (d) | يحسن - يطور |
| engine | محرك - موتور | affect (ed) | يؤثر على |
| completely | بالكامل | damage (d) | يتلف |
| probably | من المحتمل | follow (ed) | يتبع |
| positive | إيجابي | | |

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| **controls (n)** أدوات/مفاتيح التحكم | things used to operate[1] a vehicle[2] or a machine |
| **likely** محتمل | probably going to happen or probably true |
| **probably** من المحتمل | almost certain[3] |
| **definitely** بالتأكيد | certainly[4], without any doubt[5] |
| **law** قانون | the rules that people in a country or place must follow |
| **drone** طائرة بدون طيار | a type of aircraft that doesn't have a pilot. |

١- يشغل
٢- مركبة
٣- أكيد
٤- بالتأكيد
٥- شك

## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| positive | ايجابى | good | negative | سلبى |
| agree | يوافق | accept | disagree | يرفض |
| sure | متأكد | certain | unsure | غير متأكد |
| different | مختلف | various | the same | نفس الشئ |
| improve | يُحسن - يُنمي | develop | damage | يتلف |
| take off | تقلع الطائرة | fly | land | تهبط |
| definitely | بالتأكيد | certainly | uncertainly | بشكل غير مؤكد |





## Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

| Prefix / Suffix | Use | | Examples |
|---|---|---|---|
| dis- | opposite | تعطى عكس المعنى | disagree |
| im- | | | impossible |
| -ly | adj → adv | تحول الصفة إلى الحال | definitely / probably / likely |
| -ment | v → n | تحول الفعل إلى الاسم | equipment |
| -ful | v/n → adj | تحول الفعل/الاسم إلى الصفة | useful |
| -ous | n → adj | تحول الاسم إلى الصفة | dangerous |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| make sure | يتأكد | have a holiday | يأخذ اجازة |
| make less pollution | يحدث تلوث أقل | to begin with | بداية |
| make laws | يصدر قوانين | land on | تهبط على |
| do lots of testing | يجري تجارب كثيرة | in conclusion | ختاماً |
| follow rules | يتبع قوانين | at the earliest | على أقرب تقدير / في موعد أدناه |
| become worse | يصبح اسوأ | far away | بعيد |

## Language Notes

### 1) • look for / look forward to

- **look for** يبحث عن (شخص/شىء)

Ex. I lost my English book, so I looked for it everywhere.

- **look forward to + (V.ing /noun)** يتطلع الى / يتوق الى

Ex. My uncle is coming back from Canada, that's why I look forward to meeting him.

### 2) • another/ other / others

- **another** (آخر / إضافى / مختلف) ويأتى بعدها اسم مفرد يُعد

Ex. My brother has bought another car.

Ex. Would you like another cup of coffee?

- **other** (الآخر / الآخرون / الباقون) ويأتى بعدها اسم/جمع

Ex. There will be other forms of energy in the future.

- **others** ( آخرون ) ولا يأتى بعدها اسم ولكن يأتى بعدها فعل ، ويمكن ان تأتى آخر الجملة

Ex. Some people arrived on Monday. Others arrived the following day.

(3) • without بدون — يأتي بعدها اسم أو V +ing

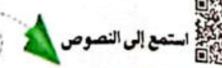
Ex. I went to work without my mobile phone.
Ex. I left the restaurant without paying for the food.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I am looking forward ........... my first journey this time.
   a. to take  b. take  c. taking  d. to taking
2. This pen isn't good. Give me ........... one, please.
   a. other  b. the others  c. another  d. others
3. This is a public place. You can enter without ........... money.
   a. paying  b. pay  c. to paying  d. pays

## Audioscript

SB Page (61)  استمع إلى النصوص

**Amal** : What do you think our city will be like in 2050, Huda?
**Huda** : Hi Amal ... Well, I think there will definitely[1] be more people in our city.
**Amal** : So will there be lots of smart new apartments in the city centre for them to live in?
**Huda** : Hmm ... I'm not sure.
**Amal** : Really?[2] Why not?
**Huda** : There might be some new apartments in the city centre,[3] but these could be very expensive.
**Amal** : So where will everyone live?
**Huda** : I think there will probably[4] be new apartments around the city.
**Amal** : And what about shops and restaurants?
**Huda** : Yes, I'm sure that there will be more of these. Perhaps[5] there will be a new shopping centre,[6] too.
**Amal** : And what will the city look like?[7] Will there be more tall buildings?[8]
**Huda** : Yes, I think that's very likely[9]. Tall buildings are a good idea in cities because there isn't much land to build on.
**Amal** : But with tall buildings, a new shopping centre and restaurants, our city could look completely[10] different.
**Huda** : I don't think so. There are lots of historic[11] buildings in the city, and it's important to protect these.

١- بالتأكيد
٢- حقًا
٣- وسط المدينة
٤- من المحتمل
٥- ربما
٦- مركز تجاري
٧- تبدو
٨- مباني شاهقة
٩- محتمل
١٠- تماما - بالكلية
١١- تاريخي





WB Page (111)

**Aya** : Look at this quiz[1] about the future? Shall we do it, Lina?
**Lina** : OK, Aya. What's the first question?
**Aya** : One. In the future, everyone will go to university. Nobody will leave school[2] at 18. What do you think?
**Lina** : I don't think so. Some people will find university too difficult. They will learn different skills[3] instead[4].
**Aya** : Yes, I agree.[5] Two. All cars will be driverless. Nobody will be able to drive their own car any more.
**Lina** : I'm not sure. There will definitely be driverless cars, but there will probably be normal[6] cars too. What do you think?
**Aya** : Yes, I agree. There might be a few normal cars that important people can drive. Last question: All energy will be from the sun.
**Lina** : I think that's very likely, don't you?
**Aya** : Well, I'm sure that we'll all use renewable energy. But perhaps there will be other forms of energy,[7] such as wind.

١- اختبار قصير
٢- ينهي الدراسة
٣- مهارات
٤- بدلاً من ذلك
٥- يوافق
٦- عادي
٧- أشكال الطاقة

## Reading

SB Page (20)

### A technology that will change our lives

**By Munir Osman**

**How will driverless cars improve our lives?**

In future, driverless cars will change all of our lives. We will be able to travel anywhere without touching the controls[1] or even looking at the road! Driverless cars will also be better for the environment because they will be electric.

**What problems do we still need solutions for?**

However, there are still some problems. Car companies will have to do lots of testing[2] to make sure that the cars are completely[3] safe[4]. We will also have to make new laws[5] and we might even have to change some of our road signs[6] so that the cars' computers can read them.

**When will driverless cars be on our roads?**

So when will we be able to travel in driverless cars? Some experts believe that we will have to wait until 2030 at the earliest[7]. Others think that driverless cars will be here much sooner, but we may still need people at the controls to begin with.

**How does the writer feel about driverless cars?**

It's impossible[8] to know who is correct, but we can be sure of one thing: driverless cars will be part of our future. I'm looking forward[9] to taking my first journey in one.

١- أدوات/مفاتيح التحكم
٢- تجارب/اختبارات
٣- تماما
٤- آمن
٥- قوانين
٦- اشارات / لافتات الطريق
٧- على أقرب تقدير
٨- مستحيل
٩- أتطلع إلى

SB Page (63)

In the future, I think there will be new types of transport so that we will be able to travel everywhere faster. This means we will be able to save time and do more things in a day.

**Magda**

It's important to help protect the environment, but we won't be able to get all of our energy from solar farms and wind turbines for many years. We will need to build more of them. We will also need more cycle lanes in cities so people will be able to travel without using energy at all.

**Fares**

I'm sure that in the future, we will be able to send more spacecraft into space. But the planets in our solar system are too far away for people to travel to, so astronauts won't be able to visit them.

**Nasser**

WB Page (112)

### Flying cars

For this week's project[1], I research[2] flying cars[3]. We now have the technology that will be able to make flying cars. In fact, engineers think that flying cars will be more like helicopters[4] than planes. That is because helicopters can take off [5] from small areas in cities. They will use electricity, because electric engines[6] are not very noisy.

Although there are difficulties[7], flying cars might be the answer to a lot of problems. Cities are becoming busier[8] and traffic[9] on the ground is becoming worse. If there were flying cars, people could fly to work from far away. They would not have to live in big cities. Flying cars could land on the roofs[10] of buildings, and that would mean more space[11] in the streets for people to enjoy. Electric flying cars would make less pollution[12], too.

Already, a company[13] in Germany has developed[14] a flying taxi. It will be able to carry one passenger[15] and might start flying in 2022. However, journeys will be very expensive. People also worry that flying cars might not be very safe. If there were a lot of flying cars above a city, it could be very dangerous! For example, what would they do in bad weather, or if there were a lot of birds? And what about planes?

In conclusion[16], we already have the technology to make drones[17] and other things that can fly. I think that it's very likely we will see flying cars in the future.

١- مشروع
٢- أقوم بعمل بحث عن
٣- سيارات طائرة
٤- طائرة مروحية
٥- تقلع
٦- محركات
٧- صعوبات
٨- أكثر إزدحامًا
٩- المرور
١٠- أسطح
١١- مساحة - فراغ
١٢- تلوث
١٣- شركة
١٤- طورت
١٥- راكب
١٦- ختامًا
١٧- طائرات بدون طيار





## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Definitions

1. .......... are things used to operate a vehicle or a machine.
   a. Laws b. Controls c. Farms d. Companies
2. A/An .......... is a type of aircraft that doesn't have a pilot.
   a. drone b. engine c. helicopter d. law
3. The .......... is the rules that people in a country or place must follow.
   a. drone b. law c. test d. conclusion
4. .......... means certainly, without any doubt.
   a. Probably b. Likely c. Definitely d. Slightly

### Synonyms & Antonyms

5. Good is the synonym of "..........".
   a. controlled b. dangerous c. useless d. positive
6. Lessons in the future will definitely be fun. The antonym of "definitely" is ..........
   a. certainly b. surely c. uncertainly d. lovely
7. I want to improve my French to live in France. "Improve" is similar in meaning to "..........".
   a. save b. damage c. produce d. develop
8. The antonym of "positive" is ..........
   a. negative b. expensive c. alive d. good
9. I agree with you. "agree" is the opposite of ..........
   a. accept b. start c. disagree d. solve

### Prefixes & Suffixes

10. We add the prefix ".........." to the word "agree" to form the opposite.
    a. dis- b. un- c. re- d. ab-
11. The suffix ".........." turns the verb "equip" into a noun.
    a. -ty b. -ive c. -ion d. -ment

12. It's a driverless car. The suffix "-less" means .......... a driver.
a. next b. with c. for d. without

13. The suffix "........." turns the noun "use" into an adjective.
a. -ness b. -ful c. -tion d. -ive

14. To turn the adjective "possible" into the opposite, we add the prefix ..........
a. in- b. dis- c. im- d. un-

**Guessing the meaning**

15. We may use flying cars in the future. This means that .......... we will use them.
a. like b. sure c. perhaps d. impossible

16. I think that it's very likely we will see flying cars in the future. We will .......... see them.
a. probably b. impossible c. impossibly d. like

17. He was sent to prison. This means that he did something against the ..........
a. controls b. law c. low d. role

18. I always try to make my skills better. I try to .......... them.
a. remain b. decrease c. remove d. improve

## Speaking

### 1) Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future

التعبير عن التأكد وعدم التأكد فى المستقبل

| Expressing certainty | Expressing uncertainty |
|---|---|
| - I think that's very likely. اعتقد انه محتمل جدا. | - I don't think so. لا اعتقد ذلك. |
| - I'm sure that........ انا متأكد ان....... | - I'm not sure. لست متأكد. |
| - There will definitely be............... بالتأكيد سيكون هناك............... | - Perhaps there will be....... ربما سيكون هناك....... |
| | - There might be....... ربما سيكون. |
| | - There will probably be...... من المحتمل أن يكون هناك....... |





## General Exercises on Lessons 5,6 & 7



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Jamal and Eyad are talking about transport in the future.**

Jamal : Cairo is a very noisy city and there is too much traffic, too.
Eyad : 1 ................................................................
Jamal : Do you think it will be easy to move on roads in the future?
Eyad : 2 ................................................................
Jamal : 3 ................................................................?
Eyad : I think so because there will be modern means of transport.
Jamal : 4 ................................................................?
Eyad : Yes, I think there will be flying cars.
Jamal : Where do you think they will land?
Eyad : 5 ................................................................

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**roads - solve - would be - drones - will be - likely**

In fact, technology is very necessary. It can change our lives. It helps us to 1 ........ our problems. One of these problems is the traffic. I think there 2 ........ new means of transport. There will be flying cars, driverless cars and 3 ........ They will help us to move freely on 4 ........

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's .......... that my father will travel abroad next week. He will probably travel next week. Longman
a. impossible b. likely c. unlikely d. sure

2. What are the negative sides of learning at home? "Negative" is opposite in meaning to "...". Longman
a. expected b. bad c. positive d. possible

3. My parents often ..........-agree with me on the suggestions that waste time. 2022 الدقهلية
a. dis- b. im- c. un- d. in-

4. "Definitely" is similar in meaning to ..........
a. uncertainly b. lonely c. certainly d. unsure

5. You're right. I .......... with you.
a. improve b. refuse c. disagree d. agree

6. Laws are rules we must ..........
a. break b. follow c. leave d. hit

WB

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The New Administrative Capital is going .......... (have) modern universities. SB
2. I'm .......... (go) to work very hard. I need to pass my exams to go to university. SB
3. Hamid can't find his passport. He .......... (able to travel) to the business meeting in England tomorrow. WB
4. My goal .......... (will) to become an engineer. 

5. The visitors to the zoo .......... (will) be able to touch the snakes as they are dangerous.

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of an article about flying cars"

(محاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

1- How did you know about flying cars?
2- What type of energy will they use?
3- Where will they land?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

1- I have read an article about.........
2- Flying cars will use .................... for energy.
3- They will take off and land from ....................



# Unit 12 Review

## Key Vocabulary

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3D printer طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد | business person رجل اعمال | online course دورة تعليمية عبر الانترنت |
| distance مسافة | engineer مهندس | volunteer متطوع |
| temperature درجة الحرارة | hero بطل | set up يؤسس/ينشئ |
| electricity كهرباء | heroic بطولي | likely محتمل |
| floating farms مزارع عائمة | energy shirt قميص الطاقة | district حي - مقاطعة |
| solution حل | spacecraft مركبة فضاء | cashless غير نقدي |
| virtual reality واقع افتراضي | drone طائرة بدون طيار | mechanic ميكانيكي |
| presentation عرض تقديمي | flying cars سيارات طائرة | architect مهندس معماري |
| skill مهارة | perhaps ربما | accountant محاسب |
| sports team فريق رياضي | definitely بالتأكيد | controls (n) أدوات/مفاتيح التحكم |
| e-sports player لاعب رياضة إلكترونية | robot assistant مساعد آلي | |
| internship تدريب عملي | robot teacher معلم آلي | law قانون |
| robotics engineer مهندس روبوتات | device جهاز | sports person شخص رياضي |
| | university جامعة | probably من المحتمل |
| marathon ماراثون (سباق مسافات طويلة) | robotics علم تصميم الإنسان الآلي | feed يطعم |
| | | rise يرتفع |
| cycle lane حارة/مسار مخصص (للدراجات) | monorail قطار معلق أحادي القضبان | professional qualification تأهيل مهني |
| electric bus اتوبيس يعمل بالكهرباء | online learning التعليم عبر الانترنت | reuse (d) يعيد استخدام |
| | | train (ed) يتدرب |

## Language

### 1- The Future Simple "revision"

يتكون من: فاعل (كل الضمائر) + will + inf.

- يستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل مع عدم وجود دليل على ذلك.

Ex. I think I will buy a car one day.

النفي: فاعل + won't (will not) + inf.

Ex. Many sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.

السؤال بهل Will + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. Will Heba arrive tomorrow?

(كلمة استفهام) will + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. When will she go next month?

## 2- The ability in the future with " will / won't be able to"

- نستخدم (will / won't be able to) للحديث عن القدرة في المستقبل:

فاعل + will be able to +inf. (مصدر الفعل)

Ex. Magid will be able to pass the test and get the job.

في النفي فاعل + won't be able to +inf. مصدر الفعل

السؤال بهل Will + فاعل + be able to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

السؤال بكلمة استفهام كلمة الاستفهام + will + فاعل + be able to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tomorrow | غدًا | next....... | القادم/التالي ..... |
| in the future | في المستقبل | one day | يومًا ما |
| in + سنة قادمة<br>in 2030 | في سنة | by + سنة قادمة<br>by 2050 | بحلول |

## 3- Future with (be) going to

When I'm older, I am going to work as a volunteer at weekend.

I am not going to travel to Alex.

Are you going to the football match?

What are you going to do at the weekend?

## Speaking

### 1) Making predictions

عمل تنبؤات

- I think......will + inf.
- I think......won't + inf.
- فاعل + will + inf.
- فاعل + won't + inf.





### 2) Discussing personal goals

مناقشة الأهداف الشخصية

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| 1. What's your dream job? | - My dream job is to be a robotics engineer. |
| 2. What can you do to achieve your dream job? | - I can go to a technical school. |
| 3. What are your other goals? | - I want to be a successful person. |
| 4. What can you do to get your dream job? | - I have to work hard to achieve my goals. |

### 3) Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future

التعبير التأكد و عدم التأكد في المستقبل

| Expressing certainty | Expressing uncertainty |
|---|---|
| - I think that's very likely. | - I don't think so. |
| - I'm sure that ...... | - I'm not sure. |
| - There will definitely be...... | - Perhaps there will be ...... |
| | - There might be...... |
| | - There will probably be...... |

# General Exercises on Unit 12

### 1) Complete the following dialogue:

**Rana and Joudy are talking about their city in future.**

Rana : What do you think our city will be in 2050?

Joudy : ❶ ..................................................

Rana : ❷ ..................................................?

Joudy : I am not sure there will be more people.

Rana : ❸ ..................................................?

Joudy : I think people will live in smart apartments.

Rana : Do you think there will be shops and restaurants?

Joudy : ❹ ..................................................

Rana : How do you think we will solve the problem of pollution?

Joudy : ❺ ..................................................

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**1 using - panels - of - different - use - from**

Life in the future will be very ❶ ........ Houses will be more modern because they will have solar ❷ ........ Fridges will talk to people. They will tell them the temperature to keep the food in them. Life will be easier with technology. All electrical devices will ❸ ........ that type ❹ ........ energy.

**2 ride - will - drive - solution - won't - lanes**

Scientists have a lot of expectations for the future. They expect they will find a ❶ ........ to the problem of pollution. The government will build new cycle ❷ ........ .People ❸ ........ do a lot of things to have a cleaner environment. They will ❹ ........ modern, fast bikes and plant more trees to reduce pollution.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A / An ........ is a person who is admired by many people for doing something brave or good.
   a. robot b. mask c. engine d. hero
2. A ........ is a machine that allows us to create a physical object from a three-dimensional ثلاثي الأبعاد digital model.
   a. photocopier b. 3D printer c. camera d. lens
3. The company began testing driverless cars. The word "driverless" means........
   a. with a driver b. without oil c. without a driver d. electric
4. What are the advantages of online learning? "Advantages" is the opposite of the meaning of "........".
   a. demerits b. benefits c. causes d. results
5. We can get the adverb of "important" by using the suffix "........".
   a. -y b. -un c. -ful d. -ly
6. My little brother didn't feel well. That means he is........
   a. healthy b. well c. sick d. ancient





## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Osama didn't do very well in his exams, so he ........ (will) be able to go to university.
2. What do you think our city ........ (be) like in 2050? WB
3. I'm sure that in the future we will be able to ........ (sent) more spacecraft into space. WB
4. I think our cities won't have as much traffic. We ........ (are able to) walk round them easily. WB
5. I'm ........ (going do) an online course to get some professional qualifications. SB

## 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of our homes in the future" WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- How do you think homes will be in the future?
- What do you think we will be able to do at homes in the future?
- What do you think we won't be able to do at homes in the future?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- Technology will help develop........
- I think we will be able to........
- I think we won't be able to........

Unit 12

# Al Azhar Test



## 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Dalia** : Have you got a smart phone?

**Dina** : ❶ ................................................................................?

**Dalia** : ❷ ................................................................................

**Dina** : I bought it last week.

**Dalia** : How much did it cost?

**Dina** : ❸ ................................................................................

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**wherever - disadvantage - were - online - advantage - will be**

Some experts believe that education will be different in the future. Students will do more of their learning ❶ ............ . This has a great ❷ ............ . Students don't need lots of books. They can study anywhere and complete their schoolwork ❸ ............ they go. Above all, they ❹ ............ able to use 3D printers to print models or even make their own designs.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Scientists are very important to our future. <u>They</u> can help farmers to produce good quality food for the world's growing population. They can also develop new crops which don't suffer from diseases. Scientists and engineers can work with car companies to produce cars and other vehicles which use fuel more efficiently. At the same time, researchers scientists are looking for new types of energy to replace oil and petrol. Other scientists are doing research into new treatment for illness. Perhaps the most important work scientists are doing is to find ways of reducing global warming.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. How can scientists help farmers?

................................................................................

2. Why do scientists and engineers work with car companies?

................................................................................

3. Why are scientists important for the field of medicine?

................................................................................





**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun <u>they</u> refers to ............
   a. companies  b. problems  c. scientists  d. farmers
5. Scientists work hard to find ways of reducing global ............
   a. problem  b. warming  c. energy  d. power

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All cities should have ............ so it is safer to go by bike.
   a. airports  b. cycle lanes  c. ports  d. platforms
2. A person who designs robots is called a/an ............ .
   a. robotics engineer  b. volunteer  c. accountant  d. business person
3. With the energy shirt, we'll ............ charge equipment at home as we exercise.
   a. be  b. able to  c. be able to  d. able
4. Driverless cars ............ be better for the environment because they will be electric.
   a. will  b. are going  c. going to  d. won't

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I hope my father ............ (will) use this old car again; it always breaks down.
2. They ............ (going) to buy a new computer.
3. Students will be able ............ (using) 3D printers to make all kinds of things.

## 6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

"A job you would like to do in the future"

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

# Al Azhar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## A Vocabulary

### SB & WB Exercises

1. A: What will the .......... be like tomorrow? B: It will be snowy. WB
   a. time b. passport c. space d. weather
2. The toy moves like a robot. It is very ..........! WB
   a. public b. robotic c. robot d. heroic
3. The train does not use oil. It is .......... . WB
   a. electric b. virtual c. electricity d. pandemic
4. Our teacher can speak English, Spanish and .......... . WB
   a. Arabic b. Arab c. Arabian d. Egyptian
5. The firefighters saved a family from a fire. They were very .......... . WB
   a. hero b. lazy c. cowardly d. heroic
6. This is the device which can check people's .......... to see if they are ill. WB
   a. temperature b. homework c. population d. internship
7. This maths question is very difficult. What is the ..........? WB
   a. pollution b. solution c. presentation d. population
8. We should produce more food to .......... more poor people in the world. WB
   a. feed b. eat c. meet d. need
9. At the museum, you can see how the Ancient Egyptians lived using .......... reality. WB
   a. virtual b. false c. electric d. heroic
10. Prices usually .......... all over the world every year. WB
    a. wear b. mean c. rise d. produce
11. Taha's dream is to be a/an .......... sports person. He's in a local sports team. SB
    a. professional b. unable c. amateur d. incapable
12. Fatma is going to go to university. After she finishes it, she's going to get a/an .......... . SB
    a. distance b. monorail c. internship d. district
13. Malak would like to help people or help to protect the environment. She's going to work as a/an .......... . SB
    a. accountant b. driver c. vet d. volunteer





### Longman Exercises

14. A/An .......... car is a self-driving, or robotic, car that can travel without human input. Longman
    a. eyeless b. driverless c. old d. traditional
15. .......... buses don't pollute the environment. Longman
    a. Traditional b. Electric c. Old d. Oil-powered
16. A/An .......... is a part of a wide road that only bicycles are allowed to use. Longman
    a. port b. airport c. highway d. cycle lane
17. To redo something is to .......... . Longman
    a. avoid doing it b. stop doing it c. do it again d. do it only
18. A/An .......... is a person who designs buildings and advises on their construction. Longman
    a. architect b. builder c. doctor d. trader

### Bit by Bit Exercises

19. Visitors won't be able to .......... the monkeys as they are sleeping.
    a. eat b. catch c. keep d. feed
20. .......... are machines that fly without pilots.
    a. Planes b. Bikes c. Monorails d. Drones
21. I hope I'll be able to .......... more success.
    a. lose b. buy c. earn d. achieve
22. I have the .......... to solve this problem. I can find a solution to it.
    a. disability b. ability c. able d. inability
23. I can't read your writing, Azza. Please can you .......... it, so it is clearer?
    a. replay b. reuse c. rewrite d. recycle

## B Language

24. What will the weather .......... like tomorrow? WB
    a. be b. is c. been d. was
25. What job .......... when you leave university? WB
    a. will you do b. you will do c. you will doing d. will you doing
26. Will people .......... to space in 2070? WB
    a. travels b. travelling c. traveled d. travel

27. In the future, the farms .......... make their own electricity. SB

a. be able to b. will be able to c. going to be d. will able

28. I am .......... design some amazing buildings. SB

a. will b. going c. going to d. won't

29. I .......... something to help people. It's my plan. SB

a. 'm going to do b. 'm doing c. will do d. won't do

30. In the future, we .......... have holidays on the moon.

a. will able b. will be able to c. will able to d. able to

31. Do you think we .......... under the sea by 2050?

a. lives b. live c. going to live d. will live

32. Do you think we .......... oil in the future?

a. use b. will use c. using d. to use

33. I .......... be able to join you to the club. I'm busy.

a. will b. don't c. won't d. would

34. .......... you meet Amir tomorrow?

a. Will b. Does c. Are d. Have

35. I think it .......... hot and sunny next week.

a. going b. is going c. will be d. going to be

36. Hany .......... be a robotics engineer. It's his intention.

a. going b. is going to c. will d. going to be

37. I'm going .......... a charity that makes people's lives better. I have decided to do so.

a. to help b. helping c. helps d. to helping

38. I think that more people .......... ride bikes in the future to help the environment.

a. going to b. will c. won't d. wouldn't





# Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

## 1- "A review of schools in the future" (Lessons 1 & 2)

"Schools tomorrow" is an article about schools in the future. It talks about technology and the ways to use it at schools. It says that we will be able to depend on the online learning. Therefore, we will be able to do the homework anywhere. We will be able to use the virtual reality in teaching. It will help us see things as if it is real. We will be able to visit places from the past. By using 3D printers, we will be able to print very large things. It will help us make our own designs. We will be able to use robots to help us teach in classroom.

## 2- "A review of life in the future" (Lessons 3 & 4)

I read an article about our cities of the future. It is very wonderful. It says that Africa's population is growing quickly. Many African countries are planning exciting, new cities, where people can live, work and study. For example, Egypt is planning for a new administrative capital in the desert, east of Cairo. It is going to have modern universities, offices and hotels. There will be a monorail passing through the business districts. Electric trains will link the city to other cities around Egypt. The city is designed to work with smart technology. Roofs will be covered in solar panels. The shops will be cashless, and they will have more green spaces to walk easily in the city.

## 3- "A review of an article about flying cars" (Lessons 5 & 6)

I have read an article talking about flying cars. First it talked about electricity which will be the energy for flying cars. Those cars will be easy to take off from the tops of any house as they don't need much space. Also, the article said that our homes will have modern technology inside them, cooling and heating will be much easier. Things will be different, work and many other things will depend on electricity, so there won't be much noise. Our streets will be quieter, so the future will be different.

## 4- "A review of our homes in the future"

It is interesting to read about homes in the future. They will be different from today. We can get the energy by using solar panels. Solar energy is better for the environment because it reduces pollution. TVs and computers will be smaller but faster than they are. There will be a tiny computer connected to our watches, glasses and even clothes. A hot shower is a great thing! We will be able to use rainwater collected on the roofs and heated by solar energy. There will be a robot, too. It will help us do many things like, cleaning, washing the car, cooking and preparing tables for meals.

## 5- "A job you would like to do in the future" (Al Azhar)

I love maths and science. When I leave preparatory school, I would like to go to a technology school. My dream job is to be a robotics engineer. Robotics engineers can create anything from machines. They can create robots that can go into space. I want to do something to help other people around the world. It is a very useful job.

## 6- "A biography of a professional sports person" (Test)

Mohamed Salah is a professional sports person. He was born in a village called Nagrig, in Gharbia. He was born in 1992. He is very polite and helpful. He has played for many teams. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He scores many goals for our national team. He plays for Liverpool in England and scores a lot. It is a very good team. Salah wins a lot of important prizes and championships. He always gives money to charities to help build schools, hospitals and help poor people around the country. He always has a big smile on his face. We all love him very much.

Unit 12

# TEST



## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue**

**Rahma and Mariam are talking about a job advertisement.**

Rahma : Have you read the newspaper today?

Mariam : ❶ .................................................. What is in it?

Rahma : ❷ ..................................................

Mariam : ❸ ..................................................?

Rahma : They need accountants.

Mariam : Wow! We can apply for it. I'd like to work in a bank.

Rahma : ❹ ..................................................?

Mariam : Tomorrow morning.

Rahma : Where will we meet?

Mariam : ❺ ..................................................

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**solar - With - Without - will be - were be - from**

Clean energy comes ❶ ........ the sun, which is our nearest star. The sun sends out huge amounts of energy. We call this the ❷ ........ energy. ❸ ........ the sun, life on earth would not continue. In the future, we ❹ ........ able to get all of our energy from solar farms and wind turbines for many years.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Sports are very popular all over the world. There are many kinds of sports. Some of which are: Football, tennis, basketball, hockey, judo, karate, swimming and many other sports. Football is the most popular sport all over the world. Some records say that it began in China. Other records say it began in England. Sport is useful for the body. Trainers and athletes advise people to do sport regularly and very often to get a good and strong body.

Practicing sports protects the body and makes it so strong. Some sports need strong bodies like weight lifting. In general, it is advisable to do any sport in order to keep healthy. On the other hand if you don't practise sport, you will suffer from lots of diseases. So I advise you to choose any kind of sport to do.





**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is mainly about ..................
   a. trainers b. athletes c. football d. sports
2. Football is the most .................. sport.
   a. difficult b. boring c. popular d. dangerous
3. .................. needs big effort and strong muscles.
   a. Tennis b. Table tennis c. Weight lifting d. Handball

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What does the underlined "it" refer to?
   ..................................................
5. How many sports are mentioned in the passage?
   ..................................................
6. What will happen if there will not be sports in the future ?
   ..................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A /An .................. is a period of time during which a student or new graduate gets practical experience in a job.
   a. testing b. match c. holiday d. internship
2. A .................. is a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground.
   a. monorail b. robot c. flying car d. 3D printer
3. Helicopters can take off from small areas in cities. "Take off" is the opposite of "..................".
   a. land b. fly c. turn on d. turn off
4. The word "hero" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix ..................
   a. -ity b. -tion c. -tive d. -ic
5. Mahmoud has the ability to do things well. He has a ..................
   a. distance b. skill c. link d. marathon
6. We can't live without gas, water and electricity. That means these things are ..................
   a. important b. dangerous c. peaceful d. useless

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. In the future, do you think that all our energy ………… (be) from the sun?
2. I ………… (getting) an internship with good friends as planned.
3. When ………… (is) your friends going to visit you?
4. She isn't good with numbers. She ………… (will) be able to work as a maths teacher.
5. I think that more people ………… (won't) use renewable energy in the future to reduce pollution.

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"A biography of a professional sports person"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- When was he / she born?
- Where is he / she from?
- Which sport does he / she practise?
- Is he / she famous?
- Do you want to be like him / her?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- He / She was born in…………………
- He / She is………………………………
- He / She likes……………………………
- He / She began to practise it when……..



# Review D

SB pages 64-65 WB pages 114-115

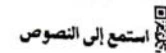
## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| neighbourhood | حي سكني - منطقة | bakery | مخبز |
| heavy rains | أمطار غزيرة | Venice | مدينة البندقية ( إيطاليا) |
| get worse | تزداد سوءً | human (adj) | بشري |
| compared to | مقارنة بـ | describe (d) | يصف |
| recent years | السنوات الأخيرة | launch (ed) | يطلق (صاروخ/قمر صناعي) |

## Reading

SB Page (64)




### CITY CENTRE FLOODS

Hundreds of people in a city in Germany were surprised(1) to see flood water running through the streets of their neighbourhood(2) last night. Heavy rains(3) flooded this part of the city in less than an hour. Many people had to leave their homes and 15 people were taken to hospital.

Mr Muller, a local businessman(4), said, "I saw the water going down our big, wide street. I was very frightened." Mrs Werner, who also lives in the neighbourhood, said, "The floods have damaged our beautiful home and our business. We don't know what we'll do." This flood wasn't the only one to hit the area in recent years(5). In 2018, a flood damaged over 1,000 buildings. Mr Wagner, who owns the local bakery(6), said, "The weather is getting worse(7). We've seen floods on the TV, but now we have them here!"

١- متفاجئ
٢- حي سكني
٣- أمطار غزيرة
٤- رجل أعمال
٥- السنوات الأخيرة
٦- مخبز
٧- تزداد سوءً

WB Page (65)



In the next ten to 20 years, life will be very different compared to(1) life today. Our cities, the way we study, and the way we work will all be different. People like you or me will be able to go into space, but the biggest change will be at work. Soon, robots will be able to do most of the jobs.

١- مقارنة بـ

Robots can already think for themselves. With the right computer programs, robots journalists will be able to write sports reviews and newspaper articles. Robots will fly our planes and drive our cars. Robot doctors will soon replace human doctors[2].

You will describe[3] your illness[4] to your robot doctor, which will then be able to look at people with the same illness, and choose the best medicine[5] for you. Robot doctors won't be able to do everything. They just have to be better than human doctors. We won't be able to stop robots from being a big part of our lives in the future.

٢- أطباء بشريون
٣- يصف
٤- مرض
٥- دواء

WB Page (114)

Today in history, we learned about cities. Our teacher said that cities were usually built in safe places where there was water. However, he told us that people had chosen some strange places for some cities. For example, he told us that people had built Venice[1] on 124 small islands. They had to put lots of long pieces[2] of wood into the wet soil. Then they built the houses on top of the wood[3]. According to[4] our teacher, the wood is still there, under the houses!

He also told us about Mexico City. Did you know that the city was first built in a lake called Lago de Texcoco? They put a lot of soil in the lake, and built a city on this! I think that in the future, we will be able to build cities in many different but safer places. For example, we will have the technology to build cities on mountains.

١- مدينة البندقية
٢- قطع
٣- غابة صغيرة
٤- طبقًا ل

## Audioscript

SB Page (64)



**Narrator:** The world's first satellite[1] was sent into space by Russia on the 4th October of 1957. It was named Sputnik 1 after the Russian word for satellite. It was about twice the size of a football and it weighed[2] 83 kilograms. It orbited[3] the Earth once every 96 minutes and travelled at about 29,000 kilometres an hour. No satellite had orbited the Earth before that moment. As Sputnik 1 was orbiting the Earth, it sent radio signals[4] back. It had been in space for only three months before the batteries died and it fell back to Earth on 4 January 1958. The Russian satellite surprised the Americans who had

١- قمر صناعي
٢- يزن
٣- دار حول
٤- إشارات لاسلكية





thought their country would be the first to launch a satellite[5]. Since 1957, more than 10 countries have sent over 11,000 satellites into space.

Today, there are about 7,300 satellites orbiting the Earth. Some have been orbiting the Earth for many years.

٥- يطلق قمر صناعي

WB Page (114)

**Hamid:** Did you see this online news story, Kamal?
**Kamal:** No, what does it say, Hamid?
**Hamid:** A scientist said that we will all be able to have holidays on the moon soon.
**Kamal:** Really? What website says that?
**Hamid:** It's called Cool Space Stories. Apparently[1], the scientist had tried to send tourists to space before, but it was too expensive. Now they've found an inexpensive way to send tourists.
**Kamal:** How do they travel there? On a space shuttle[2] or spacecraft?
**Hamid:** No. The scientist is sending special planes there which can fly through space.
**Kamal:** Hmm. Who is this scientist? Is he famous?
**Hamid:** I don't know. It says here that he used to be a journalist.
**Kamal:** Hamid, I don't think this news is true. You shouldn't believe it. Perhaps there will be holidays on the moon one day, but we won't be able to go there for a long, long time. We just don't have the technology.
**Hamid:** Perhaps you're right, Kamal.

١- بوضوح
٢- مكوك فضاء

WB Page (115)

1
**Voice:** "That building is the tallest in the city," said Ahmed.
2
**Voice:** "I think I'll be a teacher when I leave school," said Judy.
3
**Voice:** "We have never eaten in that restaurant before," said Hisham.
4
**Voice:** "I am taller than my brothers," said Mona.
5
**Voice:** "My cousins did not go to the park on Saturday," said Imad.

# Test on units 10, 11 & 12

## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue:**

**Mazen and Hatem are talking about robots in the future.**

**Mazen** : Hi, Hatem. I think robots will be different in the future.

**Hatem** : ❶.............................................................................

**Mazen** : Do you think there will be robot journalists?

**Hatem** : ❷.............................................................................

**Mazen** : ❸.............................................................................?

**Hatem** : I think they will be able to write sports reviews.

**Mazen** : ❹.............................................................................?

**Hatem** : Yes, I think there will be robot doctors, too.

**Mazen** : What do you think they will be able to do?

**Hatem** : ❺.............................................................................

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

newspaper - doing - space - do - hospitals - rivers

In the next twenty years, life will be different. The way we study and work will change. Normal people will be able to go into ❶ ........ to visit other planets like the moon. Robots will ❷ ........ most of the jobs. They will write ❸ ........ articles, drive cars and fly planes. Robots will replace human doctors in ❹ ........ .

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions which come from a computer. Because it is a machine, it does not make mistakes, and it does not get tired. It never complains. Robots are all around us. Some of them are used to make things. For example, robots can help make cars. Others are used to explore dangerous places like volcanoes. Some robots are used to clean things. Some robots can even recognize words. They can help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans, others do not. Most robots just look like machines.

The first real robot was made in 1961. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a **giant** arm. In the future, robots will do things that we can't do, or they will do things that we don't want to do. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight sickness. They will help make life better.





**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is mainly about ..................
   a. humans b. volcanoes c. instructions d. robots
2. Robots are generally controlled by ............ programs.
   a. cars b. calls c. computer d. words
3. The underlined word "**giant**" means ..................
   a. young b. huge c. exciting d. hot

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. When was the first real robot made?

...................................................................................

5. What will robots do in the future?

...................................................................................

6. Mention two things that robots can do.

...................................................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. ............... are something that motorcycle riders wear to protect their heads.
   a. Braces b. Sunglasses c. Helmets d. Telescopes
2. The word ............... is similar in meaning to "unusual".
   a. strange b. dangerous c. ordinary d. unable
3. A ............... is a person who specialises in languages.
   a. linguist b. presenter c. volunteer d. governor
4. I love maths and science and I'd like to become a / an ............... .
   a. doctor b. sports person c. robotics engineer d. vet
5. The prefix ............... turns "advantages" into the opposite meaning.
   a. un- b. dis- c. im- d. in-
6. Robot doctors may replace human doctors in the future. That means robot doctors will ............... the human doctors.
   a. talk to b. have holiday with c. take the place of d. take part in

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. This researcher .................... (has published) his ideas before he died.
2. What have you been .................... (read) recently?
3. How long .................... (have) your father been a teacher?
4. In the future, robot doctors .................... (is) able to give us the best medicine.
5. The owner told us that the park .................... (take) over 3 years to build.

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"A review of how to protect our environment"

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What do factories produce?
- What would be produced if the factory used fossil fuels?
- What would happen if they didn't burn the rubbish?
- What do the plants on the roof do?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Factories produce ..............................
- They burn rubbish!
- If they burn the rubbish, ..............................
- The plants on the roofs absorb some of the air pollution.



# SB / WB Answers

إجابات كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

## Unit 7

## SB Answers

### Lesson (1) p. 2

**1 Match the habitats with the animals. Listen and check.**

coastal : 2. turtle
polar : 3. polar bear
wetland : 5. frog
grassland : 4. caracal
rainforest : 1. orangutan

**2 Find**

- horse

### Page 3

**1 Listen to a talk about habitats. Which of the habitats from page 2 does the speaker talk about?**

All of them.

**2 Listen again and answer the questions.**

1. They are found along the coast of the sea.
2. It can hide there.
3. rainforests
4. rainforests
5. wetlands
6. Because the temperatures are very cold.

### Lesson (2) p. 4

**2 Read the article again and match the fact files with the photos.**

a. 3. Gebel Elba
b. 1. White Desert National Park
c. 2. Al Nayzak Lake

**3 Read the article again and answer the questions.**

1. The wind
2. It changes the colour.
3. A piece of star (a meteorite)
4. grasslands, coastal and mountain habitats
5. It is not easy to get to; it is in a location that makes it difficult to find.

### Page 5

**4 Rewrite the sentences in the passive with by.**

1. The national park is visited by many people every year.
2. Every year, eggs are laid on the beach by turtles.
3. Some of the turtles' eggs are eaten by birds and animals.
4. The park and beaches are cleaned by volunteers.
5. Trees are not cut down by us.

**5 Listen to Randa and Nihal discussing a natural wonder of Egypt. Why is it a good idea to ask local people to take you to Wadi al-Weshwashy on a day-trip?**

- Because it is very difficult to get to.

**6 Listen again and complete the table.**

- Where is it? It is on the way to South Sinai, -15 kilometres from Nuweiba, deep into the mountains of South Sinai.
- What can you see? Three water springs which form lakes, high in the mountains.
- What can you do there? You can swim.

### Lesson (3) p. 6

**1 Look quickly at the title of Huda's project and the photos. Discuss the questions in pairs.**

1. A fossil is a part of a plant or animal that lived thousands of years ago, or its shape preserved in rock.
2. Suggested answers: snakes, lizards and other desert animals

**2 Read the project and find a sentence to show the following.**

1. Many ancient fossils are often found here, but the species of animal fossil might surprise you.
2. At Wadi al-Hitan, 'The Valley of the Whales', hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were first found by scientists in 1902.
3. The fossils were preserved really well and some of them were 21 metres in length.
4. The fossils are so important that Wadi al-Hitan was called a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 2005.
5. As a result, it is only visited by about 1,000 people a year.
6. Today, Egyptian scientists are studying some of the fossils at Mansoura University using some of the latest technology, and they hope to learn more about these amazing whales of the desert.

**3 Complete the sentences with the words in bold from the text.**

1. fossils
2. remote
3. preserves
4. length
5. species

**4 Discuss in pairs. What is a depression? Does it have the same weather as the desert? Why?**

A depression is land that is below the surrounding area. Because it is lower, it does not always have the same weather. For example, it might be less windy and hotter during the day.

### Page 7

**5 Write these sentences in the past simple passive tense.**

1. Animal fossils were found in the Fayum Depression.
2. The fossils at Wadi al-Hitan were studied by a team of scientists.
3. Wadi al-Hitan was visited by about 1000 people last year.
4. Whales with legs were found (by some researchers).

**7 Listen and check your answers.**

1. was made
2. was named
3. was built
4. was built

### Lesson (4) p. 8

**2 Read this part of a story about a horse called Black Beauty by Anna Sewell. What problems did Ginger have?**

She was unhappy because all her owners were unkind to her and treated her badly.

**3** **Choose the best meaning of the words in bold from the story.**

1. travel 2. bought 3. sleeps 4. are nice to

**4** **Read the story again and answer the questions.**

1. The drivers were very poor
2. The weather was terrible
3. He had a kind owner and was always put in a warm stable.
4. She looked terrible

**5** **Discuss the questions in pairs.**

1. Students' own answers.
2. Suggested answers: donkeys, camels, buffalo, rescue/ guide dogs
3. You should treat them kindly and with respect.

## Lesson(5) p. 9

**1** **Listen to Samir and Taha discussing the story of Black Beauty. Choose the correct answers.**

1. c 2. b

**2** **Listen again and put the expressions in the order that you hear them.**

a. 4 b. 1 c. 2 d. 3 e. 5

**3** **Listen to three more conversations and match them with the topics they talk about a - c.**

a. 2 b. 3 c. 1

## Lesson(6) p. 10

**1** **Read the article quickly and answer the questions in pairs.**

1. To give information.
2. They help you to know what the topic/key information is in each of these parts.
3. They help you to understand new vocabulary.

**2** **Read the article again.**

1. Fur
2. To tell you what the topic of the article is.
3. is found, are endangered / were taken to live in
4. Suggested answers: Eating / Food / What they eat

## Lesson(7) p. 11

**1** **Complete the text with the words in the box.**

1. coastal 2. grasslands 3. wetland
4. fossils 5. preserved 5. species

**2** **Write the sentences in the past simple passive. Remember to include by when necessary.**

1. That lake was formed hundreds of years ago by a volcano.
2. Last year, many new homes were built near the river.
3. Hundreds of new trees were planted by children from local schools.
4. The unusual cave was caused by the sea.

**3** **Correct the verbs in brackets.**

1. was built 2. were planted 3. broke
4. was taken 5. are built 6. built
7. are visited 8. caused

# WB Answers

## Page 70

**1** **Match the descriptions to the following habitats.**

1. grassland 2. rainforest 3. wetland
4. polar 5. coastal

**2** **Now write definitions for these habitats. Use the definitions in Exercise 1 as a model.**

1. There are many tall trees in these habitats.
2. These habitats are very high. It can be very cold in the highest parts.
3. There is very little or no rain in these habitats. It can be very hot.

**3** **Write these sentences in the present simple passive.**

1. The land is covered by ice in polar habitats.
2. Many houses are built in coastal areas (by people).
3. Four important wetlands are found in Egypt.
4. A lot of our rainforests are cut down every year (by people).
5. Large areas of wetlands are covered by ice.

## Page 71

**1** **Complete the sentences with these words.**

1. shape 2. surrounded by 3. protect
4. fill 5. wonder 6. oasis

**2** **Complete the text with the correct passive form of the verb in brackets.**

1. is surrounded 2. is visited
3. are grown
4. are sold 5. are also made

**3** **Read the text again and answer the questions.**

1. desert
2. more and more tourists
3. Because it is not important / Because we do not know or it's known to us.
4. people who live in the Kharga Oasis

**4** **Choose the correct answer.**

1. sold 2. are made 3. visited
4. painted 5. isn't played

**Videoscript**

- Natural : the White Desert National Park, the Al Nayzak lake, Gebel Elba, the Great Sand Sea.
- Man-made: Great Pyramids, the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria, Lost City of Thonis- Heracleion.

## Page 72

**1** **Read and match the words with their meanings.**

1. e 2. c 3. f 4. d 5. b 6. a

**2** **Complete the text with the past simple passive form of these verbs. You will need one present passive, too!**

1. was built 2. was burned 3. was designed
4. was called 5. was used 6. is taken away

**3** **Match to make sentences in the past simple passive.**

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b

## Page 73

**1** **Complete the sentences with these words.**

1. stable 2. carriage 3. treated 4. owner

**2** **Match the words with the same meaning, then find the opposites and circle them.**

1. unkind, cruel, kind 2. hard, difficult, easy
3. terrible, very bad, amazing
4. warm, quite hot, cool 5. wet, rainy, dry

**3** **Match to make sentences about the story Black Beauty.**

1. c 2. e 3. a 4. b 5. d

## Page 74

**1** **Match to make expressions that ask for or give clarification.**

1. e 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. b

**3** **Now listen and check your answers to Exercise 2**

1. sure 2. give 3. mean
4. still 5. way 6. see

## Page 75

**1** **Match the paragraphs in the Caracals fact file with the headings in the box.**

1. Appearance 2. Skills 3. Habitat
4. Food 5. Lifestyle

**2** **Read the text again and answer the questions.**

1. to help them to hear well
2. so that other animals can't hear them when they are trying to catch them.
3. Because they catch and eat birds.
4. Other animals make the holes.
5. They can live for up to 12 years in the wild.

## Page 76

**1** **Circle the correct words. Then write an animal that lives in each habitat.**

1. coastal, turtle 2. Grasslands, caracal
3. rainforests, orangutan 4. polar, polar bear
5. wetland, frog/crocodile

**2** **Complete the sentences with these words.**

1. the postman 2. farmers
3. an English woman 4. France

**3** **Choose the correct answer.**

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. c 5. d

# Unit 8

# SB Answers

## Lesson(1) p. 12

**1** **Match the environmental problems with the photos. Which of these problems do you think is the most serious for our planet? Use your dictionary for difficult words.**

1. deforestation 2. warmer seas
3. rubbish in landfill sites 4. melting ice
5. air pollution

**Look through the unit. Where do you find seagrass?**

- You find it along the coasts in our seas and oceans.

**Find out how much of the Amazon rainforest is lost each year.**

Around 315 thousand km² a year



## Page 13

**1** **Listen to the radio programme. Which of the environmental problems on page 12 will this project help to stop?**

rubbish in landfill sites

**2** **Listen again and answer the questions.**

1. In Cairo, Giza and Fayoum.
2. There are over 400.
3. They ask them to put their rubbish into three bins.
4. Money. 5. They will recycle it.

**3** **Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.**

1. if we recycle our rubbish 2. coral reefs will die
3. we'll pollute the air 4. if we only take showers.
5. if we don't take more action now.

**4** **Discuss these questions in small groups.**

1. Yes, I believe it is a very good idea because it is going to help save our planet and reduce rubbish.
2. My family tries their best to recycle waste plastic, paper and metal.
3. We will have more rubbish in landfill sites.

## Lesson(2) p. 14

**1** **Discuss this question in pairs.**

Pollution and warming the seas cause climate change.
We can use bicycles instead of cars to help stop it.

**2** **Read the article. What produces a lot of carbon dioxide?**

Burning fossil fuels, such as oil.

**3** **Complete using words from the list.**

1. solar energy 2. methane 3. fossil fuels
4. renewable energy 5. absorb

**4** **Now write definitions for the other words in bold in the article in your notebook. You can use a dictionary.**

| | |
|---|---|
| - drought | a long time without rain, leading to not having enough water |
| - climate change | changing weather patterns caused by global warming |
| - greenhouse gases | gases in the Earth's atmosphere that help to warm the planet |
| - landfill sites | places where rubbish is buried under the ground |
| - slow down | slow the speed of something |

**5** **Read the article again and complete the sentences.**

1. our planet is getting hotter
2. the rubbish makes methane / a greenhouse gas.
3. taking carbon dioxide out of the air
4. don't stop / keep burning fossil fuels
5. renewable energy

## Page 15

**6** **Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer questions about the text on page 14.**

**Student A:**

- Because greenhouse gases are making it hotter
- It makes methane
- Because trees absorb carbon dioxide, so if there are no trees, this does not happen.

Student B:
- We make greenhouse gases.
- Because less goes into landfill sites.
- Because they absorb carbon dioxide and help to stop global warming.

**7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets**

1. burning 2. to use 3. to plant
4. to recycle 5. cutting

**8 Work in pairs. Look at the graph and answer the questions.**

1. Electricity and power
2. Buildings
3. They make less greenhouse gases
4. Suggested answer: We could avoid using too much electricity. We could avoid travelling too much.

## Lesson(3) p. 16

**1 Listen to Dalida and Sherifa talking then choose the correct answer.**

1. c 2. b

**2 Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. T
2. F. There's one in the cupboard. 3. T
4. F. She can send it to the address on the side of the box and they will recycle it. 5 T

**4 Look at the words in the box. Listen again and complete the table with the correct word stresses. Not all words are in the Listening exercise.**

| Two syllables | Three syllables | |
|---|---|---|
| O o | o O o | O o o |
| problem | expensive | family |
| plastic | recycle | horrible |
| printer | | terrible |
| cartridge | | |

## Page 17

**5 Read Dalida and Sherifa's social media post. What have they asked their teachers to do?**

They have asked them to put the used printer cartridges in the recycling boxes in some classrooms.

**6 Read the social media post again and answer the questions.**

1. A school recycling project.
2. Because the ink inside the printer cartridges is bad for the environment.
3. In the classrooms with printers.
4. He said yes.
5. To help take the recycling boxes to the recycling centre.

## Lesson(4) p. 18

**1 Read the blog about the Reform Studio in Cairo. What is made there?**

They make colourful bags, chairs and small carpets.

**2 Look at the words in red. Use a dictionary to check the meanings. Then write them in your notebook.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| weaving | : | making cloth by crossing threads under and over each other |
| traditional | : | being part of the traditions of a country or group of people |
| weaver | : | a person who does weaving as a job |
| loom | : | a machine used for weaving |
| thread | : | a long piece of cotton, silk etc. used to make or sew cloth |
| fabric | : | cloth, a type of material. |

**5 Read the blog again and match to make sentences.**

1. d 2. c 3. e 4. a 5. b

## Lesson(5) p. 19

**1 Listen to Ziad's speech. What is it about?**

It is about ways we can help the environment.

**2 Listen to the speech again. Tick the expressions that Ziad uses.**

1. ✓ 2. ✓ 4. ✓ 6. ✓

**3 Listen again and choose the correct answer that you hear.**

1. b 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. a

## Lesson(6) p. 20

**2 Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.**

Because it absorbs a lot of carbon dioxide and helps to stop climate change.

**3 Read the text again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. T
2 F, It is a safe place for baby fish. 3. T
4. F, Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than tropical rainforests. 5. T 6. T

**4 Complete the table with the words and expressions in red from the text.**

| Reasons | Contrast |
|---|---|
| because | However |
| That is why | Nevertheless |
| This is because | |

## Lesson(7) p. 21

**1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.**

1. renewable energy 2. fossil fuels
3. carbon dioxide 4. landfill sites
5. Seagrass 6. Global

**2 Complete the sentences with the to + infinitive or -ing form of these verbs.**

1. cutting 2. to use 3. putting
4. to buy 5. to start 6. recycling





# WB Answers

## Page 77

**1 Read the definitions of environmental problems and find the words in the word search.**

1. air pollution 2. landfill site 3. melting ice
4. deforestation 5. warmer seas.

**2 Match to make questions.**

1. d 2. e 3. a 4. c 5. b

**3 Now answer the questions in Exercise 2 for you.**

1. I will work much harder next year.
2. It will melt.
3. He will feel tired tomorrow. 4. Yes, she will.
5. You will ask the teacher to explain it to you.

## Page 78

**1 Complete the sentences with these words.**

1. fossil fuels 2 absorb
3. carbon dioxide 4 solar energy 5. avoid
6 renewable energy 7. Climate

**2 Choose the correct words.**

1. to buy 2. making 3. to study
4. sitting 5. playing 6. to go

**3 Complete the blog with these verbs. Which of the topics from the graph on page 15 of the Student's Book is the blog about?**

1. building 2. decide 3. to use
4. to build 5. leaving

The topic is buildings.

## Page 79

**1 Complete the table with these words from the unit Then listen and check your answers.**

| Two syllables | Three syllables | |
|---|---|---|
| O o | o O o | O o o |
| farming | connected | energy |
| rubbish | discussion | family |
| transport | pollution | history |
| cartridge | | volunteer |

**2 Choose the correct words to complete the blog.**

1. having 2. throwing 3. to have
4. to buy 5. throwing

**3 Read the blog again and answer the questions.**

1. a lot of important materials.
2. The materials inside the phone can be very bad for the environment.
3. People will use phones that you can keep using even if the technology changes.
4. We will be able to avoid throwing away our old phones.
5. Students' own answers.

## Page 80

**1 Complete the text with these words.**

1. traditional 2. weaving 3. weaver
4. loom 5. threads 6. fabric

**2 Read the text about recycling. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. F, You can make new handbags.
2. F, You can use old glass bottles to make jewellery.
3. T 4. T 5. T
6. F, You can build houses from (old) plastic bottle tops.

**3 Choose the correct answer.**

c

## Page 81

**1 Circle the incorrect word.**

Speak

**3 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.**

1. Today, I'm going to talk about
2. I'd like to start by saying that
3. To begin with
4. In the next part of my speech
5. I'd like to finish by saying that

**4 Now answer the questions.**

1. They breathe out oxygen and they absorb pollution in the air.
2. Because you can eat the leaves.
3. Because they look attractive.
4. They are easier to take care of and they don't have to travel a long way. / They look better in your house
5. Students' own answers.

## Page 82

**1 Choose the correct words.**

1. because 2. why
3. Nevertheless 4. That is because
5. However,

**2 Match to make sentences about habitats.**

1. d 2. c 3. b 4. a

**3 Now complete these sentences about visiting the desert with a suitable verb + to or -ing.**

1. walking in the desert
2. to wear the correct clothes
3. drinking lots of water
4. staying in the sun for too long
5. to travel on camels

## Page 83

**1 Complete the sentences with these words.**

| Environmental problems | Gases | Habitats | Weaving |
|---|---|---|---|
| climate change | carbon dioxide | desert | fabric |
| deforestation | greenhouse gases | rainforest | loom |
| landfill sites | methane | wetland | thread |

**2 Complete the sentences with the to or -ing form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. to go 2. to revise 3. eating 4. walking
5. to learn 6. listening 7. doing / to do

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. will have 2. is 3. will get
4. will you do 5. will phone 6. won't come

**4 Read and correct the underlined words.**

1. However / Nevertheless 2. That is why
3. That is because 4. However, / Nevertheless,

# Unit 9

## SB Answers

### Lesson(1) p. 22

**Discuss**

a. 2 b. 5 c. 4 d. 1 e. 3

**Research**

A carbon footprint is the amount of carbon dioxide released into the atmosphere as a result of the activities of a particular person.

**Find**

They are planting mangrove trees to help protect the coast.

### Page 23

**1 Listen to Dalia and Reem. Which of the sustainable products on page 22 do they talk about?**

- They talk about reusable shopping bags, bamboo cups and energy saving light bulbs.

**2 Listen again and circle the correct answer.**

1. plastic 2. shopping bags 3. can't
4. toothbrush 5. home
6 doesn't want

**3 Complete the sentences with used to or didn't use to and the verbs in brackets.**

1. didn't use to use 2. used to waste water
3. didn't use to have 4. used to get
5. didn't use to

### Lesson p. 24

**1 Discuss these questions in pairs.**

1. The first photo shows a village affected by drought, the second shows flooding of a river, the third shows rising sea levels/flooding in a city.
2. Students' own answers. 3. Students' own answers.

**2 Read the webpage. Check any new words in a dictionary. Why are mangrove trees unusual?**

Because they grow in seawater.

**3 Complete the sentences with the words in bold from the text.**

1. Mangrove trees 2. rising sea levels
3. Seedlings 4. crops

### Page 25

**4 Read the webpage again and answer the questions**

1. There are more floods in many countries.
2. The salt in the water kills the crops and farmers can't grow anything, so people lose their homes.
3. They protect communities and farms from strong winds and storms.
4. They are growing thousands of mangrove seedlings.
5. Yes. To reduce the problems caused by rising sea levels.
6. They are going to plant 300,000 seedlings along the Red Sea coast.

**5 Choose the correct answer.**

1. could go 2. was 3. had 4. would have

**6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.**

1. didn't cut, would have
2. would plant, were
3. would be, didn't plant
4. didn't, wouldn't be

**7 Discuss these questions in pairs.**

1. They go on holiday to the Red Sea. They like swimming and doing water sports such as scuba diving.
2. The mangrove forests will help reduce the problems caused by rising sea levels. Salt water won't destroy the farmers' land. They will provide homes for fish, plants and sea animals.

### Lesson(3) p. 26

**1 Discuss these questions in pairs**

1. Because they sometimes let waste from the factory go into the river or sea, or use water from the river or sea to use in the factory.
2. It can cause water pollution.

**2 Look at the words in red. Use a dictionary to check the meaning. Then match them to the words with a similar meaning below.**

1. produce 2. destroy
3. enormous 4. promise 5. power

**3 Read the summary of The Iron Woman by Ted Hughes and answer the questions.**

1. She was surprised and frightened.
2. Lucy's father worked at the factory. The Iron Woman wanted to know where it was.
3. Because pollution from the factory was killing all the fish in the river.
4. They understood how difficult life was for the fish.
5. The Iron Woman let them become people again.

**4 Discuss these questions in pairs.**

1. They make many important things. No, they do not all produce pollution.
2. Students' own answers.

### Page 27

**5 Listen to a conversation about The Iron Woman. Who liked the story more, Dina or Judy?**

Dina liked it more.

**6 Listen again and choose the correct answers.**

1. easy 2. wrong 3. did not like
4. agreed 5. renewable

**7 Complete the sentences from the listening.**

1. we wouldn't have so many things to buy in the shops.
2. they wouldn't have any money.
3. it wouldn't produce pollution.
4. everyone would be happier.

### Lesson(4) p. 28

**1 Read the first web post on the webpage and circle the correct answer.**

cold





**2 Read all the web posts. Who hasn't given up anything yet?**

Luc and Emile
Dom and Julia Baldwin

**3 Read the web posts again and write the names.**

1. Greta 2. Luc and Emile
3. Dom and Julia 4. Sawsan
5. Greta 6. Dom and Julia

### Lesson(5) p. 29

**1 Listen to this television interview about a solar farm. Where is it?.**

It is on farmland in the countryside.

**2 Listen to the interview again. Put these expressions in the order that you hear them.**

a. 5 b. 1 c. 7 d. 2 e. 3 f. 6 g4

**3 Listen again and complete the table.**

| Yes, because | No, because ... |
| --- | --- |
| they are useful. | they are ugly. |
| they produce clean, renewable energy. | they destroy the countryside. |
| sheep can walk under the solar panels. | farmers need this land. |
| they produce money for the community. | |

**Video**

9 1/2 - the number of hours of sunshine in Egypt every day 2019 - when Benban Solar Park opened 38 - the size of the park in square kilometres thousands - the number of solar panels at the park hundreds of thousands - the number of homes and businesses supplied with energy from the park 20% - the percentage of energy that the Egyptian government wants to be renewable

### Lesson(6) p. 30

**2 Read the report and check your answers to Exercise 1.**

It has become desert because climate change is creating more droughts and because people do not always farm the land well.

**3 Read the report again. Complete the entences with one, two or three words.**

1. desertification 2. droughts
3. farms, homes 4. trees, seedlings, plants
5. 10 million 6. Sahel region

### Lesson(7) p. 31

**1 Complete the text with the words in the box.**

1. initiatives 2. seedlings
3. energy-saving light bulbs. 4. bamboo
5. sustainable 6 air conditioning

**2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

1. would produce 2. would become
3. had 4. could buy
5. built 6. would it be

## WB Answers

### Page 84

**1 Complete the sentences using the words in the box.**

1. sustainable 2. reusable
3. energy-saving light bulbs
4 rechargeable batteries
5. bamboo 6. greener

**2 Complete the sentences with used to or didn't use to and these verbs.**

1. didn't use to like 2. used to be
3 used to use 4. didn't use to rain
5. didn't use to send

### Page 85

**1 Answer the questions.**

1. fields 2. It is getting higher.
3. You find them by the sea. 4. It is larger.

**2 Read and correct the underlined words.**

1. were 2. could 3. would
4. studied 5. lived

**3 Match to make sentences.**

1. d 2. e 3. a 4. b 5. c

### Page 86

**1 Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the words from the list.**

1. enormous 2. destroyed 3. powers
4. produce 5. promised

**2 Read the text and answer the questions.**

1. It produces renewable energy.
2. It burns rubbish.
3. It would go to landfill sites.
4. more greenhouse gases
5. They absorb some of air pollution from the factory.
6. Suggested answer: They probably feel proud to work here.

### Page 87

**1 Match to make phrases.**

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. e 5. a

**2 Answer the questions using the phrases from Exercise 1.**

1. rechargeable battery 2. computer mouse
3. electric car 4. remote control
5. air conditioning

**3 Listen to the conversation about energy use in the house. Choose the correct answers.**

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. a

### Page 88

**1 Read and correct the underlined words.**

1. of 2. In 3. that 4. forget
5. disagree 6. Personally 7 I agree

**2 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.**

1. What do you think of 2. Personally
3. agree 4. agree
5. forget 6. disagree
7. opinion

## Page 89

**1 Put the paragraphs of this report about a solar farm in the UK in the correct order. What is the main idea of the report?**

a. 3 b. 1 c. 4 d. 2

**2 Read the report again and complete the table.**

| Advantages to Solar Farm | Disadvantages to Solar Farm |
|---|---|
| produces energy for 91,000 homes | will be built on land that was farmland |
| helps to produce renewable energy | is too big |
| batteries can save and produce electricity when the sun is not shining | will damage wildlife |
| special areas for wildlife | large batteries could cause fires |

## Page 90

**1 Complete the table with these words.**

| Describes things that are good for environment | Types of plant | Things that need energy | Problems for the environment |
|---|---|---|---|
| rechargeable | bamboo | air conditioning | desertification |
| renewable | mangrove | light bulbs | floods |
| sustainable | seedling | remote control | rising sea levels |

**3 Now match the questions in Exercise 2 to these answers.**

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b

**4 Choose two correct answers from a, b, c or d**

1. b,d 2. a,c 3. b,c 4. b, d

# Review C

## SB Answers

### Lesson (1) p. 32

**1 Listen 1 Listen and tick the habitats that you hear on the radio programme**

b [✓] c [✓]
3 the museum 4 the sports centre

**2 Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. T
2. F. They were cut down to make farms to plant crops for cows.
3. T 4. T
5. F. Animals that live in a nature reserve are protected

**3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets**

1. were created 2. were burned/burnt
3. was made 4. creating
5. to protect 6. is produced

**5 Choose the correct words.**

1. to cut down 2. producing 3. to plant
4. polluting 5. putting

### Lesson (2) p. 33

**2 Read the blog. What happens to the recycled plastic bottles?**

They are made into clothes, toys, carpets and furniture.

**3 Read the blog again and complete the sentences with one, two or three words?**

1. solar panels 2. cheaper, cleaner energy
3. trees 4. glass, metal
5. landfill sites

## WB Answers

## Page 91

**1 Listen to a speech. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. T
2. F, they haven't seen them for hundreds of years.
3. T
4. F, they will watch them from high paths up in the trees.
5. T 6. F, this is just one plan.

**2 Read and correct the underlined words.**

1. were caught 2. were completed
3. practising 4. wants
5. use to 6. would live

**3 Choose the correct words.**

1. was made 2. cycling 3. cycling
4. will 5. would 6. used

## Page 92

**4 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. is produced 2. to do 3. is put
4. is burned 5. doing 6. was put
7. is / was recycled 8. is made 9. is created

**5 Read the text again and answer the questions.**

1. It will cause pollution. 2. about 1%
3. more than 50% 4. 300 metres
5. It is made into electricity and heating.

**6 Complete the table with these words.**

| Animals | Habitats | Bad for the environment | Verbs |
|---|---|---|---|
| caracal | coastal | deforestation | absorb |
| horse | grassland | desertification | create |
| mongoose | polar | greenhouse gas | fill |
| orangutan | wetland | rising sea levels | produce |
| whale | | | |





# Unit 10

## SB Answers

## Page 34

**Quiz**

**Look at the timeline. Can you match these events to the correct years?**

1. b 2. c 3. a

**Find**

**Look through the unit. What did the astronomer Ptolemy believe?**

He believed that the sun orbited the Earth.

**Research**

**How do astronauts prepare for trips into space?**

They have to do a lot of training. They have to learn how to be weightless. They have to be very fit, etc.

## Page 35

**2 Read the article quickly. Why did Ayman Ragab enter NASA's competition?**

Because he has always been interested in space science.

**3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. T
2. F, Ayman came second.
3. F, Ayman suggested ways to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle it.
4. T 5. T

## Page 36

**1 Read the article. Match the headings a–e to the paragraphs 1–5.**

1. d 2. e 3. b 4. a 5. c

**2 Read the article again and complete the sentences with these words.**

1. flooded 2. orbited 3. astronomers
4. Earth, sun 5. telescopes 6. solar system

**3 Choose the correct answer.**

1. had studied 2. had discovered
3. had collected

## Page 37

**4 Listen to the conversation about a quiz and number the photos in the order that you hear them.**

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. b

**5 Listen to the quiz again and choose the correct answers.**

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B

**6 In pairs, make sentences using the past simple and the past perfect. Then say True or False.**

1. People hadn't known about stars until scientists used telescopes. False
2. Hans Lippershey had invented the telescope before people knew much about planets. True
3. People had believed Ptolemy's ideas for centuries after he died. True
4. Copernicus had shared his ideas with people long before he died. False (He did not share his ideas until just before he died.)

**Life Skills**

1. Astronomers from the past have taught us a lot about the stars and planets. They knew many things thousands of years ago.
2. You can look on the internet, in the library, in museums, etc.

## Page 38

**1 Look at the diagram and answer the questions**

1. The satellite sends the signals
2. The satellite receiver receives them.

**3 Read the article again and complete the entences**

1. a system of satellites
2. clouds and storms are moving 3. the house
4. areas 5. for

**4 Answer the questions.**

1. They used maps.
2. The signal goes to a receiver on the house
3. It allows us to study the weather all around the world
4. mountains and deserts.

## Page 39

**6 What space technology do you think these objects use? Match the descriptions with the photos.**

1. b 2. a 3. e 4. d 5. c

**8 Listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. F, It came from space helmets. 2. T
3. F, Astronauts use a special sensor to take good photos in space (without using much energy).
4. T 5. T

**9 Circle the correct information for the trainers and the mobile phone camera.**

1. air bags 2. 1970s 3. more comfortable
4. sensor 5. 1990 6. energy used map

**10 Choose one of the other objects from the podcast. Listen again and take notes.**

| Object | What technology does it use? | When was it invented? | What was it used for in space? |
|---|---|---|---|
| wireless head-phones | wireless technology | in the 1960s | for astronauts to speak into without using their hands |
| sunglasses | a new lens | in 1980 | to protect astronauts' eyes |
| clear braces | a new material | in 1986 | to protect equipment on trips into space without stopping communication signals sea levels |

## Page 40

**2 Listen to and read the poem. Check your answers to Exercise 1**

The poem says that man's work can come to an end, but the work of nature cannot be ended.

**3 Look at the words in bold. Use your dictionary to help you. Which words describe the following?**

1. toiler 2. in vain 3. continents
4. grain 5. fellow

**4 Read the poem again and answer the questions.**

1. rain 2. because it is making continents
3. vain and grain

## Page 41

**1 Lina and Injy are at a photo exhibition. What do you think they are talking about?**

The far side of the moon is the side that we can't see from Earth.

**3 Listen again and put the events in the correct order.**

1. d 2. f 3. b 4. c 5. a 6. e

**4 Listen one more time and choose the correct answer.**

1. before 2. as soon as
3. at the same time as 4. soon after
5. a long time after

## Page 42

**1 Read the text quickly. Who can stay on the International Space Station.**

Astronauts from all over the world can stay there.

**2 Read the text again and match the paragraphs 1–4 with the questions.**

a. 2 b. 4 c. 1 d. 3

**3 Read the text again. What do these numbers and dates refer to?**

1. This is how fast the space station travels.
2. This is how long it takes for the space station to go around the Earth.
3. This was the year when the first piece of the Space Station went into space.
4. This was the year when the first astronauts stayed on the Space Station.
5. This the number of astronauts that have stayed on the Space Station.
6. This is the number of countries that the astronauts have come from.

## Page 43

**1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.**

1. astronomer 2. Space Station 3. orbit
4. solar system 5. telescope 6. signal

**2 Read Hassan's homework. Complete the sentences with the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. hadn't been 2. had visited 3. had studied
4. had used 5. had explored 6. had not seen

# WB Answers

## Page 93

**1 Read and match the words with their meanings.**

1. d 2. f 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. e

**2 Read the newspaper article and choose the correct form of the verb.**

1. has just sold 2. have been
3. has spent 4. has been travelling
5. has worked 7. has been writing

**3 Complete the sentences with the present perfect or present perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. haven't been 2. has read
3. has been doing, hasn't finished 4. has been reading

## Page 94

**1 Complete the sentences with these words.**

1. solar system 2. an astronomer
3. lens 4. orbits

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.sentences.**

1. thanked, had helped 2. collected, did
3. published 4. left, had said
5. went, had finished 6. had revised

**3 Match to make sentences.**

1. f 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. b 6. e

## Page 95

**1 Answer the questions.**

1. You wear them on your teeth.
2. A helmet protects your head.
3. You use a receiver to get signals.
4. It reads information.
5. No, you do not.

**2 GPS is an abbreviation for global positioning system. Can you match these abbreviations with the longer words?**

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c

**3 Complete the article with these words.**

1. research 2. astronauts
3. satellites 4. rivers

**4 Read the article again and answer the questions..**

1. They had done a lot of research.
2. He planned where Apollo 11 should land on the moon.
3. He taught astronauts which rocks to take from the moon.
4. He used satellites.
5. He studied the moon and helped to plan where Apollo 11 should land on the moon.

## Page 96

**1 Read the poem Day again and answer the questions.**

1. It is busy blowing here and there.
2. Someone who is working hard / Students' own answers.
3. No / the poet personifies the sea as if it can speak and have a job to show the important job that the sea is doing.

**2 Read the poem again and answer the questions.**

1. sea/me 2. we, free, see, sea, be 3. 5

**3 The word won sounds like one, but has a different meaning. Listen and choose.**

1. won 2. eye 3. hear
4. no 5. see 6. son

**4 Now write a sentence for each of the other word meanings in Exercise 3.**

1. There aren't many apples in the fridge. There is only one
2. I am 14 years old
3. Where are you? I'm over here.
4. Do you know her?
5. We like to swim in the sea when it's hot.
6. You should never look at the sun, it is dangerous!

## Page 97

**1 Read about the history of maps. When did people first use satellites for maps?**

They first used them in the 1950s.

**2 Read the history again. Complete the sentences with a date from the history of maps.**

1. 1100s 2. 1500s 3. 1800s
4. 1950s 6. 2005

## Page 98

**1 Put the paragraphs of this informative text in the correct order.**

a. 2 b. 4 c. 3 d. 1

**2 Read the text again and answer the questions.**

1. It is an asteroid.
2. Bennu is very small so it took two years to find a safe place to land.
3. The spacecraft must orbit the sun twice before landing on the Earth.
4. It will bring back small rocks from Bennu.
5. They hope to learn how the Earth was made and where the asteroid is going.

## Page 99

**1 Choose the correct words.**

1. spacecraft 2. system 3. lens
4. signal 5 GPS

**3 Complete the sentences with the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. had tidied 2 had revised
3. had prepared 4. had not tried

**4 Complete the sentences using words from the list.**

1. as soon 2. Before 3. the same time
4. after 5. until

# Unit 11

# SB Answers

## Page 44

**Discuss: Can you match these jobs in the media with the photos?**

1. camera operator 2. newsreader
3. journalist 4. radio presenter
5. web designer 6. photographer

**Look through the unit. What did Shaimaa study at university?**

She studied media and Arabic

## Page 45

**1 Do these people usually work in TV, radio, newspapers or online? There might be more than one answer.**

1. TV, radio, newspaper and online
2. TV, radio 3. TV 4. online, newspaper
5. radio 6. TV, radio, newspaper and online
7. online

**3 Listen to Fatma and Reem. Which of the jobs from Exercise 1 do they talk about?**

journalist, newsreader, radio presenter, web designer and photographer.

**4 Listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1 T
2 F, Fatma wouldn't like to be on TV.
3. F, Fatma would prefer to work for a newspaper than in radio.
4. T
5. F, Reem wants to learn about designing a website.
6. F, Fatma's brother likes taking photos.

## Page 46

**1 Discuss this question in pairs.**

It is about a flood in a city centre.

**2 Read the texts quickly and answer the questions.**

1. Students' own answers. 2. 1 c
2. a 3. b

**3 Read the texts again. Answer the questions to complete the table.**

| Question | Answer | Which text or texts is the information in? |
|---|---|---|
| 1 What happened? | There was lots of water in the road. | 1, 2 and 3 |
| 2 Where did it happen? | Outside the shopping centre. | 1, 2 and 3 |
| 3 When did it happen | Yesterday around 10 am. | 1, 2 and 3 |
| 4 Why did it happen? | A water pipe burst. | 1 and 2 |
| 5 What problems did it cause? | Flood in road, shops and road closed, cars and motorbike stuck. | 1, 2 and 3 |
| 6 What will happen next? | They are going to replace the pipe. | 1 |

## Page 47

**4 Discuss the questions in pairs.**

1. The TV programme and the newspaper have the most information. They have talked to other people about what happened and have more details (why, time, etc.)
2. 3 Students' own answers.


Bit by Bit
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية
3rd Preparatory
2nd Term 2024
Name : ......................................................
Group : ......................................................
التوزيع : ١٠٠ شارع كامل صدقي - الفجالة - القاهرة. ت : 25919165
للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والاقتراحات -الإدارة : تليفون : 25880102

# Contents





# Part 1

- Dictation
- Vocabulary Practice.
- Homework Exercises
  (vocabulary - language - speaking - writing).
- Al Azhar Exercises
- Tests on units.

# General Exercises

**SB / WB** تدريبات على المنهج تشتمل على تمارين

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. If you are nice to someone, this means you ________ them well.
   a. hurt b. punish c. treat d. hate
2. The village is 80 km from the nearest city. This means that it is ________.
   a. long b. close c. remote d. nearby
3. Could you say that another way? This means I'm ________.
   a. frightened b. endangered c. bored d. confused
4. ________ is a greenhouse gas from landfill sites.
   a. Oxygen b. Methane c. Petrol d. Oil
5. ________ energy is clean energy from the sun or wind.
   a. Solar b. Electrical c. Renewable d. Chemical
6. The printer isn't connected to the computer. The verb "connected" means ________.
   a. linked b. disconnected c. collected d. designed
7. Dalia and Reem have energy-saving light bulbs at home. This means they ________ energy.
   a. give b. save c. waste d. solve
8. We are worried about our grandfather's health. The word "worried" means ________.
   a. interesting b. anxious c. dangerous d. calm
9. Personally, I think solar panels are useful. The word "useful" can be replaced by ________.
   a. useless b. helpless c. terrible d. helpful
10. The street would be ugly if we didn't plant more trees. The antonym of "ugly" is ________.
    a. terrible b. beautiful c. sunny d. dangerous





11. A ________ is another word for man.
    a. follow b. fellow c. flew d. flue
12. The internet is a wonder of modern technology. The prefix ________ refers to machines and electronic equipment.
    a. un- b. techno- c. dis- d. re-
13. Did you know that some plants absorb pollution from the air? This means some plants ________ pollution.
    a. take action b. take part c. take off d. take in
14. Jewellery made from old glass bottles is not expensive. The antonym of "expensive" is ________.
    a. pricey b. lovely c. cheap d. pleasant
15. We can use that bag again. To use something again is to ________ it.
    a. recharge b. reuse c. revise d. resolve
16. "Frightened" is the same meaning as ________.
    a. excited b. bored c. safe d. scared
17. A ________ is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away.
    a. jet of air b. station c. telescope d. satellite
18. A ________ is a machine in space that goes round the Earth to send or collect information.
    a. planet b. moon c. satellite d. telescope
19. Azza loves studying the stars and planets. This means she wants to be a/an ________.
    a. teacher b. astronomer c. doctor d. nurse
20. ________ are the remains of animals or plants that lived in the past.
    a. Species b. Fossils c. Stables d. Carriages
21. The elephant is really enormous. It's about 5 tons. "Enormous" means very ________"
    a. huge b. tall c. expensive d. small
22. "Don't forget " means to ________.
    a. create b. remember c. request d. interrupt
23. The synonym of "interested" is ________.
    a. asleep b. keen c. worried d. uninterested

## Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The national park ___________ (visit) by many people every year.
2. Some of the turtles' eggs ___________ (eat) by birds and animals.
3. The Great Wall of China ___________ (is) built with rice.
4. Whales with legs were ___________ (find) by some researchers.
5. The Taj Mahal was ___________ (building) by Shah Jahan.
6. The city of Petra ___________ (named) as one of the new Seven Wonders.
7. Fossils ________ (study) at Wadi al-Hitan by a team of scientists.
8. Wadi al-Hitan ________ (visited) by about 1000 people last year.
9. Animal fossils ________ (found) in the Fayum Depression many years ago.
10. This school ___________ (built) five years ago.
11. These trees ________ (plant) by clever school boys last summer
12. Who ___________ (break) the glass of this window?
13. It is a nice photo; it _______ (take) by my brother two days ago.
14. When was the Great Wall of China ___________ (build)?
15. The forest fires ___________ (cause) by the high heat last month.
16. The Pyramids ___________ (visit) by thousands of tourists every month.
17. Our environment will be cleaner if we ___________ (recycled) our rubbish.
18. If our seas become warmer, coral reefs ___________ (would die).
19. If we ________ (will burn) plastic rubbish, we will pollute the air.
20. We need ________________ (use) more renewable energy.
21. The government plans _________ (planting) a lot of trees along the sides of streets.
22. If we keep ___________ (burn) fossil fuels, climate change will get worse.
23. If we don't avoid ___________ (cut) down our rainforests, we won't stop climate change.
24. If we keep ________________ (put) rubbish in landfill sites, we'll make more methane gases.
25. We'll save water if we only ___________ (took) short showers.
26. We can avoid ___________ (to cut) down the trees by building the road in a different place.





27. I decided ___________ (buying) a water bottle that I can reuse from the shops.
28. Miss Huda wants ___________ (doing) a recycling project at school.
29. We enjoy ___________ (recycle) our rubbish. It's fun and it helps the environment.
30. I would plant more trees if I ___________ (be) in your position.
31. If she ___________ (doesn't) love nature, she wouldn't be an environmental scientist.
32. If they ___________ (cutting) so many trees, they would have bigger forests.
33. More people ___________ (will use) that shop if it was open for longer.
34. The street is very nice. It ___________ (be) ugly if we didn't plant more trees.
35. People believed Ptolemy's ideas after he ______________ (die).
36. People ___________ (know) about stars until scientists had used telescopes.
37. Before satellites were invented, people ______________ (always use) maps to find their way.
38. Astronomers ___________ (have studied) space with their eyes before the telescope was invented.
39. Students were amazed to know that the ancient Egyptians ___________ (were discovering) a star called Sirius.
40. After we ______________ (collect) useful information about the stars, we did our research.
41. Was there an accident yesterday? Yes, there ___________ (be).
42. ___________ (Do) the car hit the child yesterday?
43. Did the police ___________ (took) the damaged car?
44. Did you ___________ (went) to school on time last week?
45. She _________ (told) that she was happy they had finished now.
46. The police said that lots of mobile phones _________ (have) been stolen that year.
47. The owner told us that the park _________ (take) over three years to build.
48. The owner explained that there ___________ (will be) over 100 new jobs the year after.
49. The scientist explained that the world ___________ (be) warming because there was climate change.
50. Nawal hopes that she ______________ (able) work as an engineer when she's older.

51. There will be lots of challenges in the future, but scientists ............ (be able) find good solutions to some of them.
52. In the future, I think we ............ (will able) to produce electricity in lots of different ways.
53. When ............ (is) your friends going to visit you?
54. The land is ............ (cover) by ice in polar habitats.
55. Many houses are ............ (building) in coastal areas by people.
56. Four important wetlands ............ (is) found in Egypt.
57. The stadium ............ (not build) in 2005.
58. The Qaitbay Citadel in Alexandria ............ (were) built in the same place as the famous lighthouse.
59. What will you do if you ............ (didn't) pass your exams this year?
60. What ............ (happen) if I put this plastic in the fire?
61. Ahmed has chosen ............ (studying) maths at university.
62. That bird keeps ............ (to make) a loud noise!
63. What do I need ............ (buy) from the shops, Mum?
64. ............ (Would) Dina speak good English if her parents move to Canada?
65. Do you enjoy ............ (to play) the piano?
66. What will I do if I ............ (doesn't) understand the homework?
67. You should avoid ............ (to sit) on that wall because it is dangerous.
68. There is no bread, so we need ............ (going) to the baker's.
69. I would write to Nahla more often if I ............ (know) her address.
70. We could visit our cousins more often if they ............ (not live) in Canada.
71. What would you do if you never ............ (watch) television?
72. Dubai ............ (use) to be a fishing village in the past.
73. Did lions and elephants ............ (uses) to live in Egypt?
74. What ............ (will) the factory produce if it used fossil fuels?
75. If we had more money, we ............ (can buy) that new phone in the shop window.
76. Ahmed ............ (read) three books this week, he loves reading!
77. Heba ............ (do) her housework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet.





78. After we ............ (collect) all the necessary information last week, we did the research.
79. Before his death, the author ............ (publish) his latest collection of short stories.
80. Before I left school last time, I ............ (say) goodbye to all my friends.
81. Rami ............ (tidy) his room before he started studying.
82. Malak did not want to start reading the book until she ............ (prepare) dinner.
83. She found a mistake ............ (before) she had reread the answer.
84. Yesterday, I ............ (go) to the club after I had finished my work.
85. I didn't send the report until I ............ (revise) it.
86. Munir ............ (not try) Japanese food before he went to the new Japanese restaurant.
87. The actor ............ (wear) expensive sunglasses in yesterday's show.
88. When I was young, I always ............ (talk) to my teachers politely.
89. Kareem said that he ............ (own) a shop in town.
90. Dalia said that it ............ (will) be hot on Monday.
91. Heba said that she ............ (go) to the museum the previous Monday.
92. The teacher said that ............ (these) books were very interesting.
93. Samy said that he ............ (is) tired.
94. "The red team ............ (win) the match yesterday," said Tarek.
95. It's very windy, so we ............ (don't) be able to go to the beach today.
96. My baby sister is six months old, so she ............ (able start) speaking in about a year's time.
97. Osama didn't do very well in his exams, so he ............ (will) be able to go to university.

98. I'm sure that in the future we will be able to .................. (sent) more spacecraft into space.

99. I think our cities won't have as much traffic. We .................. (are able to) walk round them easily.

100. It's very windy, so we.................. (able) to go to the beach today.

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to a natural wonder in Egypt"

"A short story about working animals"

"A short story you have read"

"A review of things that you can recycle at school or in your house"

"A review of a habitat you have researched"





"A short story about a trip you had to a recycling factory"

"A review of how to protect the environment"

"A review of a visit to the Red Sea"

"A review of the best form of renewable energy that you could use in your community"

"A review of building a solar farm near a nature reserve"

"A review of a green initiative in Egypt or a country in Africa"

"A short story about what you did last weekend"

"A review of the trainers you have bought"

"A review of an article about one of the planets in the solar system"

"A biography of a famous astronaut"

"A short story about a visit to the planetarium"

"A short story about a flood in city centre"





"A biography of a person you like who was working in the media"

"A biography of Farouk Shousha"

"A review of life in the future"

"A review of an article about flying cars"

"A review of our homes in the future"

"A biography of a professional sports person"

# End of Term Practice

مجاب عنه في آخر الملحق

## A Language Functions

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Baher and Marwan are talking about where people will live in the future.**

**Baher** : In the future, I think we will be able to live in houses under the ground.

**Marwan** : But, ❶ ........................... . Did you know that every year, buildings get taller and taller?

**Baher** : That's right. What kind of energy will they use?

**Marwan** : ❷ ..........................................................................

**Baher** : ❸ ..........................................................................?

**Marwan** : They will use things like wind turbines to produce renewable energy.

**Baher** : ❹ ..........................................................................?

**Marwan** : Yes, we'll all live in tall buildings with solar energy, too.

**Baher** : I think this won't cause pollution.

**Marwan** : ❺ ..........................................................................

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**will - renewable - fuels - won't - recycle - cut**

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't ❶ ........... down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn fossil ❷ ........... to avoid climate change. That's why we should use ❸ ........... energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we ❹ ........... be able to live in a safe environment.

**3 Read the following text. Then answer the questions:**

If someone asked you to name a famous trip to the moon, you would probably say the Apollo 17 trip in 1969. But did you know that when Apollo 17 went there in 1972, there had been five other trips to the moon? There have been no trips since 1972.

We all know Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon, but who was the last person? That was Eugene Cernan. He was on a 12-day trip on Apollo 17 which brought the largest moon rock to Earth! When Neil Armstrong walked on the moon, he said it had been one small step for a man, but a very big step for all of us. When Eugene Cernan left the moon, he said, "We shall return, with peace and hope."

So why were trips to the moon stopped? It was too expensive, but today, as technology gets better, there are plans to send spacecraft to the moon again.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What is the text mainly about?
   a. It's not expensive to land on the moon.
   b. Trips to the moon.
   c. Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon.
   d. Trips to other planets.
2. What does the underlined word **"name"** mean?
   a. mention
   b. speak
   c. explain
   d. travel
3. Trips to the moon stopped because they ............
   a. were dangerous.
   b. were not useful.
   c. cost a lot of money.
   d. caused a lot of damage.

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What did Eugene Cernan bring to Earth?

..................................................................

5. When Eugene Cernan left the moon, he said, "We shall return, with peace and hope." What did this show?

..................................................................

6. When was the last trip to the moon?

..................................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rewrite your composition again. The prefix "re-" means to do it ___________.

a. next  b. again  c. first  d. last

2. We should protect our planet. Protect is similar in meaning to _______.

a. increase  b. damage  c. collect from  d. keep safe

3. The person who studies space is a space ___________.

a. dentist  b. scientist  c. artist  d. pharmacist

4. A ___________ is an instrument used to make distant objects appear nearer.

a. thermometer  b. telescope  c. mirror  d. microscope

5. In the past, we used traditional ways of farming. The antonym of "traditional" is ___________.

a. old  b. expensive  c. modern  d. far

6. The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they were___________.

a. discovered  b. kept  c. chosen  d. sold

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The island ___________ (surround) by deep, blue sea.
2. If I ___________ (be) in trouble, would you help me?
3. We plan ___________ (spend) the weekend in our village.
4. Samir told me that he ___________ (travel) to London next Friday.
5. I didn't go to the theatre until I ___________ (finish) my work.



## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on one of the following:**

1. An article about how to help people in your community.
2. A biography about the person you like most.
3. A paragraph on one of your achievements and what you did to achieve it

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

# Final Exams

## Exam 1 Cairo Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**"Two friends are talking about planting trees."**

Amr : What shall we do this summer?

Yasser : ❶ ----------------------------------------.

Amr : Good, planting trees is a good idea.

Yasser : ❷ ----------------------------------------?

Amr : My brother will help us and we can ask some friends, too

Yasser : ❸ --------------------------,they will be happy to do so.

Amr : Where can we start?

Yasser : ❹----------------------------------------

Amr : ❺ ----------------------------------------?

Yasser : We will start after our exams.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**fur - who - famous - safe - which - short**

A mongoose has a long body, with ❶ ---------- legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick ❷ ---------- .Mongooses can see and hear very well, ❸ ---------- helps them to find food and avoid danger. Mongooses are ❹ ---------- for fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them.

### 3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Over 65 years ago, the world's first computer was born. Scientists called it "The Baby", but it was huge. It filled a full room! Three people made the

computer and programmed math problems for it. On June 19, 1948, the computer solved its first math problem - in 52 minutes! At that time, this was amazing. Computers are now much smaller. With touch-screen technology, many computers don't need extra things, like a keyboard or a mouse. In the future, computers probably won't need **these** things at all. Some computers like the smartphone, can fit in one hand. Computers are also more powerful today.

How else will computers change in the future? A computer's brain is a chip inside the computer. So, computers will be smaller and even more powerful. Perhaps they'll even think like humans! Maybe we won't need to tell computers what to do because they'll decide for themselves!

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The first computer filled a ----------.
   a. palace b. hand c. room d. building
2. The Baby computer found the answer to --------------- math problem(s) in 52 minutes.
   a. one b. two c. three d. for
3. Today, many computers don't have ----------.
   a. keyboard b. mouse c. touch screen d. chips

### B. Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun (**these**) refer to?
   ------------------------------------------------
5. Why do you think we may not need to tell computers what to do?
   ------------------------------------------------
6. What is the main idea of the passage?
   ------------------------------------------------

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should protect our planet. "**Protect**" is similar in meaning to ---------.
   a. increase b. damage c. collect from d. keep safe
2. Many ancient --------- are found in Fayum Depression. These are bones of animals.
   a. carriages b. fossils c. owners d. ingredients

3. People in Egypt plant mangrove seedlings along the Red Sea ---------.

a. rocks b. cost c. coast d. ponds

4. The --------- is a large natural area of land which mostly green.

a. shape b. grassland c. desert d. coastal

5. We can add the prefix "---------" to the word "**scope**" to mean an instrument that makes distant things nearer.

a. fore- b. inter- c. pre- d. tele-

6. A /An --------- is the person who has seen an accident or a crime and can tell the police about it.

a. witness b. sailor c. tailor d. designer

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. We need --------- (using) cleaner renewable energy.
2. If we lived in Hurghada, we --------- (go) to the beach.
3. They --------- (study) English for 3 hours now.
4. The housewife---------(say) the thief had stolen the house the last night.
5. No one --------- (see) a photo of the far side of the moon before astronauts landed on it.

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"Keeping our air clean."

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------






## Giza Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Faten and Huda are talking about spending their last Mid-year holiday.**

**Faten** : Good morning, Huda.

**Huda** : Good morning, Faten.

**Faten** : Where did you go last Mid-year holiday?

**Faten** : ❶ ..........................................................................

**Huda** : Alexandria! Which places did you visit there?

**Faten** : ❷ ..........................................................................

**Huda** : ❸ ..........................................................................?

**Faten** : I went with my family.

**Huda** : ❹ ..........................................................................?

**Faten** : Of course, you can come with us next holiday.

**Huda** : ❺ ..........................................................................

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**years - cats - has - tourisits - have - hotel**

A new water park opened in Sharm El Sheikh nowadays. It is the biggest park in Egypt. It ❶ .......... many restaurants and the owner is going to build a new ❷ .......... next year. He said that it had taken over three ❸ .......... to build. Many Egyptians and ❹ .......... visit it.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert, National Park and Al-Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made wonders, such as the Great Pyramid and the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria.

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists like Gabel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach is the Lost City because **it** is now under the Mediterranean Sea near Alexandria. When the Lost City was discovered, Frank Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and monuments there.

Another wonder is the Great Sand Sea in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the western desert where you can find lots of big sand dunes. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful wonders in the world.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is ---------.
   a. The Egyptian seas.
   b. The Egyptian monuments.
   c. The Egyptian wonders.
   d. The Egyptian people.
2. The Great Pyramid is a --------- wonder.
   a. man-made
   b. modern
   c. natural
   d. new
3. Some unusual glass is found in ---------.
   a. the Great Pyramid
   b. the Great Sand Sea.
   c. the Nayzak Lake
   d. the Citadel

### B. Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun (**it**) refer to?

   ----------------------------------------------------------------

5. Summarize the wonders which are mentioned in the text.

   (At least 4 wonders)

   ----------------------------------------------------------------

6. Have you visited any of these wonders before?

   ----------------------------------------------------------------

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Trees absorb --------- dioxide from the air.
   a. liquid
   b. carbon
   c. gas
   d. oxygen
2. We add "---------" to the word "national" to give the opposite.
   a. pre-
   b. un-
   c. dis-
   d. inter-

3. .......... is the sound produced by a person when he speaks.

a. Voice  b. Playing  c. Running  d. Vibration

4. My teacher told me not be late again. He gave me a ..........

a. promise  b. warning  c. witness  d. present

5. A/An .......... is a person who travels into space.

a. doctor  b. player  c. astronaut  d. nurse

6. The Iron woman was enormous. The word "enormous" means very ..........

a. small  b. ugly  c. tiny  d. big

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. If we had more money, we .......... (can) buy a new mobile.
2. We should keep .......... (build) new schools.
3. The Kharge Oasis .......... (visit) by many tourists every year.
4. Mona said she .......... (be) tired that day.
5. Rami had tidied his room before he (start) .......... studying.

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

A review about "Your new smart phone"

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

# Exam 3 Qalubia Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Essam and Adel are talking about next summer holiday.**

**Essam** : Hello, Adel. Where will you go next summer holiday?

**Adel** : ❶ ------------------------------------------------.

**Moaz** : Sharm El Sheikh ! ❷ ------------------------------------------------?

**Adel** : I will go with my friend Asser.

**Essam** : ❸ ------------------------------------------------.

**Adel** : No, we will stay in a hotel.

**Essam** : How will you go ?

**Adel** : ❹ ------------------------------------------------

**Essam** : How long will you stay ?

**Adel** : ❺ ------------------------------------------------.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**if - full - wealth - unless - fill - valuable**

Health is better than ❶---------- . One cannot exchange health for all the money in the world because health is the most ❷---------- gift from Allah. A sick person lives a bad life ❸---------- of pain, weakness and suffering. He feels that he is a real trouble to his family. He loses the nice taste of food. You can't enjoy good health ❹---------- you practise suitable exercises.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones? People who are fifty or more will find this question surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot do without mobile phones.

50 years ago, if someone had said that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or

her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of **them**.

People everywhere are walking around talking on their mobile phones. The phones are even being used for more than just communication. People use them for many different purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives.

Mobile phones have not only made our lives more comfortable but they have changed the way we live. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone at any place and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Thanks to mobile phones, ..........
   a. we cannot find information
   b. our lives are shorter
   c. it is harder to reach a friend
   d. our lives are easier
2. About fifty years ago, we ..........
   a. did not have mobiles
   b. had mobile phones
   c. used mobiles
   d. were mad
3. The underlined word "**them**" refers to .......... .
   a. younger generation
   b. mad people
   c. wireless telephones
   d. old people

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What is the best title for this passage?
   ..........................................................................
5. How was life before we had mobile phones ?
   ..........................................................................
6. What are mobile phones used for ?
   ..........................................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. " .......... " "is the synonym of the word" strange.
   a. Familiar
   b. Usual
   c. Similar
   d. Unusual

2. --------- is cutting down all the trees in an area.
   a. Air pollution b. Deforestation c. Weaving d. Farming
3. We add the prefix " --------- " to get the opposite of the word expensive.
   a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. im-
4. A "---------" is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away.
   a. telescope b. satellite c. sensor d. map
5. The planets go around the sun. The words "go around" means --------- the sun.
   a. receive b. orbit c. remove d. cross
6. The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they were ---------.
   a. kept b. discovered c. sold d. chosen

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. He ----------- (does) his homework by the time he slept.
2. Fatma said that she ----------- (is) tired the day before.
3. If I were a millionaire, I ----------- (help) the poor.
4. English language ----------- (speak) all over the world.
5. Students should avoid ----------- (make) noise in the class.

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"Write a review about: " Modern life in the future, write about transport, food and learning"

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

# Exam 4 Sharkia Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Ebrahim is at the library to borrow a book.**

**Ebrahim** : Good morning, sir.

**Librarian** : Good morning, ❶ ------------------------------------------?

**Ebrahim** : I'd like to borrow a book.

**Librarian** : OK, ❷ ------------------------------------------?

**Ebrahim** : I enjoy reading books about Nature.

**Librarian** : ❸ ----------------------.Have you got a borrowing card?

**Ebrahim** : ❹ ----------------------------. How can I get one?

**Librarian** : Just give me a recent personal photo of you.

**Ebrahim** : ❺ ------------------------------------------.

**Librarian** : You are most welcome at any time.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**will - feet - would - prepare - change - charge**

Teachers play an important role in buliding up an educated nation. They ❶ ---------- their students for the future. They can ❷ ---------- their life. They enable thier students to stand on their ❸---------- . If there were not teachers, there ❹ ---------- not be any doctors, engineers etc. We must respect our teachers.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There was once a poor boy who spent his days going from door to door selling newspapers to pay for school. One day, the poor boy was so hungry, so he decided to ask for food when he come to the next door.

The poor boy reached the door of a girl, He asked for a glass of water,

but seeing his poor state, the girl came back with a glass of milk. The boy wanted to pay for the milk, but the girl refused to take any money.

Years later, the girl fell sick. She went to many doctors, but no one was able to cure her. Finally, she went to the best doctor in town, The doctor spent weeks treating her in a private hospital until she was finally cured. She was happy, however, she was afraid she couldn't afford to pay the bill. But, when the hospital handed her the bill, it read "Paid in full, with a glass of milk."

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the passage is we must ---------.
   a. give people milk  b. always do good
   c. pay the bill  d. help the rich
2. The boy had a poor --------- .
   a. mind  b. sight  c. appearance  d. brain
3. Later on, the poor boy became a / an --------- doctor.
   a. bad  b. unknown  c. cruel  d. well-known

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Summarize the second paragraph in ONE sentence of your own words.
   ---------------------------------------------------
5. How do you think the girl felt when she left the hospital?
   ---------------------------------------------------
6. Did the girl know why the doctor paid the bill? How?
   ---------------------------------------------------

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Plants often --------- pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us.
   a. produce  b. protect  c. increase  d. absorb
2. "---------" is the place where a plant or animal naturally lives and grows.
   a. Habit  b. Habitant  c. Habitat  d. Assistant

3. They live on the east coast. "Coast" can be an adjective by adding "..........".
   a. -ous  b. -al  c. -ive  d. -ic
4. A / An .......... is something to improve a difficult situation.
   a. initiative  b. fight  c. wear  d. tour
5. You don't have to plug it in because it is ..........
   a. wireless  b. careless  c. leafless  d. useless
6. That plane is enormous! ".........." is the synonym of "enormous".
   a. Little  b. Huge  c. Tiny  d. Local

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .......... (Did) you finished your homework before you went to the cinema?
2. Egypt .......... (visit) by more than fourteen million tourists every year.
3. We .......... (use) to use energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now.
4. The colours make the picture beautiful .......... (look) at.
5. Manal .......... (said) me, "I have seen this movie."

# D Writing

## 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review about: "The new projects will improve the lives of everyone living all around Egypt".

..........

..........

..........

..........

..........

..........

..........

# Exam 5 Gharbia Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**"Rana and Sama are talking about a story."**

Rana : What are you busy doing?
Sama : I am reading a story.
Rana : 1 ---------------------------------------------------?
Sama : It is about a rabbit telling the story of his life.
Rana : 2 ---------------------------------------------------?
Sama : No, animals can't talk but this is only a story.
Rana : Did that rabbit live alone?
Sama : 3 ---------------------------------------------------.
Rana : This means he has a family. Did the story end happily for the rabbit?
Sama : 4 ---------------------------------------------------.
Rana : I think it is an exciting story. Can I borrow this story to read?
Sama : 5 ---------------------------------------------------.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**safe - weather - change - finds - sea - found**

Seagrass is very important. It is 1 ---------- in the sea along the coast of many countries. A lot of 2 ---------- animals feed on it. Baby fish live in seagrass because it is a 3 ---------- place. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why it can help stop climate 4 ----------.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Basim and his friend, Ahmed spend a long time using their smart phones. They always wanted to try new apps. One day, they got a message from a stranger. He asked them about some personal information saying that it was important for a new app. He said **it** was a wonderful one, and that they could get that app for free. They thought it was not dangerous to do so. After

that, they discovered that he could get all the information on their phones. Then, to their surprise, the stranger stopped sending them any messages. They forgot about it. However, he sent them a message saying that he can control their mobile phones. He asked for money or he would hurt them. They didn't know what to do, but their friend Kareem advised them to tell the police. The police followed the stranger's phone and arrested him. They decided to warn all their friends about how to keep safe online.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The stranger stopped sending messages .......... getting their information.

   a. after   b. before   c. without   d. for

2. The underlined word "it" refers to ..........

   a. phone   b. information   c. message   d. app

3. The friends got worried when the stranger ..........

   a. stopped talking   b. asked for money
   c. told the police   d. sent them apps

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

   ..................................................................

5. Why did the two friends agree to send their information to someone they didn't know?

   ..................................................................

6. Do you think Basim and Ahmed were right to talk to the stranger? Why?

   ..................................................................

---

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A person who travels into space is called a/an ..........

   a. astronomer   b. scientist   c. astronaut   d. pilot

2. The prefix .......... is used to add the meaning "do again".

   a. bi-   b. re-   c. di-   d. in-

3. A group of animals or plants of the same kind are called ------.

a. species b. spices c. spicing d. spicy

4. The moon --------- the earth once every 27 days.

a. cycles b. arms c. orbits d. dives

5. After the rain, the streets were wet. The antonym of the word "wet" is ---------.

a. dry b. rainy c. warm d. muddy

6. Water comes from the roof to the ground floor through a---------.

a. wire b. pipe c. line d. pile

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This book --------- (write) years ago by a famous writer.
2. My brother asks me to stop --------- (run) on the grass.
3. If he studied well, he ------------ (get) better marks.
4. He ------------ (publish) his book until he printed it.
5. They said that their team ------------ (win) the match the day before.

# D Writing

## 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review on how life will be like in the future"

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

# Exam 6 Dakahlia Governorate



## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue:**

**"Malak has been sick and Salma are talking to her on the phone."**

Salma : Hi, Malak. You haven't been to school for a week.

**Malak** : ❶ ---------------------------------------- I had the flu.

Salma : ❷ ----------------------------------------?

**Malak** : Yes, I feel much better now.

Salma : ❸ ----------------------------------------?

**Malak** : I am going back to school next Sunday.

Salma : ❹ ---------------------------------------- We all missed you.

**Malak** : Did I miss a lot of school work?

Salma : Yes, we had homework every day and we have a test on Monday.

**Malak** : Oh, no. That makes me worry.

Salma : ❺ ---------------------------------------- I will help you, my friend.

---

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**change - made - gases - droughts - make - energy**

Our planet is hotter and our weather is changing. There are more floods, ❶ ---------- and forest fires than any time in history. One of the reasons for that is climate ❷ ---------- which is caused by greenhouse ❸ ---------- such as carbon dioxide. These are ❹ ---------- when we burn fossil fuels.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Happiness is something which we feel when we are full of joy. On a cloudy day, the clouds hide the sun, but the sun, is always there. Happiness is like the sun, it is often hidden by the clouds of worries. We have to forget **them** to feel happy. It is close to us but hidden and covered from sight, by our worries

like a treasure at the bottom of a muddy lake. It is always there whether you see it or not. You don't have to create happiness. All you have to do is calm down your mind because when there are a quiet mind and inner peace, there is happiness. Happiness makes us positive. All of us try to get happiness all the time. When a person does something really good, he feels happy. If we hurt others we become unhappy in the end. A happy mood gives us the energy to work our best but an unhappy mood takes away the energy. Happiness is **related** to the world in which we live. If we live in a bad world most of the time, we remain unhappy. One alone can't be happy if others are unhappy. It comes from our own actions. Happiness doesn't come from others. Living the present is happiness.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is a good title for the passage?
   a. Sadness  b. Happiness
   c. Happiness in the family  d. Happiness at work
2. In line 3 the pronoun "**them**" refers to ..........
   a. feelings  b. others  c. worries  d. actions
3. What could the word "**related**" mean in this reading?
   a. linked  b. unconnected  c. single  d. remote

## B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why has happiness been compared to the sun?

   ..................................................

5. What should we do to feel happy?

   ..................................................

6. How is happiness related to the world in which we live?

   ..................................................

---

# C Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ability to do something well is a ..........
   a. lifestyle  b. research  c. skill  d. race

2. A/An ........ is a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm.

   a. air conditioning   b. computer
   c. kettle   d. battery

3. The earth orbits the sun. The verb "orbits" means ........ .

   a. destroy   b. discover   c. study   d. move around

4. The word ........ gives the opposite meaning of "tiny".

   a. small   b. huge   c. lesser   d. little

5. To get the adjective from the word "hero", we add the suffix ........ .

   a. -ment   b. -ly   c. -ic   d. -ful

6. She has been working at a school for free for more than 8 years. She is ........ .

   a. an employee   b. a volunteer   c. the boss   d. the manager

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. If we ........ (have) more time, we would visit our teacher.
2. She didn't go to bed until she ........ (finish) her homework.
3. We need ........ (use) renewable energy.
4. Fewer magazines are ........ (sell) today because of the internet.
5. A witness ........ (said) the police that the building was on fire.

---

# D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

" Things you can do to help save the Earth."

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

# Exam 7 Menofia Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

"Shady is talking with his friend Nader about a trip to Luxor."

Shady : You seem busy, Nader.

Nader : Yes, I'm very busy. ❶ ........................................

Shady : What list are you making?

Nader : The things we need for our trip.

Shady : ❷ ........................................?

Nader : To Luxor. ❸ ........................................

Shady : I don't think three days is enough to visit all the tourist places there.❹ ........................................

Nader : But we can't get the money for a complete month.

Shady : OK. I'd like to come with you. ❺ ..............................?

Nader : Two thousand pounds.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**people - cleaner - protection - energy - batteries - protect**

The environment needs our help. We can do a lot of things to ❶ .......... the environment. We can build solar farms to create green ❷ .......... At home, we may use rechargeable ❸ .......... .There are projects to plant trees to give us ❹ .......... air. It is very helpful to use air conditioning less often.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

For 99% of people's history, they took their food from the world around them. They ate all that they could find, and then they moved on to another place. For 1.0% of their history, people learned to farm the land and control their environment. People living in different places eat different kinds of food.

For example, people in China eat a lot of rice and noodles. People in Japan and Taiwan eat a lot of fish and other seafood. People living away from the sea don't eat so much fish. They eat more meet and chicken. At present, it is possible to transport food from one part of the world to another. Our bananas come from Central America or Africa. Our rice comes from Thailand. We can eat what we like, when we like, at any time of the year. Food has become very big business.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is about .........
   a. animals  b. prices  c. food  d. cooking
2. For......... of their history, people didn't farm the land.
   a. 99%  b. 1.0%  c. no time  d. all the time
3. People in China and people in Japan eat ...... kinds of food.
   a. the same  b. different  c. cheaper  d. fewer

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What de people who live away from sea usually eat?

   ..................................................................

5. Where do our bananas come from?

   ..................................................................

6. Why can we now eat any kind of food at any time of the year?

   ..................................................................

---

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "........." are warm, wet areas of land where many kinds of plants, animals, and birds can grow and live.
   a. Deserts  b. Rivers
   c. Rainforests  d. Lakes
2. A /An ......... is a person who travels into space.
   a. astronaut  b. researcher
   c. assistant  d. driver

3. I thought I lost my new calculator, but I --------- it in my book bag.
   a. found    b. wrote    c. gave    d.sent

4. Positive people do not look --------- happy.
   a. dis-    b. im-    c. mis-    d. un-

5. The Earth orbits the sun. "Orbits" here is near in meaning to-------.
   a. moves around    b. turns into
   c. switches on    d. sits down

6. In our school, it is normal to do activities that help our local community. "Normal" here is like ---------.
   a. difficult    b. usual    c. remote    d. dark

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. The national park -------- (visit) by many people every year.
2. If it --------- (rain) heavily, we will use umbrellas.
3. You should keep--------- (work) hard to get your goals.
4. In the past, people --------- (use to) send letters, now they send emails.
5. For three years, I --------- (learn) French Language.

# D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"Write a review about a film you watched."

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

# Exam 8 Kafr El Sheikh Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Adel wants to buy a suit.**

**Shop assistant :** Can I help you?

**Adel** : ❶ ....................................................

**Shop assistant :** I've got different styles of suits. ❷ ......................?

**Adel** : I'd like the blue one.

**Shop assistant :** It's the colour you like and it's fashionable.

**Adel** : Yes, blue is nice and it is fashionable, too ❸ ..........?

**Shop assistant :** Two thousand pounds. It's imported from France.

**Adel** : Oh! ❹ ..............I'd like one make in Egypt, please.

**Shop assistant :** ❺ ........................It's only nine hundred pounds. It's cheap, isn't it?

**Adel** : Yes, it is and of good quality as well.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**turn - life - carefully - turns - safe - save**

Children need to know how and when to use water ❶............Parents and teachers have to teach their children that water means our ❷.......... It can help us ❸............ the desert into green land to grow more crops. Nowadays, the modern ways of watching plants ❹............ much water and improve the crop growth.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Online learning is another option for the traditional way of studies. Students can easily download applications and attend online classes, but classroom learning is as important as before. Nowadays, many universities and schools are moving towards online learning. They share their materials and subjects online. Many universities served their studies online <u>**for free**</u> and some of them offered some online scholarships.

Every way of learning has some advantages and disadvantanges. With technology, everyone has ease with the online study, but some people are still against it. Some people complain that they are more comfortable with the offline learning. For people who are working and want to complete their studies from home, online learning can be the best option for them. In offline classes it is easy to pay attention to students. Finally, it is important to create a balance between online and offline studies.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is mainly about ---------.
   a. Universities Study
   b. Online Study
   c. Offline Study
   d. The best ways of learning
2. Thanks to technology, online learning became ----- than before.
   a. easier
   b. more difficult
   c. more impossible
   d. worse
3. The underlined word "**for free**" means ---------.
   a. very expensive
   b. not paying any money
   c. pay an amount of money
   d. a & c

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Why isn't the online learning the best way of learning?

   ------------------------------------------------

5. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

   ------------------------------------------------

6. Which kind of learning do you prefer? Why?

   ------------------------------------------------

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. --------- is the cutting down of trees in a large area, or the destruction of forests by people.
   a. Freezing b. Cooling c. Deforestation d. Production
2. A / An --------- is someone who studies a subject carefully in order to discover new facts or test new ideas.
   a. researcher b. retired c. astronaut d. assistant

3. My father was cross because my young brothers made so much noise. The synonym of "cross " is ..........

a. happy b. relaxed c. witness d. angry

4. The word "expensive" can be the opposite by adding the prefix ..........

a. sur- b. in- c. un- d. dis-

5. I'm still ...........Could you say that another way?

a. happy b. tall c. confused d. coastal

6. There are many green .......... across the world which are helping to protect the environment.

a. air conditionings b. initiatives

c. bamboo d. energy

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. These trees ........... (plant) by clever school boys last summer.
2. You can choose ........... (recycle) your plastic bottles.
3. When I was young, I always ........... (talk) to my teachers politely.
4. I ........... (don't send) the report until I had revised it.
5. If Ramy read the story, he ........ (enjoy) it.

---

# D Writing

## 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story you have read"

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

# Exam 9 El-Beheira Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Hani are talking about doing a school project.

Ahmed : Hello Hani.

Hani : Hello Ahmed, What are you doing?

Ahmed : ❶ ------------------------------------------------.

Hani : ❷ ------------------------------------------------?

Ahmed : It's about "the bamboo".

Hani : ❸ ------------------------------------------------?

Ahmed : Because my teacher asked me to do this project.

Hani : What do you think of this plant?

Ahmed : ❹ ------------------------------------------------.

Hani : I agree with you. It's a very useful plant.

Ahmed : Do you need any help?

Hani : ❺ ------------------------------------------------.

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**burn - cycle - wind - rubbish - environment - burning**

It is important to save our ❶ ------------ and keep it clean. We must recycle more paper so that we can avoid cutting down our forests. We can also stop putting ❷ ------------ in the landfill sites. When we keep ❸ ------------ fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. We need to use cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and ❹ ------------ power.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reem is a student at a prep school. Her mother owns a bookshop. The shop is near their house. Sometimes, Reem goes to the shop to help her mom. There are a lot of different books at the shop. Reem likes stories the best.

The shop is usually calm during the week but it gets very busy on Fridays. A lot of people go to the shop on that day to buy books for themselves and for their children. Reem often sits with the children and reads them some stories. The children enjoy the stories a lot and they usually buy them.

There are also some toys at the shop. Reem's mother lets the children play with the toys. She asks Reem to take care of the toys and make sure that the children don't damage them. The girls mostly like dolls but the boys like cars and guns. The children spend a lovely time at the shop and their parents are very thankful to Reem and her mom.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Reem goes to the shop to ......... her mother.
   a. visit b. play with c. help d. meet
2. The shop sells books and .........
   a. toys b. sweets c. fruits d. chair
3. The best title to this passage is ".........".
   a. The Dolls b. The Bookshop c. The Girls d. The Boys

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What kind of books does Reem like?
   ..................................................
5. Why do people go to the shop?
   ..................................................
6. Why do you think the shop gets busy on Fridays?
   ..................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We add ......... to form tho adjective of the word "tradition".
   a. -ible b. -able c. -al d. -ful
2. Ziad loves studying stars and planets. He wants to be a / an .........
   a. doctor b. astronomer c. officer d. photographer

3. New ideas can be very strange for people. "Strange" here means ---------.

a. boring b. usual c. unusual d. common

4. A/An --------- is a person who reads the news on the radio or TV.

a. designer b. journalist c. editor d. newsreader

5. I was --------- when my little baby brother made so much noise.

a. cross b. across c. happy d. calm

6. A --------- is a small container of ink for use in a printer.

a. cup b. carriage c. glass d. cartridge

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ------------ (visit) this restaurant three times this week. I like it.
2. If he came to the club, I ------------ (play) with him.
3. Omar ------------ (told) he would come late that day.
4. Adam came first in the race because he ------------ ( train ) well.
5. My little brother ------------ (take) to hospital yesterday.

---

# D Writing

## 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review about satellites technology"

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

---------------------------------------------------------------

# Exam 10 Alexandria Governorate



## A Language Functions

**1 Finish the following dialogue:**

**"Ehab and Ahmed are talking about the environment."**

**Ehab** : Hello, Ahmed. What are you doing?

**Ahmed** : Hello. Ehab. ❶ ..................................................................

**Ehab** : What is this article about?

**Ahmed** : ❷ ..................................................................

**Ehab** : Our environment is being polluted severely ❸ ..............................?

**Ahmed** : We can plant more trees to prevent that.

**Ehab** : ❹ ..................................................................?

**Ahmed** : Yes, we can use less plastic.

**Ehab** : ❺ ..................................................................

**Ahmed** : Actually, this will help save the environment.

## B Reading Comprehension

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

**lived - plants - describe - live - beach - colourful**

The reef is a beautiful place. Some people ❶ .......... it as an underwater garden, The corals that form the reef are very ❷ .......... Some of them look like ❸ .........., but they are not. They are made of thousands of tiny animals that are joined together. Corals can only ❹ .......... in warm clean sea water with lots of light.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Elephants live in families. When a baby elephant is born, the family is very excited. They come close to the baby to welcome it and the mother helps the baby to stand up. The mother elephant looks after her baby very carefully. If <u>it</u> moves away from her, she brings it back. If the sun is very hot, she moves the baby under her body. If a baby can't climb over something,

its mother helps it with her trunk, sometimes, other young elephants help a mother elephant look after her baby. This is how young elephants learn to take care of babies. Elephants walk from place to place looking for food and water. When the elephants are walking, the baby sometimes holds its mother's tail. If a lion comes close to them, all the elephants stop and stand close together with the babies in the middle. It is an amazing world!

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is about ---------.
   - a. what baby elephants look like
   - b. how mother and baby elephants live
   - c. why people hate elephants
   - d. when lions help elephants
2. The elephants walk to different places to ---------.
   - a. be excited
   - b. find other animals
   - c. look for food and water
   - d. live in cold weather
3. If a lion comes close, all the elephants ---------.
   - a. protect baby elephants
   - b. run away
   - c. kill the lion
   - d. move to another place

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What does the underlined pronoun "<u>**it**</u>" refer to?

-----------------------------------------------

5. What can we learn from the life of elephants?

-----------------------------------------------

6. Do you think elephants prefer to be in a zoo? Why? Why not?

-----------------------------------------------

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A /An --------- is a person who travels into space.
   - a. astronomer
   - b. astronaut
   - c. astrologer
   - d. sailor

2. A .......... is the natural home of an animal or a plant.
   a. habitat b. coast c. rock d. rainforest
3. "..........." is the synonym of " angry".
   a. Happy b. Bad c. Glad d. Cross
4. The prefix .......... gives the opposite of " appear".
   a. un- b. im- c. dis- d. il-
5. The whale is really .......... . It is about 150 tons.
   a. small b. enormous c. tiny d. slim
6. We cannot continue to use petrol for cars because it is not ..........
   a. sustainable b. fantastic c. rechargeable d. remote

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Ice ............ ( cover) large areas of wetlands.
2. That bird keeps ............ (make) a loud noise!
3. I ............ (plant) more trees if I were in your position.
4. No one had ............ (see) a photo of the far side of the moon before 1959.
5. "Lots of mobile phones ............ (steal) this year," the police said.

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"A review on social media."

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

# Exam 11 Matrouh Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**"Hamza is at a mobile phone shop looking for a good mobile phone to buy."**

**Assistant** : Good evening. Can I help you?

**Hamza** : Good evening. ❶ ----------------------------------------.

**Assistant** : We have a good collection of new mobile phones
❷ ----------------------------------------?

**Hamza** : It's a great one! ❸ ----------------------------------------?

**Assistant** : It's 8000 pounds.

**Hamza** : It's very expensive. ❹ ----------------------------------------.

**Assistant** : This mobile is cheaper. It is made in America.

**Hamza** : Really! ❺ ----------------------------------------.

**Assistant** : That's a good choice.

**Hamza** : Thanks a lot.

---

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**visited - country - places - visit - natural - city**

Egypt is a great ❶ ---------- in North Africa. It has many beaches and ❷ ---------- like the wonders near the Red Sea area. It also has wonderful historic ❸ ----------, like the Pyramids at Giza and the temples in Luxor and Aswan. Egypt is ❹ ---------- by 14 million tourists every year.

### 3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Water is one of the most valuable gifts in our life. It can also be called "life" because life on earth can never go on without Water.

Earth is called the "blue planet" because **it** is the only planet in the solar

system where there is enough amount of usable water. About 71 percent of the earth's surface is water. Most of the water on earth is found in oceans and seas. This water cannot be used because it is salty. Fresh water comes mostly from rain which forms rivers and lakes. In some parts of the world, people have to travel long distances to get pure water. But in other parts, people do not understand the value of water because they have a lot. They use water carelessly and a large amount of water is regularly wasted every year. We need to spread awareness among people to avoid wasting water.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Earth is called the .......... planet.
   a. white   b. red   c. blue   d. black
2. The underlined word "it" refers to .......... .
   a. Water   b. Waste   c. Life   d. Earth
3. What is the best title for this passage?
   a. The importance of water   b. How to waste water
   c. The amount of water   d. Types of planet

### B. Answer the following questions:

4. How do some people waste water?

   ..........................................................................................

5. Why can't we use the water of the oceans and seas?

   ..........................................................................................

6. What advice does the writer give us at the end of the text?

   ..........................................................................................

---

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .......... is someone who studies the stars and planets.
   a. astronaut   b. astronomer
   c. receiver   d. scientist
2. .......... special ability to do something.
   a. Project   b. Energy   c. Power   d. Crop

3. Solar energy never ends. That means, it is ---------.
   a. renewable  b. melting  c. warm  d. changing
4. To turn the word "colour" into an adjective, we add the suffix --------.
   a. -ful  b. -ment  c. -er  d. -tion
5. Alexandria is next to the sea. That means, it is a --------- city.
   a. coastal  b. grassland
   c. wetland  d. rainforest
6. " --------- " is the synonym of the word "fix".
   a. Prepare  b. Pair  c. Repair  d. Produce

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we lived in Hurghada, we --------- (go) to the beach every week.
2. The letter --------- (deliver) by the postman yesterday.
3. The teacher said that in 2010, that park --------- (is) the biggest in Egypt.
4. Rami --------- (clean) his room before he started studying.
5. They plan --------- (grow) a lot of trees along the sides of streets.

# D Writing

## 6 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on the following:

A review about " Air pollution".

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

------------------------------------------------------------

# Exam 12 Suez Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

"Sabah is talking to Maged who is planting a tree."

**Sabah** : Hello Maged. ❶ ...........................................................?

**Maged** : I'm planting a tree.

**Sabah** : Do you know how to plant a tree?

**Maged** : ❷ ...........................................................

**Sabah** : Who taught you to plant a tree?

**Maged** : ❸ ...........................................................

**Sabah** : Are trees useful for our environment?

**Maged** : ❹ ...........................................................

**Sabah** : ❺ ...........................................................?

**Maged** : Trees are useful because they keep the air clean.

---

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**above - satellites - under - moon - space - sun**

Dr. Farouk El-Baz is one of the most important scientists. He was a ❶ .......... scientist and geologist. He worked with NASA. He helped to plan where Apollo II should land on the ❷ .......... He also started studying deserts on the Earth. He used ❸ .......... to find rivers that were ❹ .......... the sand.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Keeping the environment clean is important for everyone who lives on the Earth. Man has invented a lot of useful things that save all people but at the same time, they are harmful to the environment.

Cars are useful because they carry us from place to place, but they are harmful to the environment because **they** give out the burning fuel which causes pollution to the air, man and animals. Factories make things to people and to the country as they help increase the country money. But there are some factories that throw their waste and rubbish in water and this kills huge numbers of fish, too. So, we should plant more trees and stop cutting them down because they are a source of life as they **absorb** carbon dioxide and keep the air clean.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Keeping the environment --------- is important for everyone.
   a. dirty b. polluted c. clean d. harmful
2. The underlined word "**they**" refers to ---------.
   a. cars b. factories c. trees d. plants
3. The verb "**absorb**" means to ---------.
   a. throw a way b. take off c. take in d. put into

## B. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

-----------------------------------------------------------

5. Why do you think cars are harmful to the environment?

-----------------------------------------------------------

6. Where do some factories throw their waste and rubbish?

-----------------------------------------------------------

# C Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A group of animals or plants of the same kind is ---------.
   a. spaces b. spices c. species d. spade
2. The verb "avoid" means to--------- from doing something.
   a. keep way b. keep a way c. stay away d. stay a way

3. To get the adjective of "sustain" you add the suffix ..........

   a. -able   b. -al   c. -ment   d. -tion

4. The moon moves around the Earth. The verb "moves" here means ..........

   a. stop   b. controls   c. orbits   d. preserves

5. The antonym of "hard" is ..........

   a. remote   b. difficult   c. simple   d. far

6. A person who travels into space is called a / an ..........

   a. astronaut   b. engineer   c. surgeon   d. architect

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Mariam .......... (told) that she was ill the day before.
2. My grandparents .......... (use) to live on a farm when they were young.
3. We should avoid .......... (eat) unhealthy food.
4. If I .......... (have) more time, I would read more books.
5. Noha .......... (doesn't allow) to answer until her teacher had said "Yes".

---

## D Writing

**6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"How can we keep our environment clean?"

..........

..........

..........

..........

..........

..........

..........

# Exam 13 Ismailia Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Ali is at a café. He is asking for some coffee.**

Waiter : Excuse me Are you ready to order, sir ?

Ali : Yes, please. I'd like some coffee.

Waiter : ❶ ------------------------------------------------?

Ali : I'd like it black, please.

Waiter : ❷ ------------------------------------------------?

Ali : Yes, I'd like a little piece of chocolate.

Waiter : Anything else, sir?

Ali : ❸ ------------------------------------------------.

Waiter : A newspaper? Sorry. ❹ ---------------------------------.

Ali : ❺ -------------------- . I'll check the news on the internet.

---

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

**teach - free - get - click - do - teaches**

Some people like doing voluntary work. This work is for ❶ ---------- as they don't❷ ---------- any money for it. It is really a great feeling to ❸ ---------- such work. We should ❹ ---------- our children the importance of voluntary work.

### 3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Ismailia is a city in the north east of Egypt. It's known in Egypt as "the City of Beauty and Enchantment". Ismailia is on the west bank of the Suez Canal.

It is the capital of the Ismailia Governorate. The city has a good weather. It has a population of 1,402,132 as of 2021. It is half way between Port Said to the north and Suez to the south. It was founded in 1863 by Khedive Ismail, so **it** is named after him. The head office of the Suez Canal is in Ismailia at the shore of lake Timsah. It has a large number of buildings. Ismailia has several public and private schools. Ismailia is the home of Suez Canal University, built in 1967 with the help of the Chinese Government to serve the region of Suez Canal and Sinai. Ismailia owns a successful football club Ismaily SC. The team has won the Egyptian league three times (1967,1991, 2002), the Egyptian Cup twice (1997, 2000), and The African Champions League once (1969) as the first Egyptian Arab club team won this league.

**A. Choose the correct answer:**

1. The passage is talking about .......... .

   a. Giza  b. Alexandria  c. Cairo  d. Ismailia

2. Ismailia is .......... Port Said and Suez.

   a. behind  b. opposite  c. between  d. next to

3. Ismaily SC has won the Egyptian League .......... .

   a. 4 times  b. 3 times  c. 5 times  d.7 times

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to ?

   ..............................................................

5. Why was the Suez Canal University built?

   ..............................................................

6. Why, do you think, people visit Ismailia?

   ..............................................................

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .......... is the thick hair that covers the body of an animal.

   a. Feather  b. Fur  c. Skin  d. Leather

2. The .......... is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the earth.

   a. gravity  b. space  c. satellite  d. jet

3. My parents don't allow me to watch TV late. The synonym of the word "allow" is .........
   a. find  b. protect  c. prevent  d. let
4. To get the adverb of "complete", we add the suffix .........
   a. -tion  b.-ly  c. -y  d.-ment
5. He can't go anywhere. He is ......... in his house because of the flood.
   a. busy  b. full  c. stuck  d. free
6. If something is ........., you don't need to plug it in.
   a. wireless  b. fatherless  c. saddened  d. powerless

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. How would you behave if you ......... (lose) your mobile phone?
2. The government plans ......... (plant) a lot of trees along the sides of streets.
3. Mona ......... (do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet.
4. After they ......... (win) the match, they celebrated.
5. The owner explained that there ......... (will) be over 100 new jobs.

## D Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on the following:**

"A review of the things you dream of achieving in the near future."

.........................................................

.........................................................

.........................................................

.........................................................

.........................................................

.........................................................

.........................................................

# Exam 14 Port Said Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**"Ahmed has met his friend Hatem at the club after a long time."**

**Ahmed** : I haven't seen you for a long time.

**Hatem** : You are right. I'm busy doing a new course nowadays.

**Ahmed** : ❶ ................................................................?

**Hatem** : At the new Academy of Technology.

**Ahmed** : ❷ ................................................................?

**Hatem** : I'm studying computer science.

**Ahmed** : How often do you go to this course?

**Hatem** : ❸ ................................................................

**Ahmed** : How much is this course?

**Hatem** : ❹ ..................... The course is amazing. You should join it.

**Ahmed** : ❺ ............................. Computer study is so important.

---

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**money - solution - teach - teaching - recycling - recycled**

There is a great project in our city. It is ❶ .............. people how to protect the environment. Many families collect their rubbish and send it for ❷ .............. It's a great ❸ .............. to a big problem because these families help the environment and get some ❹ ..............

### 3 Read the following passage and answer the ques ons:

The Chinese invented paper, and they were the first to use paper banknotes for money. Before paper banknotes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins.

These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on a piece of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the

money with someone they trusted. People in Europe only started to use paper banknotes in the seventeenth century in England. The King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with them and gave them handwritten notes saying how much they had.

The paper used for banknotes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make them stronger than normal paper, most paper banknotes only last for two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic banknotes in 1983.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Banks in England first wanted people to leave their money with them because ---------- .
   a. the King needed money to fight a war
   b. people preferred banknotes to coins
   c. people wanted their money to be safe
   d. banks opened for the first time
2. Paper banknotes were first used in ---------- .
   a. Japan  b. America  c. Russia  d. China
3. The main idea of the passage is " ---------- "
   a. Why we use money  b. Why we use banks
   c. The history of paper banknotes  d. The history of trade

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Why did Chinese traders first use banknotes instead of coins?

----------------------------------------------------------------

5. How do you think most people will pay for goods in the future? Why?

----------------------------------------------------------------

6. Summarize the third paragraph of the passage.

----------------------------------------------------------------

## C Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We add the suffix " ------ " to get the adjective from the word "colour".
   a. -en  b. -ness  c. -ful  d. -ment
2. Satellites send lots of signals. The antonym of the word "send" is " ---------- ".
   a. deliver  b. allow  c. pass  d. receive

3. This area is full of different .......... of animals. There are different kinds of them.
   a. spices b. species c. pieces d. spaces
4. To " .......... " is to take in liquids or gases through a surface
   a. fill b. protect c. absorb d. produce
5. A person who specialises in languages is a .......... .
   a. linguist b. presenter
   c. journalist d. photographer
6. The ink inside a printer .......... is very bad for the environment.
   a. screen b. cartridge c. carriage d. keyboard

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. She is short .......... (because), she is a good basketball player.
2. If there .......... (to be) more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.
3. He .......... (publish) his ideas until just before he died.
4. These places .......... (know) as grassland habitats.
5. Amr .......... (said) me, "I saw this movie".

---

# D Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on the following:**

"Your favourite football player"

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

# Exam 15 Damietta Governorate



## A Language Functions

### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**"Atef is talking to a tourist about his visit to Egypt."**

**Atef** : Hello!

**Tourist** : Hello!

**Atef** : Is it your first visit to Egypt?

**Tourist** : ❶ ........................ I came here with my wife before.

**Atef** : ❷ ..........................................................?

**Tourist** : I come from Ireland.

**Atef** : ❸ ..........................................................?

**Tourist** : I will stay in Egypt for two weeks.

**Atef** : What cities are you going to visit?

**Tourist** : ❹ ..........................................................

**Atef** : Sure, Aswan and Luxor are interesting places to visit. I wish you an enjoyable visit.

**Tourist** : ❺ ..........................................................

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

**plane - calls - for - astronauts - since - spacecraft**

The International Space Station is a huge ❶ .......... 70 km above the Earth. It is a place where ❷ .......... live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the space station ❸ .......... about six months. They can send e-mails or make phone ❹ .......... to the Earth.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Damietta is famous for its great thinkers, writers and poets. One of them is Farouk Shousha who is a well-known poet and a famous radio presenter. He was born in Damietta in 1936. At his early age, he used to go to the local

library and was able to read a lot of books in the Arabic language. In 1956, he graduated from the faculty of Dar Al - Ulum in Cairo University.

Farouk Shousha always liked poetry and Arabic literature. He worked as a radio and a TV presenter. He presented many famous programs which most people liked so much like "Our Beautiful Language" and "Cultural Evening" which both lasted for about 15 years without stopping.

In his programs, he talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and showed **its** rich literature. For this reason, he was called "the guardian of the Arabic language". Shousha won the Nile Prize for literature in 2016. We all still remember his great works even after his death.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the passage is about ---------.
   - a. New Damietta
   - b. Cultural Evening
   - c. Farouk Shousha
   - d. Our Beautiful Language
2. The underlined word "**its**" in the third paragraph refers to ---------.
   - a. The Arabic language
   - b. The English language
   - c. TV programs
   - d. radio programs
3. Farouk won the Nile Prize for literature in ---------.
   - a. 1936
   - b. 1956
   - c. 2016
   - d. 2000

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. Name a famous program that Farouk Shousha presented.

--------------------------------------------------------------

5. Summarize the last paragraph in the text in one sentence.

--------------------------------------------------------------

6. Where do you think Farouk could read many books in the Arabic language when he was young?

--------------------------------------------------------------

## C Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. --------- is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth.
   - a. Space
   - b. Telescope
   - c. Gravity
   - d. The sun

2. A ........ is a person who reads the news on the radio or in television.
   a. designer  b. newsreader
   c. photographer  d. journalist
3. My father is so kind. The antonym of "kind" is ........
   a. calm  b. clean  c. clever  d. cruel
4. We can get an adjective from the verb "renew" by adding the suffix ........
   a. -ness  b. -able  c. -tion  d. -y
5. Trees breathe in carbon dioxide and breathe out oxygen so, they are ........ for us.
   a. bad  b. harmful  c. useful  d. useless
6. The land is ........ as it was raining all night yesterday.
   a. wet  b. warm  c. hard  d. dry

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The land is ........... (cover) with ice in polar habitats.
2. We must avoid ........... (pollute) the environment.
3. If I had more time, I ........... (will) read more books.
4. We ........... (use) to get our shopping in plastic bags. Now we don't.
5. I didn't send the report until I ........... (revise) it.

# D Writing

## 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of your dream job."

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................